



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 475.2 .D691  
D'Ooge, Benjamin L.  
Elements of Latin /

Stanford University Libraries



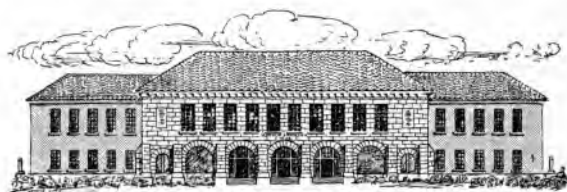
3 6105 04926 6377

# ELEMENTS OF LATIN

D'OOGÉ



Not Messer.



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES









BACULUS IUBET LOCUM MŪRŌ ALTŌ MŪNĪRĪ  
(See page 291)

# ELEMENTS OF LATIN

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

Nē quid nimis — TERENCE



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON  
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

**COPYRIGHT, 1921, BY BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE**

**ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL**

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED**

**325.8**

**635231**



***The Athenæum Press***

**GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.**

AMICIS · SVIS  
PVERIS · PVELLISQVE · AMERICAЕ  
HOC · OPVSCVLVM · DEDICAT  
AVCTOR



## PREFACE

The present volume is not a revision of the author's "Latin for Beginners," but is an entirely new book. However, all features of the earlier book that have been highly commended and have proved their value have been retained. Chief among these are the separation of the special vocabularies from the lessons and the insertion of frequent reviews.

The body of the book is divided into two parts: fifty-six lessons for the first half year and fifty-four for the second. While greater in number than in "Latin for Beginners," the lessons are much shorter and simpler, and are designed, in most cases, for a single recitation period. Two optional lessons have been added, covering matter that some teachers prefer to include in the work of the first year. The remainder of the book up to the reviews is supplementary in character, and is intended to diversify and enrich the regular work through the lessons, and to supply reading matter after the lessons are completed. Some classes will be able to use more of this material, some less; but all will be able to draw something interesting from it.

The vocabulary has been limited to about five hundred words, averaging less than five new words per lesson. These words have been carefully selected from standard word lists, and are listed on pages 357-360 for convenience of reference and review. Nearly all the words are Cæsarian, and more than ninety per cent are used in Cæsar five or more times. Still, the vocabulary is of a general rather than of a military character, and most of the words are found also in Cicero and Vergil.

The principles of syntax discussed have been reduced to the bare essentials, the author feeling strongly that the tendency still prevailing in some quarters to include the more difficult constructions in the work of the first year is a very mistaken one. The fundamental principles of English grammar are compared with the Latin, and constructions

are presented from the standpoint of English. The order of presentation is systematic, and related constructions are treated together.

Connected reading in the form of dialogues and stories is introduced as early as possible. The material is abundant and very simple. It includes famous Greek myths and many legends of ancient Rome, and is designed to arouse and hold the interest of the young. The supplementary reading comprises selections for sight translation, a Latin play, and a story which is intended to serve as an introduction to Cæsar. If not used the first year, it will be found very helpful at the beginning of the second.

Great emphasis is laid throughout the book on word formation and derivation. Matters of derivation are discussed in many paragraphs, and some entire lessons are devoted to this important and practical subject. Furthermore, the words in the special vocabularies are accompanied by parallel columns of related words, and these are again called for in the vocabulary reviews.

The book is very fully illustrated. While a few pictures have been inserted for the general purpose of interesting pupils in Rome and the Romans, the great majority of the pictures are illustrative of the stories they accompany and were prepared for that specific purpose. Those illustrating the legends of ancient Rome are reproductions of some famous historical pictures published by Paravia and Company of Rome. The colored plates are from original paintings by Mr. M. McGregor Jamieson of New York. Particular attention is called to the series of pictures in the chapter entitled "Original Stories," pages 263-271. Teachers are urged to make frequent use of this material for original work in substitution for exercises found in the lessons.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to the many teachers who have given him freely of their wisdom and experience. Particular acknowledgments are due to Miss Anne C. Wilder and to Mr. A. T. Chapin of Kansas City, Missouri, who have read all the proof and offered many valuable suggestions.

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE

MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

## CONTENTS

TO THE STUDENT — BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION	PAGE
Latin, the Language of the Romans . . . . .	1
THE ALPHABET AND SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS . . . . .	5
SYLLABLES; QUANTITY AND ACCENT; PARTS OF SPEECH . . . .	8
LESSON	
I. First Principles of Syntax . . . . .	11
II. Inflection and Cases . . . . .	13
III. Forms and Position . . . . .	15
IV. Number; Agreement of Verbs . . . . .	17
V. The Dative Case; Indirect Object; Predicate Noun . . .	19
VI. The Ablative Case; The First Declension . . . . .	21
VII. Prepositions . . . . .	24
VIII. Gender; Declension, Agreement, and Position of Adjectives; Predicate Adjectives. <i>Galba et Lesbia</i> . . . . .	26
IX-X. Second Declension; Vocative Case; Apposition. Dialogue .	29
XI. Second Declension (Continued); General Rules of Declen- sion; Questions. Dialogue . . . . .	33
XII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions; Genitive of Nouns in <i>-ius</i> and <i>-ium</i> . Dialogue . . . . .	36
XIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (Continued); Adverbs . . . . .	38
XIV. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (Concluded); The Dative with Adjectives. <i>Īnsula Mārci Nautae</i> . . .	40
XV. Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns . . . . .	43
XVI. Conjugation; Present Indicative of <i>sum</i> ; Predicate Genitive of Possessor. <i>Gallia</i> . . . . .	46
XVII. The Four Regular Conjugations; Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation . . . . .	50
XVIII. The Ablative Denoting <i>with</i> — Cause, Means, Accompani- ment, Manner . . . . .	53
XIX. Past and Future Indicative of <i>sum</i> ; The Preposition <i>ē</i> or <i>ex</i> . Dialogue . . . . .	55

LESSON	PAGE
XX. Past Indicative Active of the First Conjugation. Britannia	57
XXI. Future Indicative Active of the First Conjugation . . .	60
XXII. Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation . . . . .	62
XXIII. Latin Order of Words . . . . .	65
XXIV. The Demonstrative <i>is, ea, id</i> . . . . .	67
XXV. The Possessive of the Third Person . . . . .	69
XXVI. The Present Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Dialogue . . . . .	71
XXVII. The Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation. Dē Castris Rōmānis . . . . .	73
XXVIII. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs . . . . .	75
XXIX. The Past Indicative Active of <i>regō</i> and <i>audiō</i> . Dē Deīs Rōmānis . . . . .	77
XXX. The Future Indicative Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus . . . . .	79
XXXI. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation. Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus (Continued) . . . . .	82
XXXII. The Imperative Mood; Questions and Answers. Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus (Continued) . . . . .	84
XXXIII. Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation. Thēseus et Mīnōtaurus (Concluded) . . . . .	87
XXXIV. Present Indicative Passive of <i>moneō</i> ; Ablative of the Personal Agent . . . . .	89
XXXV. The Past and Future Indicative Passive of the First and Second Conjugations . . . . .	91
XXXVI. The Present Indicative Passive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations. Dē Bellis Rōmānōrum et Gallōrum	93
XXXVII. The Past and Future Indicative Passive of <i>regō</i> and <i>audiō</i> . . . . .	95
XXXVIII. The Present, Past, and Future Indicative Passive of <i>capīō</i> . Dē Lūdō Rōmānō . . . . .	97
XXXIX. The Present Infinitive and the Present Imperative, Active and Passive . . . . .	99
XL. Synopses in the Four Conjugations. Dē Malō Magis- trō Lūdī . . . . .	101

# CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XLI. The Ablative Denoting <i>from</i> — Place From Which, Separation . . . . .	104
XLII. Principal Parts; Verb Stems; The Perfect Stem; The Endings of the Perfect . . . . .	106
XLIII. The Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative of <i>sum</i> . Dialogue . . . . .	108
XLIV. Use and Inflection of the Perfect Indicative Active. <i>Dē Curiō Dentātō</i> . . . . .	110
XLV. Principal Parts of Verbs. <i>Dē Curiō Dentātō</i> (Concluded) . . . . .	113
XLVI. Past Perfect Indicative; Principal Parts (Continued) . . . . .	115
XLVII. Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Infinitive Active; Principal Parts (Concluded) . . . . .	117
XLVIII. Review of the Active Voice . . . . .	119
XLIX. Word Formation. <i>Gallī Rōmam Oppugnant</i> . . . . .	121
L. The Past Participle; The Passive Perfects . . . . .	124
LI. The Perfect Infinitive Passive and the Future Infinitive Active; Prepositions . . . . .	127
LII. The Conjugation of <i>possum</i> . <i>Dē Mūciō Scaevolā</i> . . . . .	129
LIII. The Infinitive Used as in English . . . . .	131
LIV. Word Formation. <i>Dē Mūciō Scaevolā</i> (Concluded) . . . . .	134
LV. Sentences and Clauses; Relative Pronouns . . . . .	137
LVI. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives; The Ablative Absolute . . . . .	140

## SECOND HALF YEAR

LVII. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems, Masculines and Feminines . . . . .	143
LVIII. The Third Declension, Consonant Stems, Neuters. Dialogue . . . . .	146
LIX. Reading Lesson, <i>Rōmulus et Remus</i> . . . . .	148
LX. The Third Declension, <i>I</i> -Stems, Masculines and Feminines. <i>Rōmānī et Sabīnī</i> . . . . .	149
LXI. The Third Declension, <i>I</i> -Stems, Neuters . . . . .	152
LXII. The Third Declension, Irregular Nouns. <i>Dē Brūtō Primō Cōnsule</i> . . . . .	154

LESSON	PAGE
LXIII. Reading Lesson, Orpheus et Eurydicē . . . .	157
LXIV. Word Formation . . . . .	158
LXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension, Three Endings .	160
LXVI. Adjectives of the Third Declension, Two Endings .	162
LXVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension, One Ending. Midas, the King of the Golden Touch . .	163
LXVIII. Regular Comparison of Adjectives; The Comparative with <i>quam</i> . . . . .	165
LXIX. Declension of Comparatives; The Ablative of the Measure of Difference . . . . .	167
LXX. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives; The Declension of <i>plus</i> . . . . .	169
LXXI. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs . . . . .	171
LXXII. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs (Concluded). Dialogue . . . . .	173
LXXIII. The Fourth Declension . . . . .	175
LXXIV. Expressions of Place . . . . .	177
LXXV. The Fifth Declension; The Ablative of Time . . .	179
LXXVI. Gender in the Third Declension; Word Formation .	181
LXXVII. The Nine Irregular Adjectives . . . . .	183
LXXVIII. Classes of Pronouns; Personal and Reflexive Pro- nouns . . . . .	185
LXXIX. The Intensive Pronoun <i>ipse</i> ; The Demonstrative Pronoun <i>idem</i> . . . . .	188
LXXX. The Demonstrative Pronouns <i>hic, iste, ille</i> . . . .	190
LXXXI. Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	192
LXXXII. The Cardinal Numerals and their Declension. The Contest of the Horatii and the Curiatii . .	194
LXXXIII. Ordinal Numerals; The Genitive of the Whole . .	198
LXXXIV. The Accusative of Duration of Time or Extent of Space. Caesar in Gaul . . . . .	200
LXXXV. The Ablative of Respect; The Genitive with Ad- jectives . . . . .	202
LXXXVI. Deponent Verbs; The Genitive or Ablative of De- scription. Caesar and the Helvetians . . . .	204

# CONTENTS

xi

LESSON	PAGE
LXXXVII. Participles . . . . .	206
LXXXVIII. Word Formation . . . . .	209
LXXXIX. The Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive of the First and Second Conjugations; The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared . . . . .	211
XC. The Present Subjunctive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations; The Subjunctive of Purpose . . . . .	214
XCI. Past Subjunctive of the First and Second Conjugations; Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	216
XCII. Past Subjunctive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations; Noun Clauses of Purpose . . . . .	219
XCIII. Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i> . . . . .	222
XCIV. Perfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive of <i>vocō</i> , <i>monēō</i> , <i>regō</i> , and <i>audiō</i> . <i>Hērō et Lēander</i> . . . . .	224
XCV. The Subjunctive of Result. <i>Hērō et Lēander</i> (Concluded) . . . . .	226
XCVI. The Dative with Compounds . . . . .	229
XCVII. Word Formation . . . . .	231
XCVIII. The Irregular Verbs <i>volō</i> , <i>nōlō</i> , <i>mālō</i> . . . . .	233
XCIX. Vocabulary Review; Constructions with <i>cum</i> . . . . .	235
C. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>eō</i> . . . . .	237
CI. Vocabulary Review; Indirect Statements . . . . .	238
CII. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i> . . . . .	242
CIII. Vocabulary Review; Indirect Questions . . . . .	243
CIV. Vocabulary Review; The Irregular Verb <i>fīō</i> . . . . .	246
CV. Vocabulary Review; Predicate Accusative; Dative of Purpose . . . . .	247
CVI. Vocabulary Review; The Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	249
CVII. Vocabulary Review; Review of Agreement and of the Genitive and Dative . . . . .	252
CVIII. Vocabulary Review; Review of the Accusative and Ablative . . . . .	254
CIX. Vocabulary Review; Review of the Gerund and Gerundive, the Infinitive, and the Subjunctive . . . . .	256
CX. Vocabulary Review; Review of Word Formation . . . . .	257

## OPTIONAL LESSONS

	PAGE
A. The Subjunctive of Characteristic or Description . . . . .	259
B. The Periphrastic Conjugations and the Dative of Agent . . . . .	261

## SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

ORIGINAL STORIES . . . . .	263
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING . . . . .	273
LATIN PLAY—PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA . . . . .	279
STORY—BACULUS THE CENTURION . . . . .	283
LATIN SONGS . . . . .	294

## REVIEWS, APPENDIXES, VOCABULARIES, ETC.

REVIEWS . . . . .	299
SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	321
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX . . . . .	325
WORD LISTS FOR FIRST AND SECOND HALF YEARS . . . . .	357
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES . . . . .	361
DERIVATION NOTEBOOK, SPECIMEN PAGE . . . . .	382
COMMON ABBREVIATIONS OF LATIN WORDS . . . . .	383
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	I
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	23
INDEX . . . . .	37

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
1. Baculus iubet locum mūrō altō mūnīrī (in colors)	Frontispiece
2. Roman Children at Play . . . . .	6
3. Roman Writing Tablets . . . . .	7
4. Interior View of a Roman House . . . . .	10
5. View of Rome from the Dome of St. Peter's Church . . . . .	12
6. Singing the Wedding Song . . . . .	16
7. Playing Jackstones . . . . .	18
8. Agricola . . . . .	24
9. Lesbia Galbam vocat . . . . .	28
10. Servus equīs aquam dat . . . . .	30
11. Lesbia per agrōs properat et aquam ad servōs portat . . . . .	32
12. Mārcus frūmentum ā terrā ad īnsulam portat . . . . .	42
13. On the Sacred Way in the Roman Forum . . . . .	45
14. The Active Voice and the Passive Voice . . . . .	46
15. The Island in the Tiber . . . . .	51
16. A Roman Spoon . . . . .	54
17. Quō, Quīnte, properās? . . . . .	56
18. Britannī erant barbarī . . . . .	59
19. Ōrae Britanniae erant altae . . . . .	61
20. The Roman Forum as it Now Appears . . . . .	66
21. The Roman Forum at its Western End . . . . .	70
22. Castra Rōmāna . . . . .	74
23. A Cockfight (Pompeian Wall Painting) . . . . .	76
24. Athēna Dea Sapientiae . . . . .	78
25. The Tribute to the Minotaur . . . . .	81
26. Glass Vases from Pompeii . . . . .	82
27. The Appian Way and the Claudian Aqueduct . . . . .	86
28. Puerī puellaeque Thēseum amant (Pompeian Wall Painting) . . . . .	88
29. Roman Swords . . . . .	93
30. Rōmānī magnum numerum captivōrum capiunt . . . . .	94
31. Lūdus Rōmānus . . . . .	98
32. Malus magister lūdī poenam dat . . . . .	103
33. Curius Dentatus and the Samnite Ambassadors . . . . .	112
34. The Forum, the Capitoline, and Adjacent Buildings (Restored) . . . . .	116
35. A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus . . . . .	120
36. A Roman Market Place . . . . .	122
37. The Sacred Geese Save the Capitol . . . . .	123
38. Roman Hairpins, Powder Boxes, and Other Toilet Articles . . . . .	126

	PAGE
39. The Tiber, Castle of St. Angelo, and St. Peter's . . . . .	126
40. The Roman Forum, A. D. 400 . . . . .	133
41. Mūcius Scaevola . . . . .	135
42. The Arch of Titus and the Colosseum . . . . .	142
43. Mulierēs bellum prohibuērunt . . . . .	151
44. The Tiber at the Foot of the Aventine . . . . .	153
45. Brūtus filiōs suōs interficī iubet . . . . .	155
46. Orpheus and Eurydice . . . . .	156
47. A Roman Street Scene . . . . .	159
48. Roman Silver Cups . . . . .	164
49. The Roman Campagna and the Alban Mount . . . . .	174
50. Offering a Sacrifice . . . . .	176
51. Athēnae, urbs Minervae . . . . .	178
52. So-called Tomb of the Horatii and Curiatii . . . . .	195
53. Pater ipse tribus filiis arma nova dedit . . . . .	196
54. Villa of a Wealthy Roman . . . . .	197
55. A Gate of Pompeii (Restored) . . . . .	201
56. Ancient Coins . . . . .	203
57. The Gate of St. Sebastian . . . . .	210
58. Greek Vases . . . . .	213
59. Gladiators' Helmets . . . . .	221
60. Finger Rings with Engraved Settings . . . . .	223
61. Hero and Leander . . . . .	227
62. A Roman Stove with Hot-Water Boiler . . . . .	234
63. Golden Fibula, or Brooch . . . . .	236
64. A Street in Pompeii . . . . .	241
65. A Musical Recital . . . . .	245
66. Roman Lamps . . . . .	253
67. Steelyards from Pompeii . . . . .	255
68. The Gauls in Sight of Rome . . . . .	258
69. Roman Cæstus, or Boxing Glove . . . . .	260
70. The Romans Storm the Enemy's Stronghold . . . . .	262
71-79. Nine pictures suggesting original stories . . . . .	263-271
80. The Return of Persephone . . . . .	272
81. Arion Saved by a Dolphin . . . . .	274
82. Cincinnatus Called from the Plow . . . . .	277
83. Perseus Andromedam servat . . . . .	282
84. Venite! Venite, Rōmānī! (in colors) . . . . .	292
85. Roman Mosaic . . . . .	324
86. Sermoneta . . . . .	384
Map of Gaul and Parts of Germany, Spain, Italy, and Britain . . . . .	49
Map of Italy (in colors) . . . . .	72

# ELEMENTS OF LATIN

## TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

### **LATIN, THE LANGUAGE OF THE ROMANS**

Rome was the whole world, and all the world was Rome. — SPENSER

Latium,<sup>1</sup> a small district on the western coast of ancient Italy, was the home of the Latins. The chief city of the Latins was Rome, which, according to tradition, was founded 753 years before Christ. Beginning as a small settlement on the banks of the Tiber and the surrounding hills, and controlling at first a territory of not more than twenty-five square miles, the city remained weak and insignificant for many centuries, and its very existence was frequently threatened by warlike neighbors. But the Romans, inspired by a spirit that never owned defeat, gradually extended their boundaries. Before the middle of the third century before Christ they had conquered all Italy. Then they reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally Rome became the head of a mighty empire, which ruled over the whole ancient world for more than four hundred years.

The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language throughout the

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *Lă'sht-ŭm*.

world. Rome impressed not only her language but also her laws, customs, beliefs, and ideals upon the subject nations ; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since.

#### LATIN AND THE MODERN WORLD

Even after the fall of the Roman Empire Latin lived on, and lives today as Italian, Spanish, French, and other so-called Romance, or Roman, languages. Many millions of people are therefore still speaking a modernized form of Latin which differs from ancient Latin little more than modern English differs from the English of bygone centuries. Latin is not a dead language, but has only changed its name. During the Dark Ages the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that kept burning, and in the succeeding years Latin continued to be the common language of the schools and universities, and is even yet, more nearly than any other tongue, the universal language of the learned. It survives, too, in the services of the Roman Catholic Church and in much sacred poetry and song. The life of today is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Cæsar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, unlike men of today.

#### LATIN AND ENGLISH

Do you know that more than half the words in the English dictionary are Latin and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day ? How did this come about ?

In the first place Latin and English, along with most of the other languages of Europe, are descended from a very ancient mother speech, which has long since disappeared. They are, therefore, sister languages and have many words in common.

Furthermore, in the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans and established a Norman civilization among the Anglo-Saxons. The Normans spoke a kind of French, which, as has been said, is a modern form of Latin, and from this source hundreds of so-called Latin derivatives were added to our vocabulary. Some of these derivatives are pure Latin and others differ only in their endings. Note the following examples :

LATIN WORDS	ENGLISH WORDS
horror	horror
census	census
animal	animal
labor	labor
superior	superior
inferior	inferior
calamitas	calamity
barbarus	barbarous
virtus	virtue

Besides, in later years many Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and many of the technical terms used in the sciences and the professions of law, medicine, engineering, etc., are of Latin derivation, and many new inventions are given Latin names.

#### WHY STUDY LATIN?

Latin, as we have seen, touches the life of the modern world in many ways and the study of it adds greatly to our intelligence and efficiency. Indeed, few studies are more practical. You may be asked why you are studying Latin. The following summary of reasons will help you to make a forceful and convincing reply :

## WHY STUDY LATIN?

1. Latin was the language of the Romans, on whose civilization our own civilization is largely based. In their writings we find the origin and the reason for many of our institutions.

2. In Roman literature we find the models which modern writers have imitated. Our literature is full of allusions and quotations which only the student of Latin can fully understand.

3. A knowledge of French, Spanish, Portuguese, or Italian is best obtained by studying Latin first. The value of these languages to an American is greater today than ever before.

4. Latin grammar makes English grammar easy, and a knowledge of Latin words makes clear the meaning of English words. A mastery of English is gained by the study of Latin, and the ability to use good English promotes success in every calling. Even a year or two of Latin will be a great help in grammar, spelling, and composition.

5. A knowledge of Latin is of great service in the pursuit of the sciences and professions. That is why Latin is required for entrance to schools of medicine, law, engineering, and other higher institutions of learning.

## QUESTIONS

What is Latin? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? What river flows through Rome? What date is given for the founding of Rome? How long did the Roman Empire endure? How wide was its power? What was the language of the Roman Empire? What besides their language did the Romans impress upon the world? What is meant by the Romance languages? If you wish to master French or Spanish, what language should you study first? Why? Is Latin a dead language? What great service did Latin render during the Dark Ages? Why do some scholars still write their books in Latin? What proportion of English words is of Latin origin? How did this come about? What five reasons can you give for the study of Latin? Which one of these reasons do you consider the most important?

# FIRST HALF YEAR

## THE ALPHABET AND SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

Errāre hūmānum est—To err is human<sup>1</sup>

### THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *j* or *w*.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The other letters are consonants.

3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. When standing first with a vowel following it, or between vowels within a word, it has the value of a consonant, and is called *i consonant*.

Thus, in **iam** and **maior**, **i** is a consonant; in **iānitor** the first **i** is a consonant, the second is a vowel.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

4. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in sections 5–7 is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.

<sup>1</sup> From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

**5. Vowels.** Vowels are either long or short. In this book long vowels are marked (*ā*), short ones are unmarked (*a*). The vowels have the following sounds :

LONG	SHORT
<i>ā</i> as in <i>artist</i> : <i>hāc, stās</i>	<i>a</i> as in <i>artistic</i> : <i>amat, canās</i>
<i>ē</i> as in <i>fate</i> : <i>tēla, mēta</i>	<i>e</i> as in <i>net</i> : <i>tenet, pedēs</i>
<i>i</i> as in <i>machine</i> : <i>serti, prāti</i>	<i>i</i> as in <i>bit</i> : <i>sitis, bibi</i>
<i>ō</i> as in <i>bone</i> : <i>Rōma, ōris</i>	<i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i> : <i>modō, bonōs</i>
<i>ū</i> as in <i>rude</i> : <i>ūmor, tūber</i>	<i>u</i> as in <i>full</i> : <i>ut, tūtus</i>

**6. Diphthongs.** A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in a single syllable. The Latin diphthongs and their sounds are as follows :

<i>ae</i> as <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> : <i>taedae</i>	<i>eu</i> almost like <i>ew</i> in <i>new</i> : <i>seu</i>
<i>au</i> as <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> : <i>gaudet</i>	<i>oe</i> as <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> : <i>foedus</i>
<i>ei</i> as in <i>eight</i> : <i>hei</i>	<i>ui</i> almost like <i>we</i> : <i>cui, huic</i>



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

**7. Consonants.** Consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :

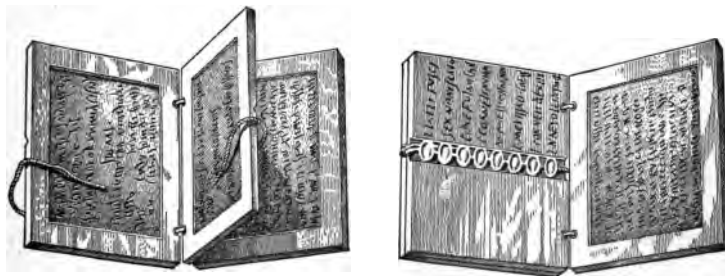
**c** always has the sound of *k* : *cadō, cibus, cēna*  
**g** is always like *g* in *get* : *gemō, gignō*  
**i**, when a consonant, is sounded like *y* in *yes* : *iam, iocus, cuius*  
**qu, gu,** and sometimes **su** before a vowel, have the sound of *gw*, *gw*, and *sw*, respectively : *inquit, lingua, suādeō*  
**s** is always like *s* in *sea* : *rosa, is*  
**t** is always like *t* in *native* (never as in *nation*) : *ratio, natio*  
**v** has the sound of *w* : *vinum, vir*  
**x** always has the sound of *ks* : *extrā, exāctus*  
**bs, bt,** are like *ps, pt* : *urbs, obtineō*  
**ch, ph, th,** are like *c, p, t* : *pulcher, Phoebē, theātrum*

**8. Learn the following Latin mottoes :**

**Ē plūribus ūnum,** *one out of many* (motto of the United States).  
out of many one

**Ad astra per aspera,** *to the stars through difficulties* (motto of Kansas).  
to stars through difficulties

**Labor omnia vincit,** *toil conquers all things* (quotation from the Latin poet Vergil).  
toil all things conquers



ROMAN WRITING TABLETS

## SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, AND ACCENT

*Fēstīnā lentē* — Make haste slowly<sup>1</sup>

### SYLLABLES

9. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Thus, *li-ber'-tās* has three syllables, *au-di-en'-dae* has four.

10. Words are divided into syllables as follows :

*a.* A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the following vowel : as, *a-mā'-bi-lis*, *a'-best*, *pe-rē'-git* ; also *bl*, *br*, *tr*, and similar combinations with *l* or *r* that can be pronounced in one syllable are pronounced with a following vowel :<sup>2</sup> as, *pū'-bli-cus*, *ē'-bri-us*, *mā'-tris*, *a'-grī*.

*b.* In all other combinations of consonants the last of the group is pronounced with the following vowel : as, *mag'-nus*, *e-ges'-tās*, *hos'-pes*, *an'-nus*, *su-bāc'-tus*, *sānc'-tus*, *il'-le*.

*c.* The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'ti-ma* ; the next to the last, the *pe-nult'* ; that before the penult, the *an'te-pe-nult'*.

Thus, *amantur* consists of *a-* (antepenult), *-man-* (penult), *-tur* (ultima).

### QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

11. The quantity of a syllable is the time occupied in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be given to long (that is, slow) syllables as to short (that is, quick) ones.

12. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : as, *cū'-rō*, *poe'-nae*, *aes-tā'-te* ; or if it ends in a consonant which is followed by another consonant : as, the first

<sup>1</sup> A favorite saying of Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.

<sup>2</sup> But prepositional compounds follow rule *b* : as, *ab'-luō*, *ab-rum'pō*, etc.

syllables of *cor'-pus* and *mag'-nus*. All other syllables are short: as, *a'-ni-mal*, *me-mo'-ri-am*, *nu'-me-rus*, *pa'-tri-a*.

NOTE. The *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus, in *ter-ra*, *in-ter*, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like *saxum* the first syllable is long because *x* has the value of two consonants (*cs* or *gs*).

### ACCENT

13. Words of two syllables are accented on the first: as, *mēn'-sa*, *Cae'-sar*.

14. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, the antepenult is accented. Thus, *mo-nē'-mus*, *re'-gi-tur*, *a-gri'-co-la*, *a-man'-dus*, *a-man'-tur*.

15. Sing the following translation of the first two stanzas of "America":<sup>1</sup>

Tē canō, Patria,  
candida, libera;  
tē referet  
portus et exulum  
et tumulus senum;  
libera montium  
vōx resonet.

Tē canō, Patria,  
semper et ātria  
ingenuum;  
laudō virentia  
culmina, flūmina;  
sentio gaudia  
caelicolum.

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH

16. Words, according to their use, are divided into eight classes called parts of speech: nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. The parts of speech in English and in Latin are the same.

<sup>1</sup> Translated by Professor George D. Kellogg, Union College, and published in the *Classical Weekly*, VIII, 7.

**17. Nouns.** A noun is the name of a person or thing: as, *Caesar, Cæsar; Rōma, Rome; domus, house; virtūs, virtue.*

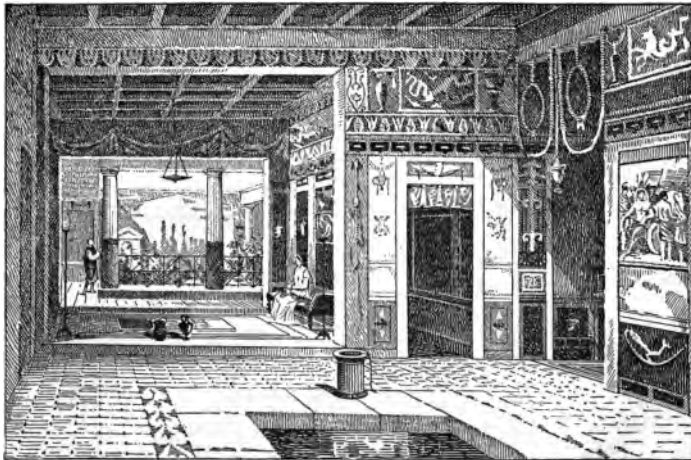
**18. Pronouns.** A pronoun (*pro*, 'instead of,' and *noun*) is a word used instead of a noun.

Thus, in *I am studying Latin*, *I* is used instead of the speaker's name. Pronouns are often used to avoid repeating the same noun: as, *The soldiers are weary; they have marched many hours.*

a. Nouns and pronouns are called *substantives*.

**19. Adjectives.** An adjective is a word that describes a noun or pronoun, and is said to belong to the word which it describes: as, *The great forest was full of beautiful flowers.*

**20. Verbs.** A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) about a person or thing: as, *The girl is carrying water. She has a rose in her hair.*



INTERIOR VIEW OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON I

**Carpe diem**— Make the most of today<sup>1</sup>

### FIRST PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX

**21. Subject and Predicate.** A sentence is a group of words expressing a thought. A sentence consists of two parts, a *subject* and a *predicate*.

**22.** The *subject* is the person or thing spoken of.

**23.** The *predicate* says something about the subject.

SUBJECT	PREDICATE
<b>Puel'la</b> <i>The girl</i>	<b>rēgi'nam vo'cat</b> <i>calls the queen</i>
<b>Les'bia</b> <i>Lesbia</i>	<b>bo'nam memo'riam ha'bet</b> <i>has a good memory</i>

**24. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Some verbs are followed by nouns or pronouns which receive their action and complete the sense. Such verbs are called *transitive* verbs, and the nouns or pronouns are called the *direct objects*.

Thus, in the sentences above, **vocat** (*calls*) and **habet** (*has*) are transitive verbs, and **rēginam** (*queen*) and **memoriam** (*memory*) are their direct objects.

**25.** Verbs that have no direct object are called *intransitive* verbs : as,

**Puel'la pro'perat**, *the girl hastens*

**Agri'cola labō'rat**, *the farmer toils*

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, a Roman poet. Literally, *Seize the day*.

26. A form of the verb *to be* (*is, are, was, etc.*), connecting the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate, is called the *copula* ('joiner' or 'link'): as,

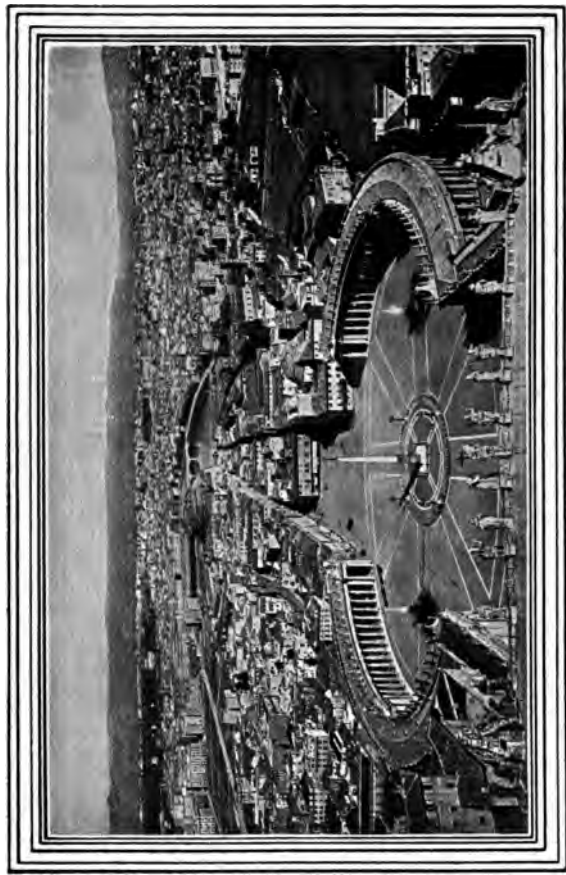
*Iū'lia est pul'chra puel'la, Julia is a pretty girl*

### EXERCISE

27. Pronounce the Latin of the following sentences and name the nouns, pronouns, adjectives, verbs, copulas, subjects, objects, and predicates, and state whether the verbs are transitive or intransitive:

1. E'go pa'triam a'mō.  
*I (my) country love.*
2. Puel'lae in mag'nam sil'vam pro'perant.  
*(The) girls into (the) great forest are-hastening.*
3. Les'bia, pul'chra fi'lia agri'colae, nūl'lām  
*Lesbia, (the) beautiful daughter of (the) farmer, no*  
*pecū'niam ha'bet.*  
*money has.*
4. Agri'cola fi'liam ex par'vā ca'sā vo'cat.  
*(The) farmer (his) daughter from (the) little cottage calls.*
5. Is pul'chram puel'lām a'mat.  
*He (the) pretty girl loves.*
6. Lin'gua Latī'na est pul'chra.  
*The language Latin is beautiful.*

NOTE. Latin has no article *the* or *a*; thus **puella** may mean *the girl, a girl*, or simply *girl*. Further, the possessive adjectives *my, your, his, her, etc.* are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them. Note, too, in 6 that in Latin the adjective may follow the noun.



VIEW OF ROME FROM THE DOME OF ST. PETER'S CHURCH

From the dome of St. Peter's, over four hundred feet high, the work of Michelangelo, one obtains a wonderful view of the city. Immediately below is the Piazza of St. Peter's, an imposing ellipse inclosed by huge colonnades. In the middle distance are the Tiber and the circular tomb of Hadrian. The flat expanse beyond the river, now densely peopled, was the Campus Martius of ancient Rome and almost without buildings



## LESSON II

Audentēs fortūna iuvat— Fortune favors the brave<sup>1</sup>

### INFLECTION AND CASES

**28. Inflection.** Words may change their forms to indicate some change in their meaning, or their use in a sentence: as, *is, are; know, knew; we, us; woman, woman's, women*. This change is called *inflection*.

**29.** The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation*; that of a noun, adjective, or pronoun, its *declension*.

**30. Declension.** To decline a word means to give in order all its different forms: as, *who, whose, whom*. Each one of the forms is called a *case*.

**31. Cases in English.** Observe the following sentences:

*Who* is this man?

*Whose* son is he?

*Whom* do I see?

We use the form *who* as the subject, *whose* to denote possession, and *whom* as the object. The three forms illustrate the three cases found in English.

The subject case is called the *Nominative* case.

The case of the possessor is called the *Possessive* case.

The object case is called the *Objective* case.

**32. Cases in Latin.** In Latin the subject case is called the *Nom'inative*; the possessive, or case of the possessor, is called the *Gen'itive*; and the object case is called the *Accu'sative*.

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil, Rome's greatest epic poet.

Gal'ba (NOMINATIVE) est agri'cola, *Galba* (SUBJECT) *is a farmer*  
 Gal'bae (GENITIVE) fi'lia est Les'bia, *Galba's* (POSSESSOR) *daughter*  
*is Lesbia*  
 Gal'bam (ACCUSATIVE) fi'lia a'mat, (*his*) *daughter loves Galba*  
 (OBJECT)

**33. Rule for Nominative Subject.** *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

**34. Rule for Genitive of the Possessor.** *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*

**35. Rule for Accusative Object.** *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

**36.** When the nominative singular ends in -a (as, *Galba*), the genitive singular ends in -ae and the accusative singular in -am.

### EXERCISES

**37.** In the following sentences add the proper Latin endings :

1. *Lesbia* (SUBJECT) *loves the farmer* (OBJECT), Lesbi- amat agricol-
2. *The farmer's* (POSSESSOR) *daughter* (SUBJECT) *loves Galba* (OBJECT), agricol- fili- amat Galb-
3. *The farmer* (SUBJECT) *calls Galba's* (POSSESSOR) *daughter* (OBJECT), agricol- vocat Galba- fili-

**38.** State what nouns in the following sentences would be nominative, genitive, and accusative if translated into Latin :

1. A lion was terrifying the villagers.
2. A hunter found the lion's den.
3. The hunter shot the lion and captured the lion's cubs.
4. The lion's cubs bit the hunter's hand.

## LESSON III

Fiat lūx— Let there be light<sup>1</sup>

### FORMS AND POSITION

**39. English and Latin Compared.** Observe the following sentences :

*Galba loves his daughter*

*His daughter loves Galba*

The nouns *Galba* and *daughter* have the same form in both these sentences, although the noun that is the subject in the one becomes the object in the other. In other words, the nominative and the objective case are alike in English, and the only way to distinguish them is by the order of the words.

In the Latin of this sentence no doubt can arise, for the subject ends in *-a* and the object in *-am*, and this remains true no matter in what order the words are written.

Gal'ba a'mat fi'liam	} <i>Galba loves his daughter</i>
Fi'liam a'mat Gal'ba	
A'mat Gal'ba fi'liam	
Gal'ba fi'liam a'mat	

As you see, all these arrangements mean the same thing. The *form* of the Latin noun, therefore, and *not its position* in the sentence, shows its use.

**40. Position of Subject and Verb.** The *subject* of a short, disconnected sentence generally stands *first*; the *verb*, *last*. But *est*, *is*, and other forms of the verb *to be* usually stand, as in English, between the subject and a noun or adjective in the predicate : as,

*Gal'ba est agri'cola, Galba is a farmer*

<sup>1</sup> From the Latin translation of the Bible.

**41. Position of Genitive.** The genitive may stand either before or after the noun to which it belongs: as, *Gal'bae fi'lia* or *fi'lia Gal'bae*, *Galba's daughter*.

### VOCABULARY

**42.** Learn the following words so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English:

*agri'cola*, farmer

*fi'lia*, daughter

*puel'la*, girl

*a'mat*, loves, is-loving

*pro'perat*, hastens, is-hastening

*vo'cat*, calls, is-calling

*rēgī'na*, queen

### EXERCISES

NOTE. In translating a Latin genitive into English we may use either the preposition *of* and the noun, or its possessive case: as, *filia rēginae*, *the daughter of the queen*, or *the queen's daughter*.

**43.** 1. *Rēgina puellam amat.* 2. *Puella rēginam amat.*  
3. *Filia agricolae properat.* 4. *Puella filiam agricolae vocat.*  
5. *Filia agricolae puellam amat.* 6. *Rēgina agricolam vocat,*  
*agricola properat.*

**44.** 1. The farmer is-calling (his) daughter. 2. The daughter is-calling the farmer. 3. The girl loves the queen's daughter. 4. The queen's daughter calls the girl. 5. The queen is-hastening.



SINGING THE WEDDING SONG

## LESSON IV

Omne initium est difficile—Every beginning is hard<sup>1</sup>

### NUMBER · AGREEMENT OF VERBS

**45. Number.** Latin, like English, has two numbers, *singular* and *plural*.

**46. Plural of Nouns.** In English the plural of nouns is usually formed by adding *-s* or *-es* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending.

#### SINGULAR

NOM. (subject)	puell- <b>a</b> , <i>girl</i>
GEN. (possessor)	puell- <b>ae</b> , <i>girl's, of the girl</i>
ACC. (object)	puell- <b>am</b> , <i>girl</i>

#### PLURAL

NOM. (subject)	puell- <b>ae</b> , <i>girls</i>
GEN. (possessor)	puell- <b>arum</b> , <i>girls', of the girls</i>
ACC. (object)	puell- <b>as</b> , <i>girls</i>

Note that the genitive singular and the nominative plural are alike.

**a.** Some Latin words ending in *-a* have passed into English without change and form the plural in *-ae*: *as, alumna, alumnae; formula, formulae; minutia, minutiae; nebula, nebulae; vertebra, vertebrae*. Consult the dictionary for the meaning of these words.

**47. Plural of Verbs.** Verbs, as well as nouns, form the plural with different endings. In the singular the third person ends in *-t*, in the plural in *-nt*. Thus,

porta- <b>t</b> , <i>he (she, it) carries</i>	porta- <b>nt</b> , <i>they carry</i>
puella porta <b>t</b> , <i>the girl carries</i>	puellae porta <b>nt</b> , <i>the girls carry</i>

<sup>1</sup> A Latin proverb.

The endings **-t** and **-nt**, which show the person and number of the verb, are called *personal endings*, and take the place of the English personal pronouns.

**48. Rule for Agreement of Verbs.** *The finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

### EXERCISES

**49.** Write and give orally the nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of the Latin nouns meaning *farmer, daughter, queen, girl*.

**50.** Write and give orally the third person singular and plural of the Latin verbs meaning *love, call, hasten*.

**51. Derivation.** Define the following English words : *vocal, vocation, filial, amiable, agriculture*. To what Latin words are they related ?



PLAYING JACKSTONES

## LESSON V

Bis dat qui cito dat—He gives twice who gives quickly<sup>1</sup>

### THE DATIVE CASE • INDIRECT OBJECT • PREDICATE NOUN

**52. Dative Case.** In English many relationships between words are expressed by *to, for, from, with, in, at*, and the like. These are called prepositions. Latin, too, often makes a similar use of prepositions, but frequently expresses such relationships by means of case forms that English does not possess. One of these cases is called the *Da'tive*.

**53.** The dative case is used after verbs and adjectives to express the relation conveyed in English by the prepositions *to* or *for* somebody or something.

He gave the money *to John*

They are ready *for war*

She was kind *to him*

He is no match *for you*

NOTE. *To* or *for* in expressions of motion, like *He went to New York*, *He sailed for Europe*, are not denoted by the dative.

**54.** What dative relations do you discover in the following?

To Captain Smith was given the cross of war, an honor great enough for any man. He was always ready for action and was equal to all demands. To him nothing seemed impossible. No wonder the general said to him, "France gives to you an honor well deserved."

**55. Case Endings of Dative.** When the nominative singular ends in *-a*, the dative singular ends in *-ae* and the dative plural in *-is*.

NOTE. The genitive singular, the dative singular, and the nominative plural have the same ending, *-ae*; but the uses of the three cases are different.

<sup>1</sup> From Andrea Alciati, an Italian author of maxims.

**56. Indirect Object.** In English the person to whom something is *given, told, refused*, etc. is called the *indirect object*.

*The queen gives money to the girl (or gives the girl money)*

**57.** The indirect object is clearly a dative relation (§ 53) and is expressed in Latin by the dative case.

*Rēgina puellae pecūniam dat*

**58. Rule for Dative of Indirect Object.** *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

**59.** The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

**60. Predicate Noun.** A noun standing in the predicate, describing or defining the subject and connected with it by some form of the verb *to be*, is called a *predicate noun*.

*Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer*

**61. Rule for Predicate Noun.** *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

### EXERCISES

**62.** Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the nouns *agricola, rēgina, puella*.

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

**63.** 1. *Puella est rēgina.* 2. *Puellae sunt rēginae.* 3. *Agricola properat.* 4. *Agricolae properant.* 5. *Filiae agricolārum rēginam vocant.* 6. *Filia agricolae rēginam vocat.* 7. *Rēgina puellis agricolae pecūniam dat.* 8. *Filiae rēginae fābulās puellis agricolārum narrant.*

**64.** 1. The queen is a farmer's daughter. 2. The girls give the farmers' money to the queen. 3. The girl is telling the queen's daughter a story. 4. The girl loves the queen's daughter. 5. The girls are daughters of farmers.

## LESSON VI

*Ars longa, vita brevis* — Art is long, time is fleeting<sup>1</sup>

### THE ABLATIVE CASE • THE FIRST DECLENSION

**65. Ablative Case.** Another case lacking in English, but found in Latin, is the *Ablative*. This case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from, by, with, at, in, or on*. Sometimes, as will be shown later (§ 79), Latin uses similar prepositions with the ablative.

**66. Ablative Relations.** What ablative relations do you discover in the following sentences?

At two o'clock the troops began to march by, the general with his staff leading the van. Many thousands were in line and the ground shook with their martial tread. From sidewalks, windows, and housetops the spectators viewed the wonderful sight. On every side flags were waving in the breeze and everyone was wild with joy. Our boys were back from France.

**67. Case Endings of Ablative.** When the nominative singular ends in *-a*, the ablative singular ends in *-ā*, and the ablative plural in *-is*.

*a.* Note that the final *-a* is long in the ablative and short in the nominative: *aqua*, nominative; *aquā*, ablative.

*b.* Note that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

**68. Declensions.** Latin has five declensions.

<sup>1</sup> Latin form of a saying attributed to the Greek writer Hippocrates. Literally, *Art long, life short*. The verb *to be* is often omitted when it can readily be supplied.

**69.** The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular.

**70. First Declension.** Nouns having the ending -ae in the genitive singular belong to the First Declension. They are declined as follows :

	NOUN	TRANSLATION	USE OF EACH CASE
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	aqua	<i>the water</i>	The subject
GEN.	aquae	<i>of the water, or the water's</i>	The possessor
DAT.	aquae	<i>to or for the water</i>	The indirect object
ACC.	aquam	<i>the water</i>	The direct object
ABL.	aquā	<i>from, by, with, at, in, or on the water</i>	Relation denoted by the prepositions <i>from, by, with, at, in, or on</i>
		PLURAL	
NOM.	aquae	<i>the waters</i>	The subject
GEN.	aquā'rum	<i>of the waters, or the waters'</i>	The possessor
DAT.	aquis	<i>to or for the waters</i>	The indirect object
ACC.	aquās	<i>the waters</i>	The direct object
ABL.	aquis	<i>from, by, with, at, in, or on the waters</i>	Relation denoted by the prepositions <i>from, by, with, at, in, or on</i>

**a.** The nouns *filia*, *daughter*, and *dea*, *goddess*, have *filiābus* and *deābus* in the dative and ablative plural.

**71. Base.** That part of the word which remains unchanged throughout the declension, and to which the terminations are added, is called the *base*. Thus, *aqu-* is the base of *aqua*.

**72. How to learn a Declension.** First pronounce each form carefully, with due regard for the sounds of the letters and the accent, giving the corresponding English meaning. Repeat again and again until you have the declension memorized. Then close your book and write the Latin forms, marking the quantity of the long vowels in the case endings, and write also the meaning of each form. Then open your book and correct any errors in your work. For further drill make a blank scheme of the declension as shown below, and, pointing rapidly with your pencil to the different spaces, give quickly the Latin forms that would appear there, using a variety of words. Persist in drilling yourself until you can give the ten Latin forms complete in ten seconds.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	-----	-----
GEN.	-----	-----
DAT.	-----	-----
ACC.	-----	-----
ABL.	-----	-----

## EXERCISES

**73.** Write the declension of *puella*, *dea*, and *agricola*, with the meaning of each form.

**74.** Give orally the declension of *fābula*, *rēgina*, *filia*, *pecūnia*.

**75.** Give the case or the cases, and the meaning or the meanings, of the following: *puellārum*, *filiabus*, *pecūniae*, *fābulā*, *rēginam*, *deās*, *agricolis*.

**76. Derivation.** The noun *aqua* appears in the English words *aquarium*, *aqueous*, *aquatic*, *aqueduct*. What do they mean? Consult the English dictionary if you do not know.

## LESSON VII

*Mēns sāna in corpore sānō* — A sound mind in a sound body<sup>1</sup>

### PREPOSITIONS

**77.** While many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

**78. Prepositions with Accusative.** The relations *to*, *into*, and *through* in expressions of motion are expressed in Latin by the prepositions *ad*, *in*, and *per*, with the accusative.

*Nauta ad aquam properat, the sailor hastens to the water*

*Nauta in aquam properat, the sailor hastens into the water*

*Nauta per aquam properat, the sailor hastens through the water*

**79. Prepositions with Ablative.** The relations *from the side of*, *in company with*, and *in* or *on* are expressed in Latin by the prepositions *ā* or *ab*, *cum*, and *in*, with the ablative.

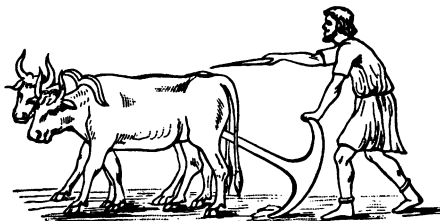
*Nauta ab aquā properat, the sailor hastens from the water*

*Nauta cum Galbā properat, the sailor hastens with Galba*

*Nauta in aquā est, the sailor is in (or on) the water*

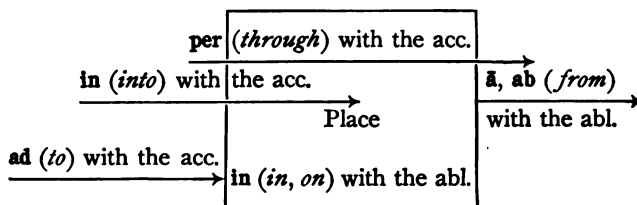
NOTE. The preposition *ā* is used only before words beginning with a consonant, *ab* before either vowels or consonants.

<sup>1</sup> From Juvenal, a Roman poet.



AGRICOLA

80. The meanings of *ā* (or *ab*), *ad*, *in*, and *per* are illustrated by the following diagram, the square representing the place in question :



## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

81. 1. Nautae aquam amant ; agricolae terram amant. 2. Nauta cum filiabus rēginae ab terrā ad aquam properat. 3. Filiae rēginae in (*on*) aquā sunt. 4. Nautae per aquās properant. 5. Agricola filiabus rēginae aquam dat. 6. Puellae agricolārū in terrā sunt.

82. 1. Lesbia hastens from the land to the water. 2. The sailors are in the water. 3. Galba is with the farmers' daughters. 4. The queens' daughters hasten through the land.

~~~~~

### First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, §§ 732-736

I AM OF THE OPINION THAT THE VALUE OF CLASSICAL STUDIES IS SERIOUSLY UNDERESTIMATED TODAY. WHOLLY OUTSIDE OF THEIR ACKNOWLEDGED LITERARY VALUE, CLASSICAL STUDIES CULTIVATE THE POWER OF EXPRESSION AND A DISCRIMINATING USE OF WORDS ESSENTIAL TO CLEARNESS OF THINKING. — HERBERT C. HOOVER

## LESSON VIII

Numquam retrōrsū — Never turn back<sup>1</sup>

### GENDER · DECLENSION, AGREEMENT, AND POSITION OF ADJECTIVES · THE PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

**83. Gender.** Latin, like English, has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

**84.** Gender in English is distinction according to sex. Names of males are masculine; of females, feminine; and of things without animal life, neuter. This is called *natural* gender.

**85.** The rules for natural gender are applied also in Latin to beings having life: words denoting males are masculine, and words denoting females are feminine. But the gender of words denoting things is generally determined by the termination of the nominative singular. This is called *grammatical* gender. Hence nouns which in English would be neuter may in Latin be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Thus, in Latin, *sōl*, *sun*, is masculine; *lūna*, *moon*, feminine; *caelum*, *sky*, neuter.

**86. Gender of Nouns of First Declension.** Nouns of the first declension are *feminine* unless they denote males.

Thus, *aqua*, *water*, is feminine, but *nauta*, *sailor*, is masculine.

**87. Adjectives.** Examine the following sentence:

*Puella parva bonam rēginam amat*, *the little girl likes the good queen*

In this sentence *parva*, *little*, and *bonam*, *good*, are not nouns, but descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives* and are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

<sup>1</sup> A Latin slogan. Literally, *Never backward*.

**88. Declension of Adjectives.** In English the adjective remains unchanged even when the noun changes its form : as, *the good man, the good man's, the good men*. In other words, in English, adjectives are not declined. In Latin, adjectives have declensions like those of nouns.

**89. Feminine adjectives in -a** have the same case forms as nouns in -a. Decline nouns and their adjectives together, as follows :

**aqua** (base aqu-), F., *water*; **bona** (base bon-), F., *good*

|      | NOUN     | ADJECTIVE |                                       | TERMINATIONS |
|------|----------|-----------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| NOM. | aqua     | bona      | <i>good water</i>                     | -a           |
| GEN. | aquae    | bonae     | <i>of good water</i>                  | -ae          |
| DAT. | aquae    | bonae     | <i>to or for good water</i>           | -ae          |
| ACC. | aquam    | bonam     | <i>good water</i>                     | -am          |
| ABL. | aquā     | bonā      | <i>from, with, by, in good water</i>  | -ā           |
| NOM. | aquae    | bonae     | <i>good waters</i>                    | -ae          |
| GEN. | aquā'rum | bonā'rum  | <i>of good waters</i>                 | -ārum        |
| DAT. | aquīs    | bonīs     | <i>to or for good waters</i>          | -īs          |
| ACC. | aquās    | bonās     | <i>good waters</i>                    | -ās          |
| ABL. | aquīs    | bonīs     | <i>from, with, by, in good waters</i> | -īs          |

**90. Agreement of Adjectives.** In the phrase **aqua bona**, we have a feminine noun **aqua** combined with a feminine adjective **bona**. When the phrase is declined, a change in the number or the case of the noun is accompanied by a corresponding change in the adjective. This is called *agreement*.

**91. Rule for Agreement of Adjectives.** *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

**92.** An adjective may either precede or follow its noun.

**93. Predicate Adjective.** An adjective standing in the predicate, but describing the subject, is called a *predicate adjective*.

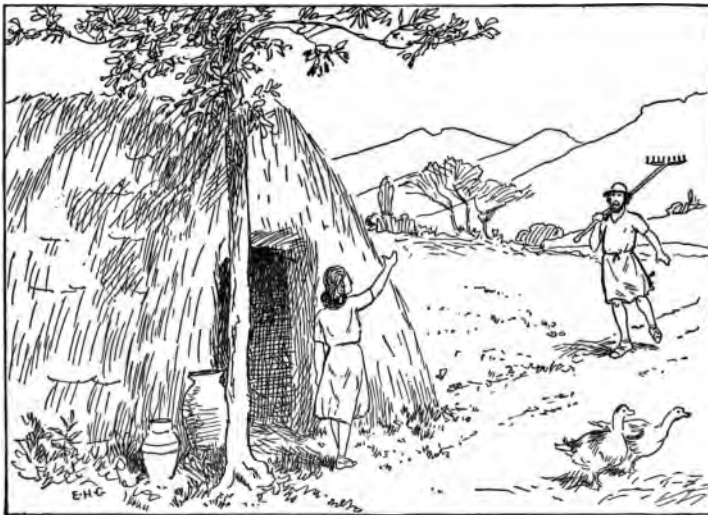
**Puellae sunt pulchrae, the girls are pretty**

**NOTE.** In English the predicate adjective is often called the attribute complement or subjective complement.

### GALBA ET LESBIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 361

**94.** Galba est agricola. Lesbia est filia Galbae. Lesbia est pulchra. Galba filiam pulchram amat. Agricola parvae puellae bonās fābulās nārrat. Galba cum Lesbiā in casā parvā habitat. Galba et Lesbia casam parvam amant. Lesbia Galbam vocat et agricola ad parvam casam properat (*see picture*).



**95.** 1. The little cottage is beautiful. 2. Galba hastens through the land to the pretty cottage. 3. Galba is with the sailor. 4. The girls hasten into the cottage. 5. Farmers live in small cottages.

## LESSON IX

Fit via vi—Energy wins the way<sup>1</sup>

### THE SECOND DECLENSION • THE VOCATIVE CASE

**96. Second Declension.** Nouns ending in -i in the genitive singular belong to the Second Declension.

**97. Gender and Declension.** Nominatives of the second declension ending in -us or -er are masculine; those ending in -um are neuter.

Thus, *servus*, *slave*, and *ager*, *field*, are masculine; but *oppidum*, *town*, is neuter.

Masculine nouns in -us are declined as follows:

**servus** (base *serv-*), M., *slave*

|      | TERMINATIONS  |     |  | TERMINATIONS    |       |
|------|---------------|-----|--|-----------------|-------|
| NOM. | <i>servus</i> | -us |  | <i>servi</i>    | -i    |
| GEN. | <i>servi</i>  | -i  |  | <i>servōrum</i> | -ōrum |
| DAT. | <i>servō</i>  | -ō  |  | <i>servis</i>   | -is   |
| ACC. | <i>servum</i> | -um |  | <i>servōs</i>   | -ōs   |
| ABL. | <i>servō</i>  | -ō  |  | <i>servis</i>   | -is   |

NOTE. In learning all declensions, follow the suggestions given in § 72.

**a.** Some Latin words ending in -us have passed into English without change and form the plural in -i: as, *alumnus*, *alumni*; *syllabus*, *syllabi*; *focus*, *foci*; *radius*, *radii*; *stimulus*, *stimuli*; *narcissus*, *narcissi*. Consult the dictionary for the meaning of these words.

**98. Vocative Case.** A noun used to address or call a person is in the vocative case (from Latin *vocō*, *I call*). The form of the vocative is regularly the same as the nominative, but the vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension ends in -e: as, *serve*, *O slave*; *Mārce*, *O Marcus*.

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil, a Roman poet. Literally, *A way is made by force*.

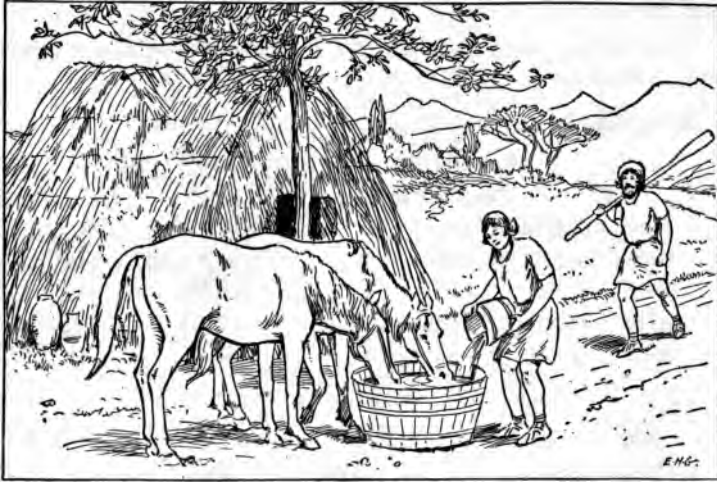
99. In English the name of the person addressed often stands first. The Latin vocative rarely stands first.

*Lesbia, the cottage is small, casa, Lesbia, est parva*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

100. 1. Quō nauta properat? 2. Nauta ad parvam casam Galbae properat. 3. Ubi est Galba? 4. Galba cum Lesbiā et cum amicis Lesbiae in casā parvā est. 5. Agricola parvis



puellis bonās fābulās nārrat. 6. Ubi, Mārce, est servus agricolae? 7. Servus agricolae equis aquam dat. 8. Aqua est bona et equi bonam aquam amant.

101. 1. Marcus, Galba is-calling the slaves. 2. Slaves, where are the horses? 3. The horses, Galba, are-hastening to the cottage. 4. The water of-the-cottage is good. 5. The slaves are the friends of-the-horses.

## LESSON X

Sic semper tyrannis — Thus ever to tyrants<sup>1</sup>

### THE SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED) · APPPOSITION

**102. Declension of Nouns in -er.** Masculine nouns in -er of the second declension are declined as follows :

**puer** (base puer-), M., *boy* ; **ager** (base agr-), M., *field*

|      | TERMINATIONS |       |     | TERMINATIONS |         |       |
|------|--------------|-------|-----|--------------|---------|-------|
| NOM. | puer         | ager  | —   | puerī        | agrī    | -ī    |
| GEN. | puerī        | agrī  | -ī  | puerōrum     | agrōrum | -ōrum |
| DAT. | puerō        | agrō  | -ō  | puerīs       | agrīs   | -īs   |
| ACC. | puerum       | agrum | -um | puerōs       | agrōs   | -ōs   |
| ABL. | puerō        | agrō  | -ō  | puerīs       | agrīs   | -īs   |

**a.** Nouns in -er are declined just like *servus*, except that they have no termination -us in the nominative singular.

**b.** In *puer* the *e* appears in each case ; in *ager* it appears only in the nominative singular. Most nouns in -er are declined like *ager*. The genitive singular shows whether the noun follows *puer* or *ager*.

**c.** The noun *vir*, *man*, is declined like *puer* : *vir*, *virī*, *virō*, etc.

**103. Apposition.** Observe the following sentences :

**Mārcus** nauta ad casam properat, *Marcus, the sailor, hastens to the cottage*

**Galba** Mārcum nautam amat, *Galba loves Marcus, the sailor*

In each sentence the word *sailor* is added to *Marcus* to explain who he is. A noun explaining another noun, and signifying the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*, and is said to be *in apposition*. A noun and its appositive agree in case.

**104. Rule for Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Virginia.

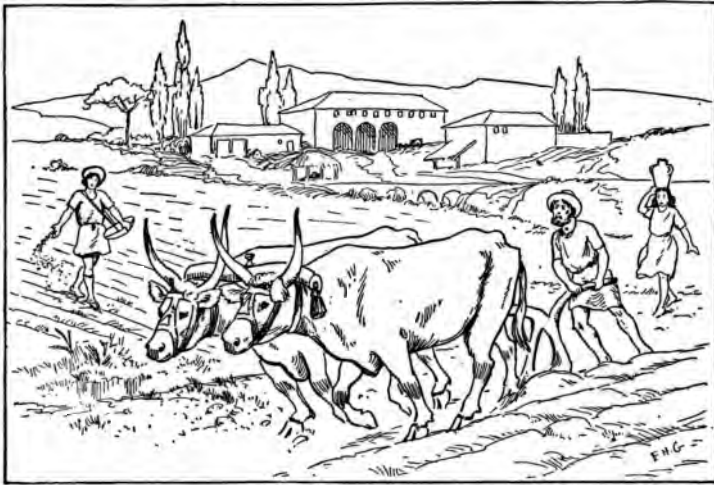
**EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

**DIALOGUE. PUERĪ, SEXTUS ET QUĪNTUS**

**105. SEXTUS.** Ubi, Quinte, servi Galbae agricolae labōrant?

**QUĪNTUS.** In agrīs, Sexte, servi Galbae agricolae labōrant..



**LESBIA PER AGRŌS PROPERAT ET AQUAM AD SERVŌS PORTAT**

**S.** Quis per agrŏs ad servŏs properat?

**Q.** Lesbia, filia Galbae agricolae, per agrŏs ad servŏs properat.

**S.** Quid Lesbia, pulchra filia Galbae agricolae, portat?

**Q.** Aquam, Sexte, Lesbia portat. Aquam servis Lesbia dat et servi Lesbiam, bonam filiam Galbae agricolae, amant.

**106. 1.** Who lives with the friends of-Marcus the sailor?  
**2.** What are the boys' horses carrying, Sextus? **3.** Who is-telling stories to-Lesbia, Galba's little daughter? **4.** Whither are the men carrying water?

## LESSON XI

*Amicus est alter Idem* — A friend is a second self<sup>1</sup>

### THE SECOND DECLENSION (CONTINUED) • GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION • QUESTIONS

**107. Declension of Nouns in -um.** Neuter nouns in -um belong to the Second Declension, and are declined as follows :

**oppidum** (base **oppid-**), N., *town*

|      | TERMINATIONS |     |           | TERMINATIONS |  |
|------|--------------|-----|-----------|--------------|--|
| NOM. | oppidum      | -um | oppida    | -a           |  |
| GEN. | oppidi       | -i  | oppidōrum | -ōrum        |  |
| DAT. | oppidō       | -ō  | oppidīs   | -īs          |  |
| ACC. | oppidum      | -um | oppida    | -a           |  |
| ABL. | oppidō       | -ō  | oppidīs   | -īs          |  |

**a.** Some Latin words ending in -um have passed into English without change and form the plural in -a: as, *stratum*, *strata*; *datum*, *data*; *curriculum*, *curricula*; *memorandum*, *memoranda*.

**108. General Rules of Declension.** Write side by side the declension of *servus*, *aqua*, and *oppidum*. A comparison of the forms gives us the following rules, which apply not only to the first and second declensions but to all five (§ 68):

**a.** The nominative and accusative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.

**b.** The accusative of masculines and feminines ends in -m in the singular, and in -s in the plural.

**c.** The dative and ablative plural are alike.

**d.** Final -i and -o are long; final -a is short except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, who wrote a famous essay on friendship.

## QUESTIONS

109. Questions may be introduced, as in English, by such words as **quis**? *who*? **quid**? *what*? **ubi**? *where*? and **quō**? *whither*? But questions that can be answered by *yes* or *no* have, in Latin, a special question sign **-ne** attached to the emphatic word, which stands first and is usually the verb.

**Est'ne puella pulchra?** *Is the girl pretty?*

**Properant'ne pueri?** *Are the boys hastening?*

110. There are no single Latin words meaning simply *yes* and *no*. Questions are usually answered in the affirmative by repeating the verb; in the negative, by repeating the verb with **nōn**, *not*.

**Properant'ne pueri?** **Properant.** *Are the boys hastening? Yes.*

**Properant'ne pueri?** **Nōn properant.** *Are the boys hastening? No.*

## EXERCISES

111. **Derivation.** Using the prefixes **ex-** (*out*), **im-** (*in*), **re-** (*back*), **sup-** (*under*), **trāns-** (*across*), with **-port**, from the Latin verb **portō**, *to carry*, make five English words and define them.

112. What English words in the following paragraph do you know to be of Latin derivation? Define the words, using the dictionary if necessary, and give the Latin sources.

Below the terrace was an aquarium fed by an aqueduct, a gift of Mr. B——, concerning whose bounty and fabulous wealth the inhabitants of the town love to tell. But these data are not essential to my narrative, and I will speak only of his love for the sea, aquatic sports, and nautical affairs.

DIALOGUE. PUELLA ET SERVUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

113. PUELLA. Quō, serve, virī properant?

SERVUS. In oppidum, puella, virī properant.

P. Quis virōs et puerōs con/vocat?

S. Rēgīna bona virōs et puerōs con/vocat.

P. Cūr rēgīna bona virōs et puerōs con/vocat?

S. Ad arma, puella, rēgīna populum vocat.

P. Estne puer Sextus cum viris?

S. Est, et arma bonae rēgīnae portat. Sextus bonam rēgīnam amat.

P. Ubi, serve, est Quintus, amicus puerī Sexti? Estne Quintus in oppidō?

S. In oppidō Quintus nōn est. Quintus est cum Mārcō nautā.

P. Labōrant'ne Quintus et Mārcus?

S. Labō'rant.

114. 1. Are the men of-the-town hastening, Marcus? No (*Latin*, they are not hastening). 2. What are the farmers' boys carrying? They-are-carrying arms. 3. Whither are the queens calling the peoples? 4. The queens are-calling the peoples from the fields into the towns. 5. Why do the good queens call the people together? 6. Are the slaves toiling in the fields? Yes (*Latin*, they-are-toiling).

IN NO OTHER COUNTRY IS IT SO NECESSARY AS IN OURS TO PROVIDE FULLY, FOR THOSE WHO HAVE THE CHANCE AND DESIRE TO TAKE IT, BROAD AND HIGH LIBERAL EDUCATION, IN WHICH ONE ESSENTIAL ELEMENT SHALL BE CLASSICAL TRAINING.—THEODORE ROOSEVELT

## LESSON XII

Semper fidēlis — Always faithful<sup>1</sup>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS GENITIVE OF NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*

115. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. We have seen that feminine adjectives in *-a*, like *bona*, are declined like *aqua* (§ 89). So masculine adjectives in *-us*, such as *bonus*, are declined like *servus*; and neuter adjectives in *-um*, such as *bonum*, are declined like *oppidum*. For this reason such adjectives are called Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

116. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are declined as follows:

**servus bonus** (bases *serv-* *bon-*), M., *the good slave*

|      | TERMINATIONS  |              |            |                 | TERMINATIONS   |              |  |
|------|---------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------|--|
| NOM. | <i>servus</i> | <i>bonus</i> | <i>-us</i> | <i>servi</i>    | <i>boni</i>    | <i>-i</i>    |  |
| GEN. | <i>servi</i>  | <i>boni</i>  | <i>-i</i>  | <i>servōrum</i> | <i>bonōrum</i> | <i>-ōrum</i> |  |
| DAT. | <i>servō</i>  | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>servīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |  |
| ACC. | <i>servum</i> | <i>bonum</i> | <i>-um</i> | <i>servōs</i>   | <i>bonōs</i>   | <i>-ōs</i>   |  |
| ABL. | <i>servō</i>  | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>servīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |  |

**oppidum bonum** (bases *oppid-* *bon-*), N., *the good town*

|      | TERMINATIONS   |              |            |                  | TERMINATIONS   |              |  |
|------|----------------|--------------|------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|--|
| NOM. | <i>oppidum</i> | <i>bonum</i> | <i>-um</i> | <i>oppida</i>    | <i>bona</i>    | <i>-a</i>    |  |
| GEN. | <i>oppidi</i>  | <i>boni</i>  | <i>-i</i>  | <i>oppidōrum</i> | <i>bonōrum</i> | <i>-ōrum</i> |  |
| DAT. | <i>oppidō</i>  | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>oppidīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |  |
| ACC. | <i>oppidum</i> | <i>bonum</i> | <i>-um</i> | <i>oppida</i>    | <i>bona</i>    | <i>-a</i>    |  |
| ABL. | <i>oppidō</i>  | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>oppidīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |  |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the United States marines.

Decline together *equus parvus*, *the small horse*; *bellum magnum*, *the great war*.

**117. Genitive of Nouns in -ius and -ium.** Nouns in -ius and -ium end in -i in the genitive, not in -ii, and the accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: nominative *fi'lius* (*son*), genitive *fi'li*, dative *filiō*, etc.; nominative *auxi'lium* (*aid*), genitive *auxi'li*, dative *auxiliō*, etc.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

## DIALOGUE. MĀRCUS ET FĪLIUS

**118. MĀRCUS.** Quid, fili,<sup>1</sup> servi Galbae agricolae in magnum oppidum portant?

FĪLIUS. Frumentum, Mārce, servi Galbae agricolae in magnum oppidum portant. Rēgina magni oppidi populum ad arma vocat. Rēgina novum et magnum bellum parat.<sup>2</sup> Arma et frumentum et pecūniam, auxilia<sup>3</sup> belli, parat.<sup>2</sup>

M. Ubi sunt boni filii pulchrae rēginae?

F. Cum sociis, Mārce, filii rēginae sunt.

M. Dantne socii bonae rēginae auxilium?

F. Dant. Socii arma nova et pecūniam magnam rēginae dant.

M. Estne, fili,<sup>1</sup> terra rēginae pulchra?

F. Pulchra et magna est terra rēginae. Populus oppidi bonam rēginam et pulchram terram amat.

1. *fili* is the vocative of *filius*. 2. Note that *parat* means *prepare for* as well as *prepare*. 3. In apposition with the preceding nouns.

**119. 1.** The arms of-the-new ally are good. **2.** The sons of-the-allies do-give great assistance to-the-people of-the-small towns. **3.** The farmers are-toiling in the new fields. **4.** Why, (my) son, is the good queen calling the people together? **5.** Are the new allies preparing grain? Yes.

## LESSON XIII

Parvum parva decent—Small things become the small<sup>1</sup>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONTINUED) · ADVERBS

120. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. The complete declension of **bonus**, -a, -um, is given below:

|      | MASC.           | FEM.            | NEUT.           |
|------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| NOM. | <b>bonus</b>    | <b>bona</b>     | <b>bonum</b>    |
| GEN. | <b>boni</b>     | <b>bonae</b>    | <b>boni</b>     |
| DAT. | <b>bono</b>     | <b>bonae</b>    | <b>bono</b>     |
| ACC. | <b>bonum</b>    | <b>bonam</b>    | <b>bonum</b>    |
| ABL. | <b>bono</b>     | <b>bona</b>     | <b>bono</b>     |
| NOM. | <b>boni</b>     | <b>bonae</b>    | <b>bona</b>     |
| GEN. | <b>bono'rum</b> | <b>bona'rum</b> | <b>bono'rum</b> |
| DAT. | <b>bonis</b>    | <b>bonis</b>    | <b>bonis</b>    |
| ACC. | <b>bonos</b>    | <b>bonas</b>    | <b>bona</b>     |
| ABL. | <b>bonis</b>    | <b>bonis</b>    | <b>bonis</b>    |

NOTE. Learn to recite and to write the forms of adjectives *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case. Make a blank scheme (cf. § 72) of the declension above and use it for drill on a variety of adjectives.

a. Decline **magnus**, -a, -um; **parvus**, -a, -um; **novus**, -a, -um.

121. The agreement between an adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. Often the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions and hence have different terminations; for example, **nauta**, *sailor*, being a masculine noun, requires the masculine form

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

of the adjective in agreement. But the masculine adjective **bonus** belongs to the second declension, while **nauta** belongs to the first; hence, *a good sailor* is **nauta bonus**. Learn to decline nouns and adjectives together as follows:

**nauta bonus** (bases **naut- bon-**), M., *the good sailor*

|      |        |       |          |         |
|------|--------|-------|----------|---------|
| NOM. | nauta  | bonus | nautae   | boni    |
| GEN. | nautae | boni  | nautārum | bonōrum |
| DAT. | nautae | bonō  | nautis   | bonis   |
| ACC. | nautam | bonum | nautās   | bonōs   |
| ABL. | nautā  | bonō  | nautis   | bonis   |

**122. Adverbs.** An adverb is a word which modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Most adverbs answer the questions *How? Where? When? To what degree?*

**123. Position of Adverbs.** Adverbs, unless emphatic, stand directly before the words which they modify: as,

**Rēgīna Galbae pecūniam saepe dat,** *the queen often gives money to Galba*

Interrogative adverbs (*where? when? why?* etc.) regularly stand first, as in English. Other adverbs, when emphatic, stand in some unusual position.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 362

**124. 1.** Agricola bonus est in magnō agrō. **2.** Mārcus nauta est amicus agricolae boni. **3.** Mārcus agricolae bonō auxilium saepe dat. **4.** Amat'ne Mārcus agricolam bonum? Amat. **5.** Quō Mārcus cum Galbā, agricolā bonō, properat? In nōtum oppidum. **6.** Agricolae boni multum frūmentum per longās viās portant. **7.** Suntne agrī agricolārum bonōrum magni?

Sunt. 8. Viri oppidi nōti agricolis bonis pecūniam saepe dant.  
 9. Cūr populi oppidōrum nōtōrum agricolās bonōs convocat?  
 Oppida nōta longum bellum parant. 10. Socii nōtae rēginae  
 cum agricolis bonis labōrant.

125. 1. Are the new spears long? No. 2. In the new lands  
 are many famous towns. 3. The reputation of-the-new town is  
 good. 4. The road through the good farmer's fields is new.

## LESSON XIV

Nōn scholae, sed vitae discimus — We learn not for school, but for life<sup>1</sup>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONCLUDED) • THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

126. **Masculine Adjectives in *-er*.** Not all masculine adjectives of the second declension end in *-us*, like **bonus**, but some end in *-er* and are declined like **ager** or **puer** (§ 102). The feminine and neuter nominatives show which model to follow.

#### 127. Declension of **liber, libera, liberum**, *free*:

|      | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | liber     | libera    | liberum   |
| GEN. | liberī    | liberae   | liberī    |
| DAT. | liberō    | liberae   | liberō    |
| ACC. | liberum   | liberam   | liberum   |
| ABL. | liberō    | liberā    | liberō    |
| NOM. | liberī    | liberae   | libera    |
| GEN. | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| DAT. | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |
| ACC. | liberōs   | liberās   | libera    |
| ABL. | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |

<sup>1</sup> From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

# KDR. you'll need this!

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

### 128. Declension of pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, pretty:

|      | MASC.      | FEM.       | NEUT.      |
|------|------------|------------|------------|
| NOM. | pulcher    | pulchra    | pulchrum   |
| GEN. | pulchrī    | pulchrae   | pulchrī    |
| DAT. | pulchrō    | pulchrae   | pulchrō    |
| ACC. | pulchrum   | pulchram   | pulchrum   |
| ABL. | pulchrō    | pulchrā    | pulchrō    |
| NOM. | pulchrī    | pulchrae   | pulchra    |
| GEN. | pulchrōrum | pulchrārum | pulchrōrum |
| DAT. | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   |
| ACC. | pulchrōs   | pulchrās   | pulchra    |
| ABL. | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   |

**129. Dative with Adjectives.** We learned in § 53 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in § 57 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. In English this dative would be in the objective case after the preposition *to* or *for*: as, *near to town*, *fit for service*.

**130. Rule for Dative with Adjectives.** *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are those meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites.*

*Fābula est grāta Lesbiae, the story is pleasing to Lesbia*  
*Ager est proximus oppidō, the field is nearest to the town*

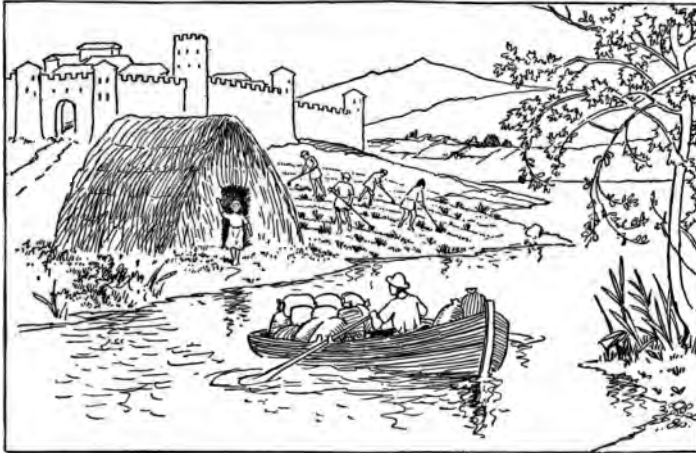
a. Among such adjectives are

- amicus, -a, -um, *friendly (to)*
- inimicus, -a, -um, *hostile (to)*
- grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing (to)*
- proximus, -a, -um, *nearest (to)*

## ĪNSULA MĀRCĪ NAUTAE

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

131. Galba agricola in agris pulchris habitat, Quintus in oppidō magnō et nōtō habitat ; sed Mārcus nauta in insulā parvā habitat. Parva insula est pulchra et grāta Mārcō nautae. Terra est grāta Galbae et Quintō, sed Mārcus altās aquās amat. Īnsula parva Mārci nautae est proxima 5



MĀRCUS FRŪMENTUM Ā TERRĀ AD ĪNSULAM PORTAT

agris pulchris Galbae agricolae. Mārcus ab insulā parvā ad terram saepe nāvigat et per agrōs pulchrōs ad parvam casam Galbae agricolae properat. Lesbia, filia Galbae, Mārcō nautae frūmentum saepe dat et Mārcus frūmentum ā terrā ad parvam insulam portat. Lesbia est Mārcō nautae amica 10 sed inimica Quintō. Agri nōn grāti Quintō sunt. Quintus arma et tēla et bella amat. Estne Mārcus servus? Nōn est. Mārcus est liber.

## LESSON XV

Prō bonō publicō — For the public weal<sup>1</sup>

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

132. Observe the following sentences :

*Marcus is my son*

*Marcus is mine*

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective ; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun. Similarly in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

133. The Latin possessives are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are as follows :

|                            |   |                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Referring to one           | { | meus, mea, meum, <i>my, mine</i><br>tuus, tua, tuum, <i>your, yours</i><br>suus, sua, suum, <i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i>      |
| Referring to more than one | { | noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours</i><br>vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i><br>suus, sua, suum, <i>their (own), theirs</i> |

NOTE. The vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*: as, *mī fili*, (*O*) *my son*; *mī serve*, (*O*) *my slave*.

### 134. Rule for Agreement of the Possessive Adjective.

*The possessive adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in gender, number, and case.*

a. Compare the English and Latin in

*Galba is calling his friends, Galba* } *suōs amicōs vocat*  
*Lesbia is calling her friends, Lesbia* }

*The girls are calling their friends, puellae suōs amicōs vocant*

Observe that *suōs* agrees with *amicōs* and is unaffected by the gender, number, and case of *Galba*, *Lesbia*, or *puellae*.

<sup>1</sup> A Latin slogan.

#### 44 POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

**135. *Suus*, the Reflexive Possessive.** The possessive *suus* is reflexive; that is, it stands in the predicate and refers to the subject, indicating that the subject is the possessor. In English the meaning of the sentence *Galba is calling his daughter* is doubtful, for we cannot tell whether Galba is calling his own daughter or the daughter of someone else. But in Latin *Galba filiam suam vocat* can mean only the former, for *suum* must refer to Galba.

**136. Omission of Possessives.** The Latin possessives are omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them.

**137. Position of Possessive Adjectives.** Possessive adjectives, when not emphatic, follow their nouns; when emphatic, they precede: as,

*Lesbia est filia mea, Lesbia is my daughter*

*Lesbia est mea filia, Lesbia is my daughter*

#### EXERCISES

**138.** 1. Rēgina suis sociis auxilium dat. 2. Servi frūmentum vestrum portant. 3. Socii nostri nova bella parant. 4. Tēla sunt mea, arma sunt tua. 5. Agrī pulchrī sunt grāti filiābus meis. 6. Populus est inimicus suis sociis. 7. Insula nostra est proxima tuae terrae. 8. Meae viae nōn sunt tuae viae.

I AM STRONGLY IN FAVOR OF CONTINUING THE CLASSICS IN AN ACADEMIC EDUCATION. I CONSIDER THAT, IN ADDITION TO THE MENTAL DISCIPLINE WHICH STUDY OF THEM AFFORDS, THEY ARE THE MOST HELPFUL IN THE MATTER OF CORRECT ENGLISH STYLE, IN LAYING SOUND FOUNDATIONS FOR GRAMMATICAL CONSTRUCTION, AND IN FURNISHING A BASIS FOR THE STUDY OF ALL MODERN LANGUAGES.— WILLIAM HOWARD TAFT

**139.** Answer the following questions in Latin, basing your replies on § 131:

1. Quis in insulā habitat?
2. Ubi Galba habitat?
3. Ubi Quīntus habitat?
4. Quid est grātum Mārcō?
5. Estne insula nautae proxima terrae?
6. Suntne servi liberī?
7. Quō Mārcus saepe nāvigat?
8. Quid Lesbia Mārcō dat?
9. Cūr est Lesbia Quīntō inimīca?



**Second Review, Lessons VIII-XV, §§ 737-742**



ON THE SACRED WAY IN THE ROMAN FORUM

This picture of the Roman Forum shows the Sacred Way with its ancient pavement. At the left rise the three remaining columns of the temple of Castor. At the right are the ruins of the temple of Saturn, and in the right background towers the Capitoline Hill

## LESSON XVI

Experientia docet stultōs — Experience teaches fools

### CONJUGATION · PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *SUM* · PREDICATE GENITIVE OF POSSESSOR

**140. Conjugation.** The inflection of the verb is called its *conjugation*. Through its conjugation the verb expresses voice, mood, tense, number, and person.

**141. Voice.** There are two voices, active and passive. A verb in the active voice represents the subject as *performing* the action : as,



ACTIVE VOICE

The boy → *hit* → the ball

A verb in the passive voice represents the subject as *receiving* the action : as,

The girl ← *was hit* ← by the ball



PASSIVE VOICE

Note the direction of the arrows.

**142. Mood.** In Latin there are three moods : indicative, subjunctive, and imperative.

**143. Tense.** The tense of a verb indicates its time.

**144.** In English there are six tenses :

1. Present, referring to present time, *I call*.
2. Past, referring to past time, *I called*.
3. Future, referring to future time, *I shall call*.

4. Present perfect, denoting action completed in present time, *I have called*.

5. Past perfect,<sup>1</sup> denoting action completed in past time, *I had called*.

6. Future perfect, denoting action completed in future time, *I shall have called*.

There are also six tenses in Latin, with practically the same names and meanings.

**145. Number.** In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, singular and plural.

**146. Person.** Latin, like English, has three persons. The first person is the person speaking (*I call*); the second person, the person spoken to (*you call*); the third person, the person or thing spoken of (*he calls*). In English, person and number are indicated by personal pronouns. In Latin, on the other hand, person and number are indicated by *personal endings* (§ 47). We have already learned that *-t* and *-nt* are endings of the third person, singular and plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

|            | SINGULAR               |                           | PLURAL      |             |
|------------|------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1ST PERSON | <i>-m</i> or <i>-ō</i> | <i>I</i>                  | <i>-mus</i> | <i>we</i>   |
| 2D PERSON  | <i>-s</i>              | <i>thou</i> or <i>you</i> | <i>-tis</i> | <i>you</i>  |
| 3D PERSON  | <i>-t</i>              | <i>he, she, it</i>        | <i>-nt</i>  | <i>they</i> |

**147. Indicative Mood.** The indicative mood is used to make a statement or to ask a question concerning a real or assumed fact.

**148. Regular and Irregular Verbs.** Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan, and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *pluperfect*.

**149. Present Indicative of *sum*.** The verb *sum*, *I am*, irregular in Latin as in English, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows :

|            | SINGULAR                        | PLURAL                |
|------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1ST PERSON | <b>sum, I-am</b>                | <b>sumus, we-are</b>  |
| 2D PERSON  | <b>es, you-are</b>              | <b>estis, you-are</b> |
| 3D PERSON  | <b>est, he-, she-, or it-is</b> | <b>sunt, they-are</b> |

**a. Est** meaning *there is*, or **sunt** meaning *there are*, precedes its subject. In this use *there* is called an *expletive*.

Distinguish, therefore, between **insula est magna**, *the island is large*, and **est insula magna**, *there is a large island*.

**150. Rule for Predicate Genitive of Possessor.** *The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, and is connected with its noun by a form of the verb *sum*.*

**Pecunia est servi**, *the money is the slave's*, or, freely, *belongs to the slave* (literally, *is of the slave*).

## GALLIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

**151.** Gallia est terra Gallōrum. Terra Gallōrum est pulchra, et Galli, populus Galliae, patriam (*country*) suam amant. Sunt in Galliā multa oppida magna. In agris multi agricolae habitant, et equi agricolārum multum frūmentum per viās longās in oppida portant. Bella Gallis grāta nōn sunt. 5 Sed proximi Gallis habitant Germāni. Germāni bellum amant et semper sunt in armis. Saepe Germāni cum sociis suis in Galliam properant et agrōs occupant. Tum Galli populum ad arma vocant et cum Germānis pugnant. Magna est fāma bellōrum et nōtae sunt victōriae. Sed victōria nōn 10 semper est Gallōrum. Saepe Germāni superant.



## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

1. Are we very near to my allies? Yes. 2. Your well-  
 3. Are the  
 4. The new spears belong to  
 5. Are we very near to the high island?  
 6. The island is not very near.

## LESSON XVII

Vox populi vox Dei — The voice of the people is the voice of God

### THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS • PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**153. Four Regular Conjugations.** There are four regular conjugations of verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from one another by the *distinguishing*, or *characteristic*, vowel appearing at the end of the present stem.

**154.** The present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping *-re*, the ending of the present infinitive active, which is given in the vocabularies.

**155.** Below are given the present indicative and the present infinitive active of a verb of each conjugation, the infinitive showing the present stem with its distinguishing vowel. These are the first two of the principal parts of the verb.

| CONJUGA-<br>TION | PRES. INDIC.          | PRES.<br>INF. | PRES.<br>STEM | DISTINGUISH-<br>ING VOWEL |
|------------------|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| I                | vo'cō, <i>call</i>    | vocā're       | vocā-         | ā                         |
| II               | mo'neō, <i>advise</i> | monē're       | monē-         | ē                         |
| III              | re'gō, <i>rule</i>    | re'gere       | rege-         | e                         |
| IV               | au'diō, <i>hear</i>   | audi're       | audi-         | i                         |

**156.** From the present stem are formed the *present*, *past* (also called *imperfect*), and *future* tenses.

**157. Present Indicative Active of First Conjugation.** Verbs having the infinitive termination *-āre*, such as *vocā're*, belong to the First Conjugation.

**158.** The present indicative is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem. The distinguishing vowel *-ā* disappears in the first person singular, and is shortened before the endings *-t* and *-nt* in the third person singular and plural.

**159.** The inflection of *vocō*, *vocāre* (pres. stem *vocā-*), *call*, in the present indicative active is as follows :

|                                          | PERSONAL<br>ENDINGS |                           | PERSONAL<br>ENDINGS |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. vo'cō, <i>I-call</i>                  | -ō                  | vocā'mus, <i>we-call</i>  | -mus                |
| 2. vo'cās, <i>you-call</i>               | -s                  | vocā'tis, <i>you-call</i> | -tis                |
| 3. vo'cat, <i>he-, she-, or it-calls</i> | -t                  | vo'cant, <i>they-call</i> | -nt                 |

**160. Translation of Present.** English has three forms for the present tense: *I call*, *I am calling*, *I do call*. Latin has but one form, *vocō*; this is used for any one of the three English forms.



THE ISLAND IN THE TIBER

On the right is the Fabrician bridge, which was built 62 B.C., in the days of Cæsar and Cicero

## 52 PRESENT INDICATIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

### EXERCISES

161. Inflect the present indicative of the following verbs, all of which you have had before :

#### INDICATIVE PRESENT

a'mō, *I love*  
 con'vocō, *I call together*  
 dō, *I give*  
 ha'bitō, *I live, I dwell*  
 labō'rō, *I toil*  
 nār'rō, *I tell*  
 nā'vigō, *I sail*  
 oc'cupō, *I seize*  
 pa'rō, *I prepare*  
 por'tō, *I carry*  
 pro'perō, *I hasten*  
 pug'nō, *I fight*

#### INFINITIVE PRESENT

amā're, *to love*  
 convocā're, *to call together*  
 da're, *to give*  
 habitā're, *to live, to dwell*  
 labōrā're, *to toil*  
 nārrā're, *to tell*  
 nāvigā're, *to sail*  
 occupā're, *to seize*  
 parā're, *to prepare*  
 portā're, *to carry*  
 properā're, *to hasten*  
 pugnā're, *to fight*

NOTE. In dō, dare, the a of the present stem is short. The only indicative form of dō having the stem vowel long is dās, *you give*, second person singular of the present.

162. Translate each of the following forms and give its voice, mood, tense, person, and number. When translating a verb, note first the personal ending.

1. Occupā'mus, properā'tis, con'vocant. 2. Datis, labō'rās, pugnā'tis. 3. Parās, portat, amā'mus. 4. Nārrat, dant, pro'perat. 5. Occupā'tis, nā'vigās, portant. 6. Habitā'tis, labō'rant, dās.

163. 1. We-dwell, we-are-dwelling, we-do-dwell. 2. You-seize (*singular*), you-are-seizing, you-do-seize. 3. We-do-carry, they-are-laboring, we-hasten. 4. He-is-giving, he-calls-together, you-are-sailing. 5. They-do-fight, he-carries, we-are-living.

## LESSON XVIII

Labōrāre est ōrāre — To labor is to pray<sup>1</sup>

### THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

**164.** One of the relations denoted by the Latin ablative is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (§ 65). But *with* varies in meaning, and cannot always be translated by the Latin preposition *cum*. This becomes clear from the following sentences :

1. The fields are thick *with* grain
2. Marcus fights *with* his spear
3. Julia is living *with* Lesbia
4. Galba toils *with* great industry .

*With* denotes *cause* in 1, *with* grain meaning *because of* grain.

*With* denotes *means* in 2, *with* his spear meaning *by means of* his spear.

*With* denotes *accompaniment* in 3, the meaning being that Julia is not living alone but *in company with* Lesbia.

*With* denotes *manner* in 4, *with* great industry telling how Galba works.

These four meanings of *with* are expressed in Latin by four different constructions of the ablative, known as the Ablative of Cause, the Ablative of Means, the Ablative of Accompaniment, and the Ablative of Manner.

**165. Rule for Ablative of Cause.** *Cause is denoted by the ablative, usually without a preposition, and answers the question Because of what ?*

Agri sunt crēbri frūmentō, *the fields are thick with grain*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the monks of the order of Saint Benedict.

**166. Rule for Ablative of Means.** *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This ablative answers the question By means of what? With what?*

**Mārcus tēlō pugnat,** *Marcus fights with his spear*

**167. Rule for Ablative of Accompaniment.** *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with cum. This ablative answers the question In company with whom?*

**Iūlia cum Lesbiā habitat,** *Julia is living with Lesbia*

**168. Rule for Ablative of Manner.** *Manner is denoted by the ablative with cum. Cum may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative. This ablative answers the question How? In what manner?*

**Galba (cum) magnā diligentīā labōrat,** *Galba works with great industry*

#### EXERCISE

**169.** What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage and what question does each answer?

The day after the battle we retreated with all our forces. The roads were deep with mud and the men were weary with fighting. To make matters worse, aviators attacked our crowded ranks with bombs. The machines flew low, but with such speed that we could not hit them. At last with a sigh of relief we entered a forest so thick with trees that we were well protected by the branches. Many wretched refugees with their wives and children sought shelter there.



A ROMAN SPOON

## LESSON XIX

Multum in parvō — Much in little

### PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *SUM* • THE PREPOSITION *Ē* OR *EX*

**170. Past and Future Indicative of *sum*.** The past<sup>1</sup> and the future indicative of the irregular verb *sum* are conjugated as follows :

#### PAST INDICATIVE

- |                                       |                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. e'ram, <i>I-was</i>                | erā'mus, <i>we-were</i>  |
| 2. e'rās, <i>you-were</i>             | erā'tis, <i>you-were</i> |
| 3. e'rat, <i>he-, she-, or it-was</i> | e'rant, <i>they-were</i> |

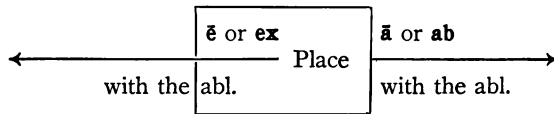
#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

- |                                           |                             |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. e'rō, <i>I-shall-be</i>                | e'rimus, <i>we-shall-be</i> |
| 2. e'ris, <i>you-will-be</i>              | e'ritis, <i>you-will-be</i> |
| 3. e'rit, <i>he-, she-, or it-will-be</i> | e'runt, <i>they-will-be</i> |

**171. Preposition *ē* or *ex*.** Latin has two prepositions meaning *from*, with the ablative : *ā* or *ab* and *ē* or *ex*.

Vir ab castris properat } *the man hastens from the camp*  
 Vir ex castris properat }

But *ā* or *ab* means *from the outside of*, and *ē* or *ex* *from the inside of*. Note the diagram :



NOTE. Write *ē* before consonants only, *ex* before either vowels or consonants.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the *imperfect*.

PUERĪ SEXTUS ET QUĪNTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 363

**172. SEXTUS.** Quō, Quīnte, properās? Cūr arma nova et  
veterum longum portās?

**QUINTUS.** Ad castra proxima properō, Sexte, cum viris et  
periculis oppidi nostri. Cūr in armis nōn es? Cūr terrae nostrae  
tuum auxilium nōn dās?



QUŌ, QUĪNTE, PROPERĀS?

S. Rōmānus sum. Populō Rōmānō bellum semper grātum est. Sed in nostrō oppidō nōn erat fāma bellī. Quis, Quīnte, bellum parat? Eritne novum bellum cum Gallis?

Q. Nōn cum Gallis. Germānī, semper inimicī Rōmānis, bellum magnā diligentīā parant. Ex silvis Germāniae cōpiās suās convocant. Mox viae, Sexte, erunt crēbrae equis et viris, et agrī Rōmānī proximī Germāniae in periculō erunt. Sed nostra victōria erit.

**173.** 1. The Germans fight with long spears. 2. We-are-hastening from (the inside of) the Roman camp. 3. Shall-you-be with Sextus? We-shall-be, soon. 4. The perils of-our forces were many.

**174. Derivation.** Give the meaning of the following English words and tell to what Latin words they are related:

|          |              |           |             |            |
|----------|--------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| insulate | conservation | longevity | agriculture | elaborate  |
| sinecure | navigable    | servile   | virile      | depopulate |

## LESSON XX

Nīl dēspērāndum — There's no such word as fail<sup>1</sup>

### PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**175. Formation of Tenses.** Instead of using auxiliary verbs, like *was, shall, will*, etc., to express differences in tense, Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

**176.** The tense sign of the past is **-bā-**, which is added to the present stem. The past consists, therefore, of three parts :

| PRESENT STEM    | TENSE SIGN  | PERSONAL ENDING |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| <b>vocā-</b>    | <b>ba-</b>  | <b>m</b>        |
| <i>calling-</i> | <i>was-</i> | <i>I</i>        |

**a.** Note that the Latin verb is translated from right to left, so that English *I was calling* is in Latin **vocā'bam**, *calling-was-I*.

**177. Inflection of Past Indicative Active.** The personal endings of the past are the same as those of the present, except that **-m** is used instead of **-ō** in the first person singular.

#### SINGULAR

1. **vocā'bam**, *I-was-calling* or *I-called*
2. **vocā'bās**, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. **vocā'bat**, *he-, she-, it-was-calling* or *he-, she-, it-called*

#### PLURAL

1. **vocābā'mus**, *we-were-calling* or *we-called*
2. **vocābā'tis**, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
3. **vocā'bant**, *they-were-calling* or *they-called*

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, a Roman poet. Literally, *In nothing must it be despaired*.

## 58 PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

*a.* Note that the inflection above is somewhat like that of **eram** (§ 170), the past tense of **sum**, and that the long **ā** of the tense sign **-bā-** is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**. A long vowel is regularly shortened before **nt** and final **-m** or **-t**. Learn this rule now.

**178. Meaning of Past Tense.** The Latin past tense has two uses.

*a.* It may represent an action as going on in past time and not yet completed, and is then translated by the English past progressive: as, **vocābam**, *I was calling*. For this reason this tense is often called the *imperfect*.

*b.* It usually describes a past situation, and is then translated by the English past: as, **vocābam**, *I called*. For this reason this tense is often called the *past descriptive*.

### EXERCISES

**179.** Inflect in the past indicative active the verbs given in § 161.

**180.** 1. Nārrās, nārrābās, parāmus, parābāmus. 2. Pugnātis, portābat, occupant, dabam. 3. Occupābātis, nāvigātis, labōrābās, habitant. 4. Datis, pugnābam, properātis, occupābāmus.

### BRITANNIA

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364, and locate on the map, page 49, the countries mentioned in the story.

**181.** Britannia, terra Britannōrum, est insula magna. Britannī erant barbarī et in silvis magnis et oppidis parvis habitābant. Britannia est proxima Galliae et Britannī erant amīcī Gallōrum. In longīs bellīs Gallōrum et Rōmānōrum Britannī sociīs suis auxilium saepe dabant. Iam nōta populō 5 Rōmānō erat Britannia. Sed amicitia Britannōrum et Gallōrum populō Rōmānō grāta nōn erat. Itaque Rōmānī cōpiās convocābant et arma sua et magnam cōpiam frūmentī

parābant. Magnā cum diligentīā labōrābant. Tum cum multis  
 viris ad insulam Britanniam nāvigābant. Īnsula erat crēbra 10  
 silvis et viae nōn bonae erant. Itaque Rōmānī in periculō  
 saepe erant. Britannī ex castris suis properābant et cum  
 Rōmānis pugnābant. Sed victōria Rōmānōrum erat, et  
 Rōmānī cōpiis suis multa oppida Britannōrum occupābant.



BRITANNĪ ERANT BARBARĪ

182. 1. The Romans were-fighting in the forest with the  
 savage Britons. 2. The Britons carried grain to the camp  
 with-their horses. 3. Your friendship will-be known to-the-  
 Romans. 4. Because-of-the-danger<sup>1</sup> of-war the Britons were  
 already calling-together their forces. 5. The Romans sailed  
 through the deep waters with great danger.

1. Ablative of cause, § 165.

## LESSON XXI

Montānī semper liberī — Mountaineers are always free<sup>1</sup>

### FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**183. Formation of Future Indicative Active.** The tense sign of the future in the first conjugation is **-bi-**. This is added to the present stem and followed by the personal endings.

| PRESENT STEM | TENSE SIGN | PERSONAL ENDING |
|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| vocā-        | bi-        | t               |
| call-        | will-      | he              |

**184. Inflection of Future Indicative Active.** The first person singular ends in **-bō**, the **i** of the tense sign disappearing. In the third person plural **-bi-** becomes **-bu-**.

- |                                             |                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. vocā'bō, <i>I-shall-call</i>             | vocā'bimus, <i>we-shall-call</i> |
| 2. vocā'bis, <i>you-will-call</i>           | vocā'bitis, <i>you-will-call</i> |
| 3. vocā'bit, <i>he-, she-, it-will-call</i> | vocā'bunt, <i>they-will-call</i> |

**a.** Note that the inflection is somewhat like that of **erō** (§ 170), the future of **sum**.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

**185.** 1. Quis fābulam insulae<sup>1</sup> Britanniae nārrābit? 2. Cūr, mī fili, Britannī erant miserī? 3. Bellis crēbris Britannī erant miserī. 4. Erantne ōrae insulae<sup>1</sup> altae<sup>2</sup>? Altae erant. 5. Britannī Gallīs, sociīs suis, auxilium saepe dant. 6. Itaque Rōmānī magnīs cum cōpiīs ad ōrās altās insulae nāvīgābunt.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of West Virginia. The verb *to be* is omitted in this motto, as in many others.

7. *Iam Rōmānī barbarōs multis proeliis<sup>3</sup> superābunt.* 8. *Magna erunt praemia victōriae.* 9. *Tum insula erit Rōmānōrum.*

1. Genitive. 2. Predicate adjective, nominative plural. 3. Ablative of means.

**186.** 1. The shore of-the-island, nearest to-Gaul, is high. 2. We-shall-fight with the hostile savages<sup>1</sup> in the great forests. 3. Our friends will-be wretched because-of-the-dangers<sup>2</sup> of-the-battle. 4. You-will-conquer the Britons, O Romans, with-your long spears.<sup>3</sup> 5. Soon (*iam*) the Romans will give great rewards to their allies.

1. Ablative of accompaniment. 2. Ablative of cause. 3. Ablative of means.

**187.** Inflect in the future indicative active the verbs given in § 161.



ŌRAE BRITANNIAE ERANT ALTAE

## LESSON XXII

Virtūs praemium est optimum — Virtue is the best prize<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

**188. Formation of Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active.** Verbs having the infinitive termination *-ēre*, such as *monē're*, belong to the Second Conjugation.

**189.** The present, past, and future of the second conjugation, as of the first, are formed on the present stem.

**190.** The present stem of the second conjugation ends in *-ē* (§ 155). This characteristic vowel appears in every form of the present, past, and future.

**191.** The same personal endings and the same tense signs are used as in the first conjugation.

**192. Inflection of Present, Past, and Future Indicative Active.** The inflection below shows the present, past, and future indicative active of *vo'cō* (*I call*) of the first conjugation and of *mo'neō* (*I advise or warn*) of the second. Review the forms of *vo'cō* and learn the corresponding tenses of *mo'neō*.

*vo'cō, vocā're* (pres. stem *vocā-*), *call*

#### PRESENT

|                                       |                           |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>vo'cō, I-call</i>               | <i>vocā'mus, we-call</i>  |
| 2. <i>vo'cās, you-call</i>            | <i>vocā'tis, you-call</i> |
| 3. <i>vo'cat, he-, she-, it-calls</i> | <i>vo'cant, they-call</i> |

<sup>1</sup> From Plautus, a writer of Latin plays.

# PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE 63

## PAST (IMPERFECT)

1. vocā'bam, *I-was-calling* or *I-called*
  2. vocā'bās, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
  3. vocā'bat, *he-, she-, it-was-calling* or *he-, she-, it-called*
- 
1. vocābā'mus, *we-were-calling* or *we-called*
  2. vocābā'tis, *you-were-calling* or *you-called*
  3. vocā'bant, *they-were-calling* or *they-called*

## FUTURE

- |                                             |                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. vocā'bō, <i>I-shall-call</i>             | vocā'bimus, <i>we-shall-call</i> |
| 2. vocā'bis, <i>you-will-call</i>           | vocā'bitis, <i>you-will-call</i> |
| 3. vocā'bit, <i>he-, she-, it-will-call</i> | vocā'bunt, <i>they-will-call</i> |

**mo'neō, monē're** (pres. stem **monē-**), *advise*

## PRESENT

- |                                         |                             |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. mo'neō, <i>I-advise</i>              | monē'mus, <i>we-advise</i>  |
| 2. mo'nēs, <i>you-advise</i>            | monē'tis, <i>you-advise</i> |
| 3. mo'net, <i>he-, she-, it-advises</i> | mo'nent, <i>they-advise</i> |

## PAST (IMPERFECT)

1. monē'bam, *I-was-advising* or *I-advised*
  2. monē'bās, *you-were-advising* or *you-advised*
  3. monē'bat, *he-, she-, it-was-advising* or *he-, she-, it-advised*
- 
1. monēbā'mus, *we-were-advising* or *we-advised*
  2. monēbā'tis, *you-were-advising* or *you-advised*
  3. monē'bant, *they-were-advising* or *they-advised*

## FUTURE

- |                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. monē'bō, <i>I-shall-advise</i>   | monē'bimus, <i>we-shall-advise</i> |
| 2. monē'bis, <i>you-will-advise</i> | monē'bitis, <i>you-will-advise</i> |
| 3. monē'bit, <i>he-will-advise</i>  | monē'bunt, <i>they-will-advise</i> |

193. Nearly all regular verbs ending in **-eō** belong to the Second Conjugation.

194. **Shortening of Vowels.** Attention has been called to the shortening of long vowels in certain forms. The following rules are of general application :

1. A long vowel is shortened before another vowel.

Thus, **monē-ō** becomes **mone-ō**.

2. A long vowel is shortened before **nt** and **nd**, before final **-m** or **-t**, and, except in words of one syllable, before final **-l** or **-r**.

Thus, **vocānt**, **vocāndus**, **vocābām**, **vocābāt**, **monēt**.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

195. Like **moneō**, inflect the present, past, and future indicative of

**habeō**, **habē're**, *have*  
**teneō**, **tenē're**, *hold, keep*  
**timeō**, **timē're**, *fear*  
**videō**, **vidē're**, *see*

DERIVATIVES  
**habit**  
**tenacious**  
**timid**  
**vision, evident**

196. 1. **Tenētis**, **vocābitis**, **habēbant**. 2. **Vidēbunt**, **monēbāmus**, **nārrābat**. 3. **Habēbō**, **timēs**, **vocātis**. 4. **Vidēsne altās orās insulae?** 5. **Numquam**, **Rōmānī**, **sine auxiliō sociōrum nostrōrum praemia victōriae tenēbimus**.

MY FIRST REMEMBRANCE OF GRAMMAR IS MY STUDY OF THE LATIN GRAMMAR, WHICH GAVE ME, AS FAR AS I NOW CAN SEE, WHATEVER KNOWLEDGE I POSSESS OF THE STRUCTURE OF LANGUAGE.—LYMAN ABBOTT

## LESSON XXIII

**Lupus in fābulā** — The wolf in the story<sup>1</sup>

### LATIN ORDER OF WORDS

**197. Order of Words in English and Latin Compared.** In English, words are arranged in a fairly fixed order, and this order cannot be changed, as a rule, without changing or destroying the meaning of the sentence.

**198.** In Latin the office of the words in a sentence is shown by their forms (§ 39), and their position is much more free. Still there are general rules of order, which should be carefully observed. The rules already given in the preceding lessons are here summarized for review.

**a.** The subject generally stands first, the verb last. But, to avoid obscurity, *est*, *is*, and other forms of the verb *to be* usually stand, as in English, between the subject and a noun or adjective in the predicate.

**NOTE.** In connected narrative each succeeding sentence begins with the word or words that link it most closely to the sentence preceding. For example, in "The Rhine was the frontier of Germany. Cæsar built a bridge across this river," the order of words in Latin would be "The Rhine was the frontier of Germany. *Across this river* Cæsar a bridge built." Observe that the first words of the second sentence, "Across this river," link it to the sentence preceding and are therefore placed before the subject, "Cæsar."

- b.** The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.
- c.** The vocative case rarely stands first.
- d.** An adjective or genitive may either precede or follow its noun.
- e.** The possessive adjective regularly follows its noun.
- f.** Adverbs normally stand directly before the words they modify.

<sup>1</sup> From Terence, a writer of Latin comedies. The expression applies to an unexpected and unwelcome appearance; cf. "Speak of the devil."

199. Words are made emphatic by placing them in unusual positions. Thus we have seen that possessive adjectives, which regularly follow their nouns, are made emphatic by placing them before their nouns (§ 137); and any adjective or other modifier is made emphatic by separating it from the word to which it belongs. Observe the following sentences:

Caesar agrōs pulchrōs Gallōrum occupat  
Caesar *pulchrōs* Gallōrum agrōs occupat

In the first sentence **pulchrōs** is not emphatic. In the second it has been made so by separating it from its noun **agrōs**. The order of words, therefore, in a Latin sentence tells the eyes of the reader as much about the emphasis as his ears tell him when he hears a man speak. If you do not note the order, you will often fail to get the sense.

#### EXERCISES

200. **Derivation.** What Latin derivatives can you find in the following paragraph? Give the meaning of each derivative and the Latin word from which it is derived.

Britain, because of its insular character, was not occupied by the Romans for many years. Its inhabitants were a great multitude, barbarous in their habits of life, very belligerent, and not slow to fight for their liberties. Then, too, the visible and the invisible perils of navigation in the open sea, though not insuperable, made the Romans timid.



Third Review, Lessons XVI-XXIII, §§ 743-748



#### THE ROMAN FORUM AS IT NOW APPEARS

No spot has greater historic interest than the Roman Forum, the center of the political and commercial life of the Roman Empire. Its magnificent buildings were restored for the last time in the sixth century. Then for more than a thousand years they were systematically destroyed and buried in rubbish, so that now the ancient pavement is at places forty feet below the present level of the ground. At the left of the picture is the Palatine Hill, and at the farther end of the Forum is the Capitoline



## LESSON XXIV

Quandōque bonus dormitat Homērus — Even good Homer  
sometimes nods<sup>1</sup>

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

**201. Definition of a Demonstrative.** A demonstrative is a word that points out an object, as, *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns: as, *Do you hear these?* Sometimes they are adjectives: as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called *demonstrative pronouns*, in the latter *demonstrative adjectives*.

**202. Agreement of Latin Demonstratives.** Demonstrative pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer, but their case is determined by the way they are used.

Demonstrative adjectives, like other adjectives, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

**203. Demonstrative *is, ea, id*.** The demonstrative most used is *is* (masculine), *ea* (feminine), *id* (neuter), meaning *this* or *that* in the singular and *these* or *those* in the plural. It is declined as follows:

|      | MASC.       | FEM.        | NEUT.       | MASC.            | FEM.             | NEUT.            |
|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| NOM. | <b>is</b>   | <b>ea</b>   | <b>id</b>   | <b>eī (ii)</b>   | <b>eae</b>       | <b>ea</b>        |
| GEN. | <b>eius</b> | <b>eius</b> | <b>eius</b> | <b>eōrum</b>     | <b>eārum</b>     | <b>eōrum</b>     |
| DAT. | <b>eī</b>   | <b>eī</b>   | <b>eī</b>   | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> |
| ACC. | <b>eum</b>  | <b>eam</b>  | <b>id</b>   | <b>eōs</b>       | <b>eās</b>       | <b>ea</b>        |
| ABL. | <b>eō</b>   | <b>eā</b>   | <b>eō</b>   | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> | <b>eīs (iīs)</b> |

<sup>1</sup> From Horace. The meaning is that even the best make mistakes. Of similar sentiment are his words "Vitiis nēmō sine nāscitur," *no one is born without faults*.

## THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

The genitive singular *eius* is pronounced *eh'yus*. The plural *eorum* with two i's are pronounced as one syllable. Hence, pronounce *ii* as *i* and *iis* as *is*.

**204. Position of Demonstrative Adjectives.** Demonstrative adjectives normally precede their nouns: as,

*Ad eam insulam nāvigat, he is sailing to this (or that) island*

**205. Demonstratives used as Personal Pronouns.** Latin demonstratives are frequently used for the personal pronouns of the third person, *he, she, it*, or (plural) *they*. *Is*, as a personal pronoun, has the following meanings:

|      |                                                                                       |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>is, he; ea, she; id, it</i>                                                        |
| GEN. | <i>eius, of him, his; eius, of her, her, hers; eius, of it, its</i>                   |
| DAT. | <i>ei, to or for him; ei, to or for her; ei, to or for it</i>                         |
| ACC. | <i>eum, him; eam, her; id, it</i>                                                     |
| ABL. | <i>eō, with, from, etc., him; eā, with, from, etc., her; eō, with, from, etc., it</i> |

|      |                                                                   |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>eī or iī, eae, ea, they</i>                                    |
| GEN. | <i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them, their</i>                        |
| DAT. | <i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, to or for them</i>         |
| ACC. | <i>eōs, eās, ea, them</i>                                         |
| ABL. | <i>eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, eīs or iīs, with, from, etc., them</i> |

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 364

**206.** 1. *Quis ea cōsilia Rōmānōrum iam nūtiābat? Bonus amicus Britannōrum.* 2. *Quō eī Rōmānī nāvigābunt? Ad insulam eī Rōmānī nāvigābunt.* 3. *Quid in eam insulam portābunt? Multōs virōs et equōs et magnam cōpiam frūmenti in eam insulam portābunt.* 4. *Pugnābuntne Britanni cum Rōmānīs? Mox pugnābunt, sed eōs nōn superābunt.* 5. *Amantne*

Britannī insulam suam? Amant. 6. Habentne Britannī sociōs? Nunc Galli sunt socii eōrum, sed auxilium Gallōrum eōs numquam servābit. 7. Iam (*soon*) magnam victōriam Rōmānī nūntiābunt. 8. Iniūriæ Britannōrum erunt magnæ et vita<sup>1</sup> eōrum erit semper misera.

1. Observe that **vita** is translated *lives*. The plural of **vita** is not used except in the sense of biographies, as, **vitæ magnōrum virōrum**, *lives of great men*.

207. 1. He-sees him, her, it, them. 2. This plan, that life, these boys. 3. For-those rewards, with that friend, the rumor of-that battle. 4. The story of-those wrongs, for-that life, those girls.

## LESSON XXV

Aurea mediocritās—The golden mean<sup>1</sup>

### THE POSSESSIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON

208. We learned in § 135 that the possessive of the third person, **suus**, **-a**, **-um**, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, is reflexive and is used when the subject is the possessor: as,

**Britannī insulam suam amant**, *the Britons love their island*

209. When *his*, *her*, *its*, *their* do not refer to the subject, but to other persons or things, we translate *his*, *her*, *its* by **eius** (*of him*, *of her*, *of it*), and *their* by **eōrum** (*of them*) for masculine or neuter possessors and **eārum** for feminine possessors.

*Galba sees his (own) danger*, **Galba periculum suum videt**

*Galba sees his danger (not his own)*, **Galba periculum eius videt**

*The men see their (own) danger*, **virī periculum suum vident**

*The men see their danger (not their own)*, **virī periculum eōrum (eārum) vident**

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the noted lyric poet.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

210. 1. Rēgina amicōs suōs servābat. 2. Rēgina amicōs eius<sup>1</sup> servābat. 3. Rōmānī finitimōs suōs servābunt. 4. Rōmānī finitimōs eōrum servābunt. 5. Ei barbarī cōpiis suis mūrōs altōs et lātōs eōrum tenēbant. 6. Is Gallus Rōmānōs nōn timēbat, sed eis iniūriās suās nārrābat. 7. Amātisne patriam vestram? Clāra oppida et lātōs agrōs eius amāmus. 8. Germānī victōriās eōrum nūntiābunt. 9. Nōn sine praemiō auxilium rēginae dabis.

1. Do not forget that **eius**, being masculine, feminine, or neuter, **may** mean *his*, *her*, or *its*. Usually the context will show which meaning to use.

211. 1. That slave will-save his (*his own*) life. 2. That slave will-save his (*not his own*) life. 3. Those girls were-holding their (*their own*) prizes. 4. Those savages will-fear their (*their own*) neighbors. 5. They love their queen and see her danger.



THE ROMAN FORUM AT ITS WESTERN END

On the left are three columns of the temple of Vespasian and the arch of Septimius Severus. On the right are the ruins of the temple of Saturn. The canvas near the foot of the arch covers an excavation where were found the alleged tomb of Romulus and the oldest Latin inscription

## LESSON XXVI

**Fōrmōsa faciēs mūta commendātiō est—A pleasing countenance is a silent recommendation<sup>1</sup>**

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

**212.** Verbs having the infinitive termination **-ēre** belong to the Third Conjugation: as, **regō, re'gēre** (*rule*), present stem **regē-** (cf. § 155).

**213.** The present indicative active of **regō** is inflected as follows:

| PERSONAL ENDINGS                      |           | PERSONAL ENDINGS          |             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <b>re'gō, I-rule</b>               | <b>-ō</b> | <b>re'gimus, we-rule</b>  | <b>-mus</b> |
| 2. <b>re'gis, you-rule</b>            | <b>-s</b> | <b>re'gitis, you-rule</b> | <b>-tis</b> |
| 3. <b>re'git, he-, she-, it-rules</b> | <b>-t</b> | <b>re'gunt, they-rule</b> | <b>-nt</b>  |

**a.** Note that the final **-e** of the present stem disappears in the first person singular, becomes **-u-** in the third person plural and **-i-** elsewhere. The inflection is much like that of **erō**, the future of **sum**.

### EXERCISES

**214.** Like **regō, re'gere**, inflect the present indicative active of **dicō, dī'cere, speak, say**; and **dūcō, dū'cere, lead**.

**215 Derivation.** From the verb **dūcō** many English words are derived. Define the following:

|         |           |         |        |
|---------|-----------|---------|--------|
| ductile | induce    | produce | adduce |
| duke    | introduce | reduce  | deduce |

<sup>1</sup> From Publilius Syrus, a writer whose short and witty sayings were memorized in the Roman schools.

MAGISTER ET DISCIPULI<sup>1</sup>

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

216. MAGISTER. Saepe, discipuli mei, dē Rōmā dicimus, sed ubi est Rōma?

DISCIPULI. Rōma, magister, est in Italiā, clārā patriā Rōmānōrum.

M. Habētisne tabulam (*a map*) Italiae?

D. Tabulam bonam Italiae in libris nostris habēmus.

M. Estne Italia lāta?

D. ~~Nota~~ Italia nōn est. Longa est.

M. Quid libri vestri de viis Rōmānis narrant?

D. Rōmāni multās et longās viās habēbant. Eae viae per Italiam, Galliam, Germāniam patēbant. Nōta erat Appia via.<sup>2</sup> Dē eā libri saepe dicunt.

M. Eratne Rōma semper magna?

D. Nōn semper. Per multōs annōs Rōma erat parva et finitimī eius erant inimicī. Sed populus Rōmānus eōs multis proeliis superābat. Tum in (*against*) barbarōs Rōmāni cōpiās suās dūcunt et dēnique multās terrās regunt.

M. Optimē (*well done*), discipuli. Aliquandō (*some day*) ā patriā nostrā ad Italiam nāvigābitis et ōrās pulchrās et insulās eius et mūrōs altōs Rōmae vidēbitis.

1. *Teacher and Pupils.* 2. See page 86.

WE SHOULD HAVE SCANT CAPITAL TO TRADE ON WERE WE TO THROW AWAY THE WISDOM WE HAVE INHERITED AND SEEK OUR FORTUNE WITH THE SLENDER STOCK WE OURSELVES HAVE ACCUMULATED. THIS, IT SEEMS TO ME, IS THE REAL, THE PREVALENT ARGUMENT FOR HOLDING EVERY MAN WE CAN TO THE INTIMATE STUDY OF THE ANCIENT CLASSICS. — WOODROW WILSON





## LESSON XXVII

Cum grānō salis — With a grain of salt<sup>1</sup>

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

217. Verbs having the infinitive termination **-ire** belong to the Fourth Conjugation : as, **audiō, audi're** (*hear*), present stem **audi-** (cf. § 155).

218. The present indicative active of **audiō, audi're**, is inflected as follows :

|                                       | PERSONAL<br>ENDINGS |                            | PERSONAL<br>ENDINGS |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. au'diō, <i>I-hear</i>              | -ō                  | audi'mus, <i>we-hear</i>   | -mus                |
| 2. au'dis, <i>you-hear</i>            | -s                  | audi'tis, <i>you-hear</i>  | -tis                |
| 3. au'dit, <i>he-, she-, it-hears</i> | -t                  | au'diunt, <i>they-hear</i> | -nt                 |

a. Note that **i**, the characteristic vowel, is always long except where long vowels are regularly shortened (cf. § 194). In the third person plural **u** is inserted between the stem and the personal ending : as, **audi-u-nt**.

### EXERCISES

219. Like **audiō, audire**, inflect the present indicative active of **veniō, venire**, *come*, and **mūniō, mūnire**, *fortify*.

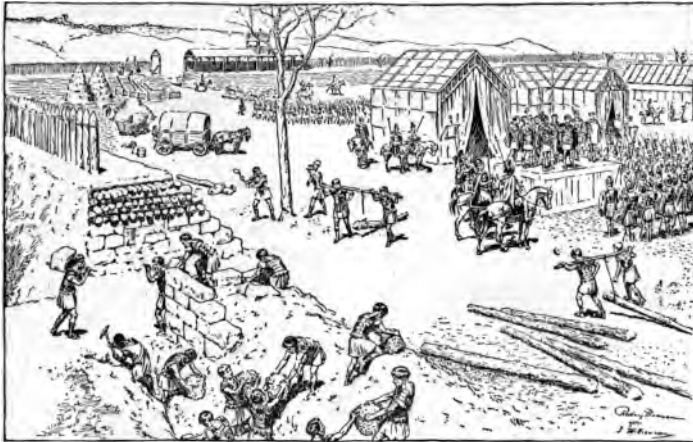
220. 1. Nūntiābunt, venitis, habēbat, mūnis. 2. Vidēbātis, audimus, timēbit, veniunt. 3. Dabit, tenēbunt, mūnitis, nāvīgābās. 4. Audit, timēbātis, nārrant, habēbimus. 5. Properābunt, venīmus, parābās, mūniunt.

<sup>1</sup> From Pliny. An expression used to indicate that the real facts have been exaggerated : as, " That story must be taken *cum grānō salis*."

## DĒ CASTRĪS RŌMĀNĪS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365

221. Vidētisne castra Rōmāna? Castra sunt magna, et quattuor (*four*) portās (*gates*) habent. Per eās portās Rōmānī in castra veniunt et ex eis portīs cōpiās suās dūcunt. In castris multōs virōs et equōs vidēmus. Vidēmus virōs quī in armīs sunt et virōs quī magnā diligentīā labōrant. Ei 5



CASTRĀ RŌMĀNA

quī labōrant castra mūniunt. Rōmānī castra sua altō vāllō et altā fossā semper mūniunt. Vidētisne eōs quī terram ex fossā portant? Barbarī castra sua nōn mūniunt, itaque vita<sup>1</sup> eōrum multīs periculis patet. Sed Rōmānī sine periculō castra sua tenent nec (*nor*) barbarōs timent. In mediis castris 10 est praetōrium (*general's tent*). Idne<sup>2</sup> vidētis? Is quī cōpiās Rōmānās dūcit est clārus vir. Saepe suōs<sup>3</sup> convocat. Nunc eis<sup>4</sup> dicit (*is talking*) et ei eum audiunt.

1. Translate, *lives*. 2. Made up of *id* and *-ne*, the question sign. 3. *His men*. The possessives are often pronouns (cf. § 132). 4. Indirect object.

## LESSON XXVIII

Palma nōn sine pulvere — No prize without a struggle<sup>1</sup>

### THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

**222.** Intransitive verbs do not admit of a direct object (§ 25). Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern a dative as indirect object (§ 58). This dative, in Latin, represents the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed ; but it appears in English as a direct object.

**223.** Learn the following list of common verbs whose meanings call for a dative as indirect object :

| DERIVATIVES                                                          |                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| crē'dō, crē'dere, <i>believe</i> (give belief to), <i>trust</i>      | creed, credit, creditor  |
| fa'veō, favē're, <i>favor</i> (show favor to)                        | favorite, favorable      |
| no'ceō, nocē're, <i>injure</i> (do harm to)                          | noxious, innocent        |
| pā'reō, pārē're, <i>obey</i> (give obedience to)                     |                          |
| persuā'deō, persuādē're, <i>persuade</i> (make a thing agreeable to) | dissuade, suasion        |
| resis'tō, resis'tere, <i>resist</i> (offer resistance to)            | persist, insist, desist  |
| stu'deō, studē're, <i>be eager</i> (give attention to)               | study, student, studious |

a. The verbs **crēdō** and **persuādēō** are transitive in some senses and take an accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect object): as, **Rōmānis sua crēdunt**, *they intrust their possessions to the Romans*.

**224. Rule for Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs crēdō, faveō, noceō, pārēō, persuādēō, resistō, studeō, and others of like meaning.*

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *No palm without dust*, referring to the palm branch, the prize of the victor in the chariot race, and the dust raised by the struggle. Compare Mrs. Browning's "No cross, no crown."

## EXERCISES

**225.** Inflect the present indicative active of *servō*, *faveō*, *crēdō*, and *mūniō*.

**226. Derivation.** The verb *resistō*, *resist*, is composed of the verb *sistō*, *stand*, and the prefix *re-*, *back* or *again*, so that *resist* means to *stand back* in the line or *stand again* after running away.

Look up the words *consist*, *desist*, *exist*, *insist*, and *persist*, and note the force of each of the prefixes.

**227.** 1. *Crēdisne sociis eōrum?* *Eis nōn crēdō.* 2. *Mei finitimī cōsiliis novīs tuis nōn favent.* 3. *Servi bellō student.* 4. *Bonae puellae libris suis numquam nocent.* 5. *Equi Galbae Mārcō nautae nōn pārent.*

**228.** 1. We-persuade our friends. 2. We-resist our neighbors. 3. That boy does not obey Lesbia. 4. You-believe them, my friends, because-of-your friendship.<sup>1</sup>

1. Ablative of cause, § 165.



A COCKFIGHT

A wall painting from a house in Pompeii

## LESSON XXIX

Dirigō — I point the way<sup>1</sup>

### THE PAST INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF REGŌ AND AUDIO

**229. Formation and Inflection.** The tense sign is *-bā-*, as in the first two conjugations. The past indicative of *regō* is formed and inflected just like that of *moneō*. The past indicative of *audiō* has *iē* before the tense sign : as, *audiē'bam*.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

1. *regē'bam*, *I-was-ruling* or *I-ruled*
2. *regē'bās*, *you-were-ruling* or *you-ruled*
3. *regē'bat*, *he-was-ruling* or *he-ruled*
1. *regēbā'mus*, *we-were-ruling* or *we-ruled*
2. *regēbā'tis*, *you-were-ruling* or *you-ruled*
3. *regē'bant*, *they-were-ruling* or *they-ruled*

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

1. *audiē'bam*, *I-was-hearing* or *I-heard*
2. *audiē'bās*, *you-were-hearing* or *you-heard*
3. *audiē'bat*, *he-was-hearing* or *he-heard*
1. *audiēbā'mus*, *we-were-hearing* or *we-heard*
2. *audiēbā'tis*, *you-were-hearing* or *you-heard*
3. *audiē'bant*, *they-were-hearing* or *they-heard*

**230. The Conjunction -que.** The conjunction *and* is often expressed in Latin by *-que* added to the second of two associated words : as,

*senātus populus'que Rōmānus*, *the senate and the Roman people*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Maine.

## 78 PAST INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

a. Words which do not stand alone, but are attached to other words, are called *enclitics*. We have already had *-ne*, the question sign.

### EXERCISES

**231.** Inflect the present and past indicative of *nūntiō*, *studeō*, *crēdō*, and *veniō*.

**232.** 1. Dicēbant, audiēbātis, superābit, dūcunt. 2. Tenēbis, regitis, mūniēbāmus, habēbunt. 3. Dicimus, timēbātis, patent, veniēbat. 4. Dūcēbam, mūniunt, vidēbitis, patēbis. 5. Servābō, audiēbās, tenēs, dicēbāmus.

### DĒ DEĪS RŌMĀNĪS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 365. The names of the gods mentioned below, being the same in English and Latin, are not included.

- 233.** 1. Rōmānī multōs deōs et multās deās habēbant. 2. Poētae Rōmānī multās fābulās dē deīs et deābus<sup>1</sup> nārrābant. 3. Eis fābulis nōn crēdimus. 4. Populus Rōmānus deōs deāsque timēbat et eis pārēbat. 5. In numerō deōrum erant Iuppiter et Neptūnus et Mārs. 6. Iuppiter deōs deāsque regēbat, Neptūnus in aquis altis habitābat. 7. Mārs erat deus bellī, et proeliis semper studēbat. 8. In numerō deārum erant Iūnō et Minerva et Diāna. 9. Iūnō erat rēgīna deārum. 10. Minerva erat dea sapientiae. 11. Diāna erat rēgīna silvārum.



ATHĒNA DEA SAPIENTIAE

1. *dea* is declined like *filia* (§ 70. a), having *deabus* in the dative and ablative plural.

- 234.** 1. Good men obey the gods. 2. Evil men resist the gods. 3. The gods never do-harm to-good boys and girls. 4. Minerva favors men who (*quī*) are-eager for wisdom.

## LESSON XXX

In hōc signō vincēs — In this sign thou shalt conquer<sup>1</sup>

### THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**235. Tense Sign and Inflection.** The tense sign of the future in the third and fourth conjugations is not **-bi-**, as in the first and second conjugations, but **-a-** in the first person singular and **-ē-** in the rest of the tense. This tense sign takes the place of the final vowel of the present stem in verbs conjugated like **regō**, and is preceded by the stem vowel **-i** in verbs conjugated like **audiō**. The usual shortening of long vowels takes place (cf. § 194).

**236.** The inflection of the future indicative active of **regō** (third conjugation) and **audiō** (fourth conjugation) is as follows:

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. re'gam, <i>I-shall-rule</i>    | au'diam, <i>I-shall-hear</i>    |
| 2. re'gēs, <i>you-will-rule</i>   | au'diēs, <i>you-will-hear</i>   |
| 3. re'get, <i>he-will-rule</i>    | au'diet, <i>he-will-hear</i>    |
| 1. regē'mus, <i>we-shall-rule</i> | audiē'mus, <i>we-shall-hear</i> |
| 2. regē'tis, <i>you-will-rule</i> | audiē'tis, <i>you-will-hear</i> |
| 3. re'gent, <i>they-will-rule</i> | au'dient, <i>they-will-hear</i> |

*a.* Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, except in the first person singular.

### EXERCISES

**237.** Inflect the present, past, and future indicative active of **con'vocō**, **te'neō**, **dīcō**, and **mū'niō**.

<sup>1</sup> Translation of the Greek motto which Constantine, the first Christian emperor, is said to have seen on a flaming cross in the sky. This vision, we are told, led to his conversion, and his banners afterwards bore a cross with its motto. It is now the motto of the order of Knights Templar.

## 80 FUTURE INDICATIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

**238. Derivation.** Latin prepositions are often used as prefixes and added to simple verbs to make compound verbs. These same prefixes appear in English and generally have the same meanings as in Latin.

Form English derivatives from each of the following Latin compounds, and note the force of the prefix :

**ab**, from + **ducō**, lead = **abducō**, lead away

**ad**, to + **ducō**, lead = **adducō**, lead to

**dē**, down or from + **ducō**, lead = **dēducō**, lead down or from

**ē**, out of + **ducō**, lead = **ēducō**, lead out of

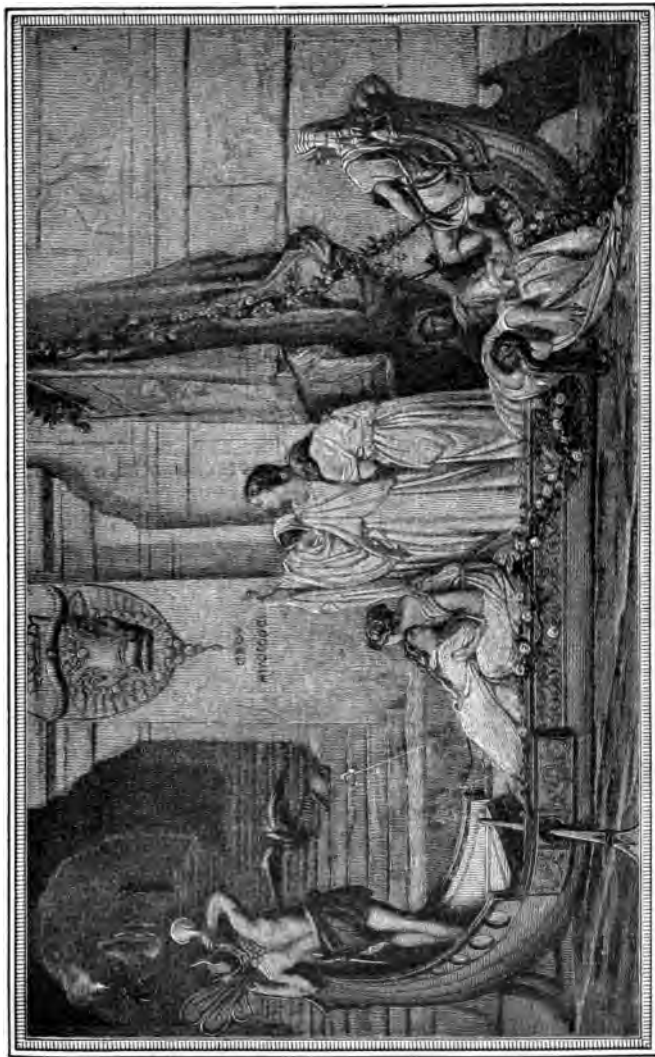
**in**, into + **ducō**, lead = **inducō**, lead into

### THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS<sup>1</sup>

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366. Consult the general vocabulary for new words or words you have forgotten.

**239.** Ōlim (*once upon a time*) Mīnōs, quī insulam Crētam regēbat, bellum cum Graecīs gerēbat. Graecī magnō animō pugnant, sed Mīnōs eōs crēbris proeliis superat. Tum Mīnōs dicit : " Nunc, Graecī, victōria est mea et servī meī estis. Nunc iniūriis<sup>2</sup> vestris poenam dabitīs magnam. 5 Quotannis (*every year*) ad patriam meam septem (*seven*) puerōs et septem puellās mittētis. Cum eis ad ōrās altae Crētae nāvigābitis. Eōs in labyrinthum<sup>1</sup> inducēmus. Tum barbarus Mīnōtaurus veniet. Eum vidēbunt et audient et timēbunt. Amīcōs suōs vocābunt, sed quis ad eōs auxilia 10 portābit? Sine cōsiliō,<sup>3</sup> sine armīs vitam suam Mīnōtaurō barbarō dabunt. Ea, Graecī, erit poena vestra. Quid dicitis?"

1. *Theseus* (thē'sūs) and the *Min'o-taur*. The Minotaur was a fabulous monster, which lived on the island of Crete in the labyrinth, a structure containing so many rooms and winding passages that nobody could get out of it. The Minotaur fed on human flesh.
2. Ablative of cause. The Greeks had caused the death of a son of Minos, and this led to the war.
3. *Resource*.



THE TRIBUTE TO THE MINOTAUR

**240.** 1. The wretched men will-suffer punishment. 2. Whither will Minos lead the boys and girls? 3. He-will-lead them<sup>1</sup> to his island. 4. The forces will-wage war with great spirit.

1. Use the masculine form.



GLASS VASES FROM POMPEII

## LESSON XXXI

*Nōn est ad astra mollis ē terrīs via*—Not easy is the way  
from the earth to the stars<sup>1</sup>

### VERBS IN *-IŌ* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

**241.** Some verbs of the third conjugation do not end in *-ō* like *regō*, but in *-iō*, like *audiō* of the fourth conjugation. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation and not to the fourth is shown by the ending of the infinitive (§ 155). Compare

*audiō*, *audi're* (*hear*), fourth conjugation

*capiō*, *ca'pere* (*take*), third conjugation

**242.** Observe that *capiō* is inflected like *audiō* throughout the past and future; but that in the present only the forms *capiō* and *capiunt* are like *audiō* and *audiunt*, all the other forms being like corresponding forms of *regō* (cf. *capis*, *regis*; *capit*, *regit*; etc.).

<sup>1</sup> From Seneca, a Roman philosopher.

**capiō, capere** (pres. stem **cape-**), *take*

| PRESENT     | PAST        | FUTURE    |
|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. ca'piō   | capiē'bam   | ca'piam   |
| 2. ca'pis   | capiē'bās   | ca'piēs   |
| 3. ca'pit   | capiē'bat   | ca'piet   |
| 1. ca'pimus | capiēbā'mus | capiē'mus |
| 2. ca'pitis | capiēbā'tis | capiē'tis |
| 3. ca'piunt | capiē'bant  | ca'pient  |

**EXERCISES**

**243.** Like **capiō**, inflect the present, past, and future of **faciō**, *facere, make, do*.

**THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS** (CONTINUED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

**244.** Miserī Graeci timent et pārent. Itaque quotannis (*yearly*) ad Crētam septem pulchrōs puerōs et septem pulchrās puellās mittunt. Numquam posteā filiōs filiāsque vident.

Tum Thēseus, clārus hērōs (*hero*) Graecōrum, in patriā nōn erat. Sed mox fāmam miseram audit et in patriam 5 celeriter properat. Populum convocat et dicit: "Semper, O Graeci, erimus servī? Semper filiōs filiāsque ad Crētam mittēmus? Bonum cōnsilium capiam. Minerva, dea sapientiae, auxilium dabit. Mīnōtaurum malum nōn timeō. Cum eō pugnābō et eum vincam."

10

**245.** 1. We-were-making, they-will-wage, you-are-sending.  
2. We-shall-conquer, you-will-take, they-will-make. 3. He-was-waging, we-shall-come, you-hear. 4. They-will-say, he-will-announce, we-shall-make.

## LESSON XXXII

Nē cēde malīs — Do not yield to misfortunes<sup>1</sup>

### THE IMPERATIVE MOOD · QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

246. The imperative mood expresses a command: as, *come!*  
*go! speak!*

247. The Latin imperative has two tenses, the present and future. The present is used more than the future, which is not included in this book.

248. The present imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. In the active voice the singular is the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding *-te* to the singular.

249.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

2. vocā, *call-thou*                      vocā'te, *call-ye*

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

2. monē, *advise-thou*                      monē'te, *advise-ye*

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

2. rege, *rule-thou*                      re'gite,<sup>2</sup> *rule-ye*

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

2. audī, *hear-thou*                      audī'te, *hear-ye*

250. The irregular verb **sum** has **es**, *be thou*, and **este**, *be ye*, as present imperatives.

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil, author of the *Ænē'id*, the greatest Latin epic poem.

<sup>2</sup> Note that in the third conjugation *e* of the stem becomes *i* before *-te*.

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

**251.** We learned in § 109 that questions might be introduced, as in English, by interrogative pronouns or adverbs: as, **quis** ? *who* ? **ubi** ? *where* ? **quō** ? *whither* ? **cūr** ? *why* ? and that questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* were often introduced by **-ne**, the question sign, combined with the first word.

But questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* may take one of three forms :

1. **Venitne** ? *Is he coming* ? (Asking for information.)
2. **Nōnne venit** ? *Is he not coming* ? (Expecting the answer *yes*.)
3. **Num venit** ? *He isn't coming, is he* ? (Expecting the answer *no*.)

**252.** We learned in § 110 that *yes-or-no* questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, **ita**, **vērō**, **certē**, etc. (*so*, *truly*, *certainly*, etc.) may be used for *yes* ; and **nōn**, **minimē**, etc. for *no* if the denial is an emphatic *by no means*, *not at all*, or the like.

**Num via longa est** ? **Minimē.** *The road isn't long, is it* ? *Not at all.*

## EXERCISES

**253.** Give the present imperative of the following verbs : **capiō**, **veniō**, **gerō**, **pateō**, **servō**.

## THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS (CONTINUED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

**254.** Tum Thēseus nāvīgium celeriter parat et ad insulam Crētā nāvīgat. Cum<sup>1</sup> ad ōram altā venit, ex nāvīgīō properat et terram petit. Eum Ariadnē,<sup>2</sup> filia rēgīnae, videt. Tum eum vocat et dicit : " Quis es, bone vir<sup>3</sup> ? Quid in patriā meā petis ? Nōnne Graecus es ? Crēta est inimica 5 Graecis et vita tua est in periculō." Thēseus respondet :

"Thēseus sum, Graecōrum hērōs (*hero*), nōtus fāmā<sup>4</sup> meā per multās terrās. Minōtaurum petō. Cum<sup>1</sup> eō pugnābō. Eum vincam. Nōne Thēseō auxilium dabis?" Tum Ariadnē, clārā fāmā et magnō animō Thēseī commōta (*moved*),<sup>10</sup> eum amat et respondet: "Num barbara sum? Vitam tuam servābō. Cape arma et veni."

1. The conjunction *cum*, *when*, and the preposition *cum*, *with*, though alike, are easily distinguished, as *cum*, *with*, is followed by the ablative case.  
2. Pronounce in English *A-ri-ad'ne*. 3. *Good sir*. 4. Ablative of cause.

255. 1. Nūntiā, mūnīte, mitte. 2. Pete, veni, nāvigāte.  
3. Servāte, mūnī, tenē. 4. Vidēte, portā, mittite.

~~~~~

**Fourth Review, Lessons XXIV-XXXII, §§ 749-754**



THE APPIAN WAY AND THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT

The Romans excelled as engineers and builders. A system of splendid roads connected the capital with the different parts of the Empire. "All roads lead to Rome" was literally true. The Appian Way extended southeast to Brundisium, the great commercial port for the East. Equally famous were the aqueducts, bringing the city an abundant water supply

## LESSON XXXIII

Accipere quam facere iniūriam praestat—It is better to suffer  
a wrong than to do one<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**256. Passive Voice.** The passive voice (§ 141) uses a different set of personal endings from those of the active. The present indicative passive of **vocō** is inflected as follows:

**vo'cō, vocā're** (pres. stem **vocā-**), *call*

	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. vo'cor, <i>I-am-called</i>	-r OR -or
2. vocā'ris or -re, <i>you-are-called</i>	-ris OR -re
3. vocā'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-is-called</i>	-tur
1. vocā'mur, <i>we-are-called</i>	-mur
2. vocā'mini, <i>you-are-called</i>	-mini
3. voca'ntur, <i>they-are-called</i>	-ntur

**a.** The letter **r**, which appears in all but one of the personal endings, is sometimes called the passive sign.

**b.** A long vowel is shortened before final **-r** or **-ntur** (cf. § 194. 2).

**c.** The forms **vocor** etc. may be translated either *I am called* etc. or *I am being called* etc.

### EXERCISES

**257.** Like **vocor**, inflect **amor**, **servor**, **nūntior**, **portor**, **superor**.

**258. Derivation.** The prefix **con-** (**com-**, **co-**), identical with the preposition **cum** (*with*), added to simple verbs makes many compounds both in Latin and English. This prefix sometimes

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, Rome's greatest orator and man of letters.

means *with* or *together*, and sometimes strengthens the simple verb with the meaning *completely, forcibly*. What is the force of this prefix in the following words?

<i>contain</i> ( <b>teneō</b> )	<i>compete</i> ( <b>petō</b> )	<i>conserve</i> ( <b>servō</b> )
<i>convoke</i> ( <b>convocō</b> )	<i>convince</i> ( <b>vincō</b> )	<i>conduct</i> ( <b>dūcō</b> )
<i>collaborate</i> <sup>1</sup> ( <b>labōrō</b> )	<i>convene</i> ( <b>veniō</b> )	<i>commit</i> ( <b>mittō</b> )

1. The final letter of the prefix is often assimilated (*made like*) to the first letter of the simple verb.

### THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366. Read the story as a whole

259. Tum Ariadnē Thēseum in nōtum labyrinthum indūcit et eī longum filum (*string*) dat et dicit: "Tenē id filum.



Filum vēstigia (*steps*) tua reget<sup>1</sup> et ex labyrinthō tē (*you*) ēdūcet. Nunc pro- 5 perā. Mīnōtaurum audiō. Num timēs? Eī fortiter resiste et clāra erit victōria tua. Vince et servā vitam puerōrum puellārumque 10 Graeciae." Mox Thēseus Mīnōtaurum videt et petit.<sup>2</sup> Diū pugnātur<sup>3</sup> nec sine magnō periculō. Dēnique Mīnōtaurus su- 15 perātur, et postea pueri puellaeque servantur.

#### PUERĪ PUELLAEQUE THĒSEUM AMANT

From a Pompeian wall painting

1. *Guide*. 2. *Attack*. 3. The form **pugnātur** means *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought* or *the contest rages*. The verb **pugnō** in Latin is intransitive, and so has no personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject is called impersonal, as in English *it rains*.

## LESSON XXXIV

Terrās irradiant—Let them illumine the earth<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *MONEŌ* • ABLATIVE OF THE PERSONAL AGENT

**260.** The present indicative passive of the second conjugation is inflected as follows :

**mo'neō, monē're** (pres. stem **monē-**), *advise*

#### PERSONAL ENDINGS

1. mo'neor, <i>I-am-advised</i>	-r or -or
2. monē'ris or -re, <i>you-are-advised</i>	-ris or -re
3. monē'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-is-advised</i>	-tur
1. monē'mur, <i>we-are-advised</i>	-mur
2. monē'minī, <i>you-are-advised</i>	-minī
3. monen'tur, <i>they-are-advised</i>	-ntur

**261. Rule for Ablative of Personal Agent.** *The ablative with the preposition ā or ab is used with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the act is performed.*

**Pueri ā Rōmānīs servantur, the boys are saved by the Romans**

NOTE. The literal meaning of **ā Rōmānīs** is *from the Romans*, but in our idiom *by the Romans* is a better translation.

**262. Ablative of Means and Ablative of Agent Compared.**  
Compare the two sentences :

**Pueri ā Rōmānīs servantur, the boys are saved by the Romans**

**Pueri nāvigiō servantur, the boys are saved by (or with) a boat**

In the first sentence **ā Rōmānīs** is the ablative of personal agent ; in the second **nāvigiō** is the ablative of means. To

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Amherst College.

aid in distinguishing these two constructions, which are often confused, observe the following facts :

- a.* The agent is a *person* ; the means is a *thing*.
- b.* The ablative of personal agent has the preposition *ā* or *ab* ; the ablative of means has no preposition.
- c.* The ablative of personal agent is used only with a passive verb ; with the ablative of means the verb may be either active or passive.

### EXERCISES

**263.** Like *moneor*, inflect *habeor*, *teneor*, *timeor*, *videor*.

**264.** 1. *Superāris, habēmur, videntur.* 2. *Tenētur, occupāmini, timēmur.* 3. *Vidēris, parantur, tenēmini.* 4. *Servātur, habētur, tenēmur.* 5. *Portāmini, habēris, teneor.*

**265.** 1. *Galli crēbra proelia faciunt et fortiter pugnant, sed ā finitimis superantur.* 2. *Minōtaurus ā filiabus eōrum timētur.* 3. *Num Thēseus Minōtaurum barbarum timet? Nōn timet.* 4. *Capite arma, Rōmānī; ā barbaris inimicis vidēmini.* 5. *Nec frūmentum nec aquam in castris habēmus. Quid faciēmus?* 6. *Tenē castra; Mārce, bonis tēlis. Iam (soon) socii nostri auxilium mittent.*

**266.** 1. The Gauls are quickly conquered by-the-arms of-the-Romans. 2. Are not pleasing stories told by many poets? Yes. 3. Theseus is-advised by Minerva, the goddess of-wisdom. 4. By-the-wisdom of-Minerva we-are-saved. 5. Give that money to-the-good queen, my son. 6. The camp of-the-savages has neither wall nor ditch. 7. When we-are-seen by your men, we-shall-suffer punishment.

## LESSON XXXV

Salvē! — Hail<sup>1</sup>

### THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

267. The tense signs of the past and future passive are the same as in the active. The inflection of **vocō** and **moneō** in these two tenses is as follows :

**vo'cō, vocā're** (pres. stem **vocā-**), *call*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN **-bā-**)

PERSONAL ENDINGS

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. vocā'bar, <i>I-was-called</i> <sup>2</sup>  | -r          |
| 2. vocābā'ris or -re, <i>you-were-called</i>   | -ris or -re |
| 3. vocābā'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-was-called</i> | -tur        |
|  |             |
| 1. vocābā'mur, <i>we-were-called</i>           | -mur        |
| 2. vocābā'mini, <i>you-were-called</i>         | -mini       |
| 3. vocāban'tur, <i>they-were-called</i>        | -ntur       |

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN **-bi-**)

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. vocā'bor, <i>I-shall-be-called</i>              | -r          |
| 2. vocā'beris or -re, <i>you-will-be-called</i>    | -ris or -re |
| 3. vocā'bitur, <i>he-, she-, it-will-be-called</i> | -tur        |
|  |             |
| 1. vocā'bimur, <i>we-shall-be-called</i>           | -mur        |
| 2. vocā'bi'mini, <i>you-will-be-called</i>         | -mini       |
| 3. vocābun'tur, <i>they-will-be-called</i>         | -ntur       |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Idaho.

<sup>2</sup> Or *I-was-being-called*, etc. Thus for all verbs in the past indicative passive.

**mo'neō, monē're** (pres. stem **monē-**), *advise*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN -bā-)

PERSONAL ENDINGS

1. monē'bar, <i>I-was-advised</i>	-r
2. monēbā'ris or -re, <i>you-were-advised</i>	-ris or -re
3. monēbā'tur, <i>he-, she-, it-was-advised</i>	-tur
1. monēbā'mur, <i>we-were-advised</i>	-mur
2. monēbā'mini, <i>you-were-advised</i>	-mini
3. monēban'tur, <i>they-were-advised</i>	-ntur

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

1. monē'bor, <i>I-shall-be-advised</i>	-r
2. monē'beris or -re, <i>you-will-be-advised</i>	-ris or -re
3. monē'bitur, <i>he-, she-, it-will-be-advised</i>	-tur
1. monē'bimur, <i>we-shall-be-advised</i>	-mur
2. monēbi'mini, <i>you-will-be-advised</i>	-mini
3. monēbun'tur, <i>they-will-be-advised</i>	-ntur

**a.** In the future passive the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first and as -be- in the second person singular, and as -bu- in the third person plural.

EXERCISES

**268.** Inflect the following verbs in the present, past, and future, active and passive: **amō, nūntiō, portō, teneō, videō, timeō.**

**269.** 1. Amābās, amābāris, timēbis, timēberis. 2. Servat, servātur, dabit, dabitur. 3. Portāmus, portābāmus, portābimus. 4. Dabiminī, vidēbuntur, tenēmur. 5. Amantur, dabātur, ti-mentur. 6. Vidēris, nūntiāmus, timēbat. 7. Tenent, timēbunt, monēris. 8. Vidēbant, amābiminī, portāmur. 9. Venīte, timē.

**270.** 1. They-will-be-feared, I-am-loved, we-were-seen. 2. We-are-carried, you-will-be-advised (*plur.*), they-have. 3. He-will-hasten, you-were-announcing (*sing.*), he-persuades. 4. I-shall-injure, you-favor (*sing.*), you-will-be-overcome (*plur.*). 5. We-shall-be-carried, I-was-eager-for, you-will-favor (*sing.*). 6. He-will-obey, we-are-held, they-were-seen.



ROMAN SWORDS

## LESSON XXXVI

In mediās rēs — Into the midst of things<sup>1</sup>

**THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND  
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS**

**271.** The present indicative passive of *re'gō* (third conjugation) and *au'diō* (fourth conjugation) are inflected as follows:

*re'gō, re'gere* (pres. stem *rege-*), *rule*

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>re'gor, I-am-ruled</i>               | <i>re'gimur, we-are-ruled</i>    |
| 2. <i>re'geris or -re, you-are-ruled</i>   | <i>regi'mini, you-are-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>re'gitur, he-, she-, it-is-ruled</i> | <i>regun'tur, they-are-ruled</i> |

*au'diō, audi're* (pres. stem *audi-*), *hear*

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>au'dior, I-am-heard</i>              | <i>audi'mur, we-are-heard</i>     |
| 2. <i>audi'ris or -re, you-are-heard</i>   | <i>audi'mini, you-are-heard</i>   |
| 3. <i>audi'tur, he-, she-, it-is-heard</i> | <i>audiun'tur, they-are-heard</i> |

**a.** Observe the changes of the final stem vowel *-e* in the third conjugation. It appears unchanged only in the second person singular: *as, re'ge-ris* or *re'ge-re*.

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

## EXERCISES

272. Like *regŏ*, inflect the present active and passive of *dūcŏ*, *vincŏ*, and *gerŏ*.

273. Like *audiŏ*, inflect the present active and passive of *mūniŏ*.

274. 1. *Tenēberis, dicitur, habēbāmini.* 2. *Superābitur, mūniuntur, geritur.* 3. *Mūnītur, parābit, vincite.*



RŌMĀNĪ MAGNUM NUMERUM CAPTĪVŌRUM CAPIUNT

DĒ BELLĪS RŌMĀNŌRUM ET GALLŌRUM

First learn the special vocabulary, page 366

275. *Cum bella in Galliā ā Rŏmānīs geruntur, castra eŏrum lātis fossīs vāllisque altīs celeriter mūniuntur. Tum cōpiae ex portis (gates) castrŏrur ēdūcuntur, sed castra firmŏ praesidiŏ tenentur. Saepe Rŏmānī proelia in mediis silvis*

faciunt, saepe diū pugnātur<sup>1</sup>; sed dēnique barbari bonis 5  
armis Rōmānōrum vinctur. Rōmāni magnum numerum  
captivōrum capiunt. In numerō captivōrum multi pueri puel-  
laeque videntur. Captivi ā Rōmānis in Italiam indūcuntur.  
Ibi erunt servī miserī nec postea patriam vidēbunt.

1. See § 259, note 3.

I AM A FIRM BELIEVER IN THE VALUE OF STUDYING GREEK AND LATIN.  
ALTHOUGH IN AFTER LIFE ONE MAY FORGET MUCH THAT HE HAS LEARNED,  
HE CAN NEVER LOSE THE INFLUENCE UPON HIS CHARACTER. — ELIHU ROOT,  
FORMER SECRETARY OF STATE

## LESSON XXXVII

Repetitiō est māter studiōrum — Repetition is the mother of learning

### THE PAST AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGŌ* AND *AUDIŌ*

276. The past and future indicative passive of *regō* (third conjugation) and *audiō* (fourth conjugation) are inflected as follows :

**re'gō, re'gere** (pres. stem *rege-*), *rule*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN *-bā-*)

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>regē'bar, I-was-ruled</i>               | <i>regēbā'mur, we-were-ruled</i>    |
| 2. <i>regēbā'ris or -re, you-were-ruled</i>   | <i>regēbā'mini, you-were-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>regēbā'tur, he-, she-, it-was-ruled</i> | <i>regēban'tur, they-were-ruled</i> |

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGNS *-a-* and *-ē-*)

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>re'gar, I-shall-be-ruled</i>              | <i>regē'mur, we-shall-be-ruled</i>   |
| 2. <i>regē'ris or -re, you-will-be-ruled</i>    | <i>regē'mini, you-will-be-ruled</i>  |
| 3. <i>regē'tur, he-, she-, it-will-be-ruled</i> | <i>regen'tur, they-will-be-ruled</i> |

**au'diō, audi're** (pres. stem **audi-**), *hear*

PAST INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGN **-bā-**)

1. **audiē'bar**, *I-was-heard*
2. **audiēbā'ris** or **-re**, *you-were-heard*
3. **audiēbā'tur**, *he-, she-, it-was-heard*
1. **audiēbā'mur**, *we-were-heard*
2. **audiēbā'mini**, *you-were-heard*
3. **audiēban'tur**, *they-were-heard*

FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE (TENSE SIGNS **-a-** and **-ē-**)

1. **au'diar**, *I-shall-be-heard*
2. **audiē'ris** or **-re**, *you-will-be-heard*
3. **audiē'tur**, *he-, she-, it-will-be-heard*
1. **audiē'mur**, *we-shall-be-heard*
2. **audiē'mini**, *you-will-be-heard*
3. **audien'tur**, *they-will-be-heard*

EXERCISES

**277.** Like **regō**, inflect the present, past, and future, active and passive, of **dūcō**, **vincō**, and **gerō**.<sup>1</sup>

**278.** Like **audiō**, inflect the present, past, and future, active and passive, of **mūniō**.

**279.** 1. **Dūcēbās**, **dūcēbāris**, **mūniēs**, **mūniēris**. 2. **Vincit**, **vincet**, **veniet**, **mūniētur**. 3. **Gerēbāmus**, **gerēbāmur**, **gerimus**, **gerēmus**. 4. **Dūcēmini**, **regimini**, **audiēbantur**. 5. **Amābunt**, **nocēbunt**, **venient**, **mūnientur**. 6. **Timēris**, **mūnīmus**, **veniēmus**,

<sup>1</sup> Extend the blank scheme (§748) of verb inflection to include the first three tenses of the passive voice, and use it for self-drill with a variety of verbs. *You cannot know verbs too well.*

capiunt. 7. Persuādent, tenēbunt, vidēberis, audientur. 8. Geruntur, gerēbātur, geritur. 9. Pārēmus, parāmur, nocēbunt, mūniēmini.

280. 1. They-are-sent, they-will-be-conquered, I-am-heard, we-were-led. 2. We-are-sent, you-will-be-fortified (*sing.*), they-come. 3. He-will-resist, you-seek (*sing.*), you-will-be-conquered (*plur.*). 4. You-were-believing (*sing.*), he-carried-on, I-shall-come. 5. We-shall-be-heard, I-was-leading, you-will-seek (*plur.*). 6. He-will-carry-on, we-are-fortified, they-were-carried-on.

## LESSON XXXVIII

Deō, amīcīs, patriae — For God, for friends, for country

### THE PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *CAPĪŌ*

281. The present indicative passive of *capīō* (cf. § 242) is inflected like *regor*, except the two forms *capior* and *capiuntur*, which are like *audior* and *audiuntur*. The past and future throughout are inflected like *audiēbar* and *audiar*.

PRESENT PASSIVE	PAST PASSIVE	FUTURE PASSIVE
1. ca'pior	capiē'bar	ca'piar
2. ca'peris or -re	capiēbā'ris or -re	capiē'ris or -re
3. ca'pitur	capiēbā'tur	capiē'tur
1. ca'pimur	capiēbā'mur	capiē'mur
2. capi'mini	capiēbā'mini	capiē'mini
3. capiun'tur	capiēban'tur	capien'tur

### EXERCISES

282. Like *capīō*, inflect *rapīō*, *seize*, in the present, past, and future, active and passive.

DĒ LŪDŌ<sup>1</sup> RŌMĀNŌ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**283.** Spectāte, amici mei, pictūram (*picture*) lūdi Rŏmāni. Vidētisne discipulōs (*pupils*)? Sunt ūnus,<sup>2</sup> duo, trēs, quattuor, quīque, sex discipuli. Duo pueri stant (*are standing*) et quattuor sedent. Quid pueri faciunt? Labōrant magnā diligentiā. Duo tenent tabellās.<sup>3</sup> Trēs tenent librōs. Librī 5



Rŏmānōrum erant volūmina (*rolls*). In subselliō (*bench*) sunt duo librī et trēs tabellae<sup>3</sup> et ātrāmentum (*ink*). Spectāte magistrum (*teacher*). Quid facit? Magister discipulis fābulam nārrat. Magister multās et grātās fābulās in memoriā habet. Cum pueri sunt tardī, tum poenam dant. Sed bonis pueris prae- 10 mia pulchra ā magistrō dantur. Amātisne praemia? Certē.

1. Latin has two words for school, *lūdus*, an elementary school, and *schola*, an advanced school or college for adults. 2. *One*. The next five numerals follow. Learn to count six in Latin. 3. *Writing tablets*. These were thin boards smeared with wax (cf. picture, p. 7). The writing was done with a *stilus*, a pointed instrument, like a pencil, made of bone or metal.

## LESSON XXXIX

Dum spīrō, spērō — While I breathe, I hope<sup>1</sup>

### THE PRESENT INFINITIVE AND THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

**284. Infinitive Defined.** The infinitive is a verbal noun, giving the general meaning of the verb without person or number: as, *amāre, to love*.

**285. Present Infinitive.** The present infinitive active is formed by adding *-re* to the present stem (§ 154). The present infinitive passive may be formed from the active by changing final *-e* to *-i*, except in the third conjugation, which changes final *-ere* to *-i*.

CONJ.	PRES. STEM	PRES. INF. ACTIVE	PRES. INF. PASSIVE
I	<b>vocā-</b>	vocā're, <i>to-call</i>	vocā'ri, <i>to-be-called</i>
II	<b>monē-</b>	monē're, <i>to-advise</i>	monē'ri, <i>to-be-advised</i>
III	<b>rege-</b>	re'gere, <i>to-rule</i>	re'gi, <i>to-be-ruled</i>
IV	<b>audi-</b>	audi're, <i>to-hear</i>	audi'ri, <i>to-be-heard</i>

**a.** The present infinitive of *sum* is *esse*. There is no passive.

**286. Present Imperative.** The active forms of the present imperative, already given in § 249, are repeated below for comparison with the passive forms. The present imperative passive ends in *-re* in the singular and in *-minī* in the plural. Thus the singular of the passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and the plural is like the second person plural of the present indicative passive.

<sup>1</sup> Closing words of the motto of the state of South Carolina. Free translation, "While there's life, there's hope."

## ACTIVE IMPERATIVE

CONJ. I	vo'cā, <i>call-thou</i>	vocā'te, <i>call-ye</i>
II	mo'nē, <i>advise-thou</i>	monē'te, <i>advise-ye</i>
III	re'ge, <i>rule-thou</i>	re'gite, <i>rule-ye</i>
IV	au'di, <i>hear-thou</i>	audi'te, <i>hear-ye</i>

## PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

CONJ. I	vocā're, <i>be-thou-called</i>	vocā'mini, <i>be-ye-called</i>
II	monē're, <i>be-thou-advised</i>	monē'mini, <i>be-ye-advised</i>
III	re'gere, <i>be-thou-ruled</i>	regi'mini, <i>be-ye-ruled</i>
IV	audi're, <i>be-thou-heard</i>	audi'mini, <i>be-ye-heard</i>

## EXERCISES

287. Give the active and passive present infinitives of *nārrō*, *rapiō*, *mūniō*, *respondeō*, *parō*, *gerō*, *videō*, *spectō*, *dūcō*, *vincō*.

288. Give the imperative active of *dicō*,<sup>1</sup> *dūcō*, *faciō*, *nūntiō*, *veniō*, *crēdō*, *noceō*, *faveō*, *resistō*, *sedeō*.

289. Give the imperative passive of *nārrō*, *rapiō*, *portō*, *petō*, *occupō*, *vincō*, *servō*, *timeō*, *mūniō*, *videō*.

290. 1. Hasten-thou, to-be-prepared, be-ye-sent, lead-thou.  
2. To-lead, to-be-led, be-ye-seized, come-thou. 3. To-be-sent, to-save, lead-ye, speak-thou. 4. To-be-sought, be-ye-led, to-seize, to-be-held. 5. Fear-thou, come-ye, be-ye-prepared, to-be-fortified.

<sup>1</sup> The verbs *dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* have *dic*, *dūc*, and *fac* in the singular of the present imperative active. The plural is formed regularly: *dicite*, etc.

## LESSON XL

*Melius esse quam vidēri* — Better to be than to seem<sup>1</sup>

### SYNOPSSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

**291.** Learn to give rapidly the synopses of the verbs you have had, in any person or number, following the model given below :

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

##### INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	vo'cō	vo'cor	mo'neō	mo'neor
PAST	vocā'bam	vocā'bar	monē'bam	monē'bar
FUT.	vocā'bō	vocā'bor	monē'bō	monē'bor

##### IMPERATIVE

PRES.	vo'cā	vocā're	mo'nē	monē're
-------	-------	---------	-------	---------

##### INFINITIVE

PRES.	vocā're	vocā'ri	monē're	monē'ri
-------	---------	---------	---------	---------

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

#### THIRD CONJUGATION (-iō verbs)

##### INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	re'gō	re'gor	ca'piō	ca'pior
PAST	regē'bam	regē'bar	capiē'bam	capiē'bar
FUT.	re'gam	re'gar	ca'piam	ca'piar

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of North Carolina, adapted from Sallust.

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	re'ge	re'gere	ca'pe	ca'pere
-------	-------	---------	-------	---------

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	re'gere	re'gi	ca'pere	ca'pi
-------	---------	-------	---------	-------

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	au'diō	au'dior
PAST	audiē'bam	audiē'bar
FUT.	au'diam	au'diar

## IMPERATIVE

PRES.	au'di	audi're
-------	-------	---------

## INFINITIVE

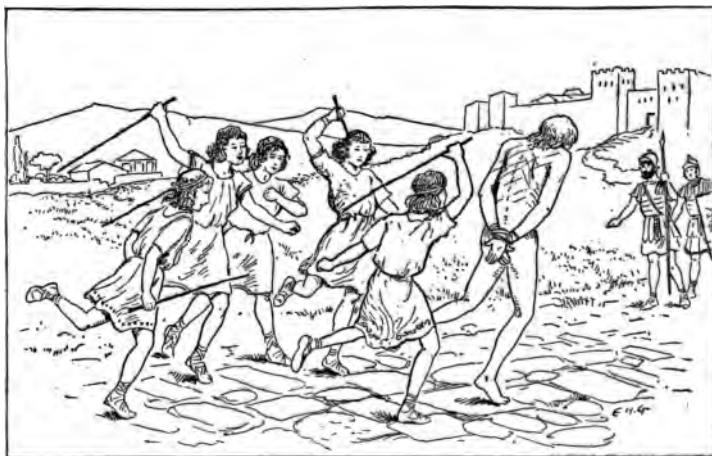
PRES.	audi're	audi'ri
-------	---------	---------

## DĒ MALŌ MAGISTRŌ LŪDĪ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**292.** Ōlim (*once upon a time*) Rōmānī cum finitimō oppidō bellum gerēbant. Camillus, vir clārus, cōpiās Rōmānās dūcēbat. In eō oppidō erat quidam magister lūdi.<sup>1</sup> Eum pueri amābant et viri oppidī ei<sup>2</sup> crēdēbant. Saepe magister puerōs ex oppidō per agrōs proximōs ēdūcēbat, nec pueri in 5 periculō erant, nam oppidum ā Rōmānis nōndum (*not yet*) oppugnābātur. Sed dēnique magister puerōs in media castra Rōmāna indūcit et dicit: "Spectā, Camille, eōs puerōs. Ei erunt captivī tui." Sed Camillus dicit: "Malum animum,

magister, habēs. Nōn cum pueris Rōmānī bellum gerunt.” 10  
 Tum suis<sup>8</sup> dicit, “Rapite et ligāte (*bind*) eum.” Tum  
 pueris virgās (*rods*) dat et dicit, “Iam agite, pueri mei, eis



MALUS MAGISTER LŪDĪ POENAM DAT

virgīs eum malum magistrum in oppidum vestrum.” Id  
 factum erat grātum viris eius oppidi et mox amicitiam  
 Rōmae petunt.

15

1. *quidam magister lūdī, a school teacher.* 2. *eī, dative with crēdebant* (§ 224). 3. *To his men.*

**293. Derivation.** What is the meaning of the following English words and to what Latin words are they related?

dictate	clarify	capacity	repeat	retard
regulate	regent	factory	sediment	rapture

## LESSON XLI

Equō nē crēdite — Do not trust the horse<sup>1</sup>

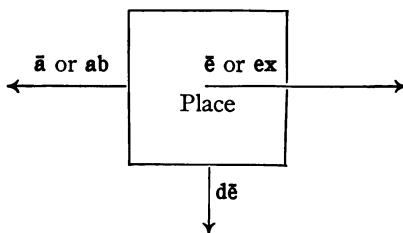
### THE ABLATIVE DENOTING FROM

**294.** One of the relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from* (cf. § 65). This relation is represented in Latin by a number of special constructions. One of these, the *ablative of personal agent*, has been already discussed (§ 261). Two others of importance are the *ablative of the place from*, many instances of which have occurred in the preceding exercises, and the *ablative of separation*.

**295. Rule for Ablative of Place From.** *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

*Agricolae ex agris veniunt, the farmers come from the fields*

*a.*  $\bar{a}$  or *ab* denotes *from near* a place ;  $\bar{e}$  or *ex*, *out from* it ; and *dē*, *down from* it. This may be represented graphically as follows :



<sup>1</sup> This is taken from Vergil's *Æneid*, and refers to the famous wooden horse by means of which the Greeks took Troy after they had besieged it in vain for ten years. Used in a general way, the expression is a warning against the tricks of an enemy.

**296. Rule for Ablative of Separation.** *Words expressing separation or taking away are followed by the ablative, often with the prepositions ā (ab), dē, ē (ex).*

1. **Thēseus patriam ā Minōtaurō liberat,** *Theseus frees his country from the Minotaur*
2. **Thēseus patriam periculō liberat,** *Theseus frees his country from peril*

**a.** When there is actual separation of one material thing from another, as in 1, the preposition is usually present. When the separation is figurative, as in 2, the preposition is usually omitted.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**297. 1.** Gallī crēbris proeliis Germānōs ab agrīs suis prohibebunt. **2.** Factō<sup>1</sup> Camilli puerī ex castris Rōmānis celeriter dimittentur. **3.** Ibi ab amicis suis longē aberant. **4.** Memoria eius facti animis nostris numquam longē aberit. **5.** Cūr vir malus puerōs ā mūrīs oppidi abdūcit? **6.** Vir malus amicitiam Camilli petēbat. **7.** Liberā filiōs nostrōs periculō, Camille. **8.** Certē eōs liberābō et vir malus poenam dabit. **9.** Factō<sup>1</sup> malō eum ex castris meis agam.

1. Ablative of cause.

**298. 1.** The Roman camp was far distant from that place. **2.** We shall be freed from the memory of those wrongs. **3.** Depart from this place, my friends, and attack their towns. **4.** My men will lead them away from the walls. **5.** Keep<sup>1</sup> the savages out of your towns, Romans. **6.** Seize that man, my son, and send him away. **7.** The boys are not dull, are they<sup>2</sup>?

1. Imperative of *prohibeō*. **2.** Review § 251.

## LESSON XLII

Nō omne quod nitet aurum est — All is not gold that glitters

### PRINCIPAL PARTS · VERB STEMS · THE PERFECT STEM THE ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT

**299. Principal Parts.** Certain forms of the verb are important because we cannot inflect the verb without knowing them. These are called the *principal parts*.

In English, the principal parts are the present indicative, the past indicative, and the past participle: as, *go, went, gone*.

In Latin, the principal parts are the first person singular of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person singular of the perfect indicative, and the past participle: as,

vo'cō

vocā're

vocā'vī

vocā'tus

**300. Verb Stems.** From the principal parts we get three verb stems, from which we construct the entire conjugation. These are the *present stem*, formed from the present infinitive (§ 154), the *perfect stem*, and the *participial stem*.

**301.** The *perfect stem* is found by dropping final -ī from the first person singular of the perfect: as, **vocāv-** from **vocā'vī**, perfect of **vocō**.

**302.** The *participial stem* is found by dropping final -us from the past participle: as, **vocāt-** from **vocā'tus**, past participle of **vocō**.

**303. From the perfect stem are formed**

The Perfect Indicative Active

The Past Perfect Indicative Active

The Future Perfect Indicative Active

**304. Endings of the Perfect.** The perfect is inflected by adding the following endings to the perfect stem:

1. -i, <i>I</i>	-imus, <i>we</i>
2. -isti, <i>you</i>	-istis, <i>you</i>
3. -it, <i>he, she, it</i>	-ērunt or -ēre, <i>they</i>

The endings of the perfect are different from those found in any other tense. They are the same in all conjugations.

**305.** Practically all the verbs of the first conjugation have regular principal parts: as,

vo'cō	vocā're	vocā'vi	vocā'tus
-------	---------	---------	----------

Following the model, give the principal parts of **amō, nārrō, portō, parō, occupō, pugnō, superō, spectō, liberō.**

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**306.** 1. Barbari magnam cōpiam frūmenti comparābunt et ex agris suis discēdent. 2. Multa oppida finitimōrum oppugnābunt. 3. Ea oppida mūris altis et fossis lātis mūniuntur et fortiter dēfenduntur. 4. Quam longē ab Italiā absunt ea oppida? Nōn longē absunt. 5. Nōne Rōmānī auxilium ad ea oppida mittent? Certē, nam populī eōrum oppidōrum sunt socii Rōmānōrum. 6. Amplae cōpiae Rōmānōrum animōs timidōs sociōrum cōfirmābunt. 7. Rōmānī firma praesidia in eis oppidis locābunt. 8. Itaque barbari iniūriis prohibēbuntur et cōpiās suās dimittent.

**307.** 1. The cowardly allies will be defended by the Romans. 2. How far distant were those places<sup>1</sup> from their<sup>2</sup> camp? 3. Prepare an abundant supply<sup>3</sup> of grain, Marcus, and place it in our town. 4. Because of the memory<sup>4</sup> of your deeds,

we shall be neither slow nor cowardly. 5. Their<sup>2</sup> hearts were encouraged, and so they seized their arms and bravely assaulted the lofty walls. 6. Why are you sitting there? Depart and quickly free those captives.

1. What is there irregular [about the plural of *locus*? 2. Not *suus* (cf. §§ 135, 209). 3. *cōpia*. 4. Ablative of cause.

## LESSON XLIII

Dimidium facti est coepisse — Well begun is half done<sup>1</sup>

### THE PERFECT, PAST PERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

308. The irregular verb *sum* is inflected in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative as follows:

PRIN. PARTS: *sum, esse, fui* (perf. stem *fu-*)

#### PERFECT

<i>fu'i, I have been, I was</i>	<i>fu'imus, we have been, we were</i>
<i>fuis'ti, you have been, you were</i>	<i>fuis'tis, you have been, you were</i>
<i>fu'it, he has been, he was</i>	<i>fuē'runt or fuē're, they have been, they were</i>

#### PAST PERFECT (TENSE SIGN *-erā-*)

<i>fu'eram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerā'mus, we had been</i>
<i>fu'erās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerā'tis, you had been</i>
<i>fu'erat, he had been</i>	<i>fu'erant, they had been</i>

#### FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN *-eri-*)

<i>fu'erō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fue'rimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fu'eris, you will have been</i>	<i>fue'ritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fu'erit, he will have been</i>	<i>fu'erint, they will have been</i>

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the greatest Roman lyric poet and still the most widely read. The literal translation of the Latin is *Half of an achievement is to have begun it*.

**a.** The past perfect may be formed by adding *eram*, the past of *sum*, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is *-erā-*.

**b.** The future perfect may be formed by adding *erō*, the future of *sum*, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in *-erint*, not *-erunt*. The tense sign is *-eri-*.

**c.** The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of all active verbs are formed on the perfect stem. They are all inflected like *sum*.

## SEXTUS, QUINTUS, MĀRCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 367

**309. MĀRCUS.** Ubi fuistis, Sexte et Quinte?

SEXTUS. Ego (*I*) in nostrā villā fui, et Quintus in suā villā fuit. Diū in agris nostris fuimus. Officia agricolārum sunt multa. Habēsne bonōs servōs?

M. Habeō. Diū exempla ēgregiae diligentiae fuērunt. Eis ampla praemia mox dabō et eōs liberābō.

S. Sine sapientiā fueris. Tenē bonōs servōs et liberā eōs numquam. Sed quid spectās, Quinte?

QUINTUS. Spectō eum pulchrum librum. Estne tuus?

M. Meus est. Semper bonis libris<sup>1</sup> studēbam. Is liber erat Galbae<sup>2</sup> et iam diū in casā eius erat. Liber est nōtus et de bellis Rōmānōrum Gallōrumque nārrat. Dēnique Galli pācantur, sed iam per septem<sup>3</sup> annōs Rōmānī in Galliā fuerant.

1. Dative. See § 224. 2. Genitive of the possessor, § 150. 3. Can you count seven in Latin?

**310.** 1. Where had the farmers been? They had been on their farms. 2. Have you not been examples of remarkable industry, O slaves? Yes. 3. Soon, Romans, we shall have been in Gaul for<sup>1</sup> seven years. 4. How long<sup>2</sup> have we been absent from our duties? 5. Finally the Gauls will be subdued, but they will have been neither stupid nor cowardly. 6. Encourage the loyal hearts of their<sup>3</sup> allies with an abundant supply of money.

1. *per*. 2. Distinguish between *quam diū*, *how long*, and *quam longē*, *how far*. 3. Not *suus* (cf. §§ 135, 209).

## LESSON XLIV

Nōn ministrārī, sed ministrāre — Not to be ministered unto,  
but to minister<sup>1</sup>

### USE AND INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

**311. Use of the Perfect.** The perfect indicative has two distinct meanings; according to its translation, it is called the *present perfect* or the *past absolute*.

**312.** As *present perfect*, the perfect is translated by the English present perfect with *have*, and denotes the action as completed at the time of speaking: as, *I have now finished my work*.

**313.** As *past absolute*, the perfect is translated by the English past tense, and denotes that the action took place sometime in the past: as, *I finished my work*.

**314. Translation of the English Past.** The English past is expressed sometimes by the Latin perfect and sometimes by the Latin past. In telling a story the perfect is used to mark its successive forward steps, and the past to describe past situations and past circumstances that attended those steps.

What tenses would be used in a Latin translation of the following passage?

I sailed the seas for many years. Once a school of whales surrounded our ship. The whales were swimming slowly along and were not terrified by our presence. Spouts of water arose on every side and some of the passengers were greatly alarmed. Then the monsters suddenly vanished.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Wellesley College.

**315. Inflection of the Perfect.** The perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected like *fui* (cf. § 308), and is as follows :

FIRST CONJUGATION		SECOND CONJUGATION	
<b>vocā'vī</b> (perf. stem <b>vocāv-</b> ), <i>I have called, I called</i>		<b>mo'nui</b> (perf. stem <b>monu-</b> ), <i>I have advised, I advised</i>	
1. vocā'vī	vocā'vimus	mo'nui	monu'imus
2. vocāvis'tī	vocāvis'tis	monuis'tī	monuis'tis
3. vocā'vit	vocāvē'runt or -ē're	mo'nuit	monuē'runt or -ē're
THIRD CONJUGATION		FOURTH CONJUGATION	
<b>rē'xī</b> (perf. stem <b>rēx-</b> ), <i>I have ruled, I ruled</i>		<b>audi'vī</b> (perf. stem <b>audīv-</b> ), <i>I have heard, I heard</i>	
1. rē'xī	rē'ximus	audi'vī	audi'vimus
2. rēxis'tī	rēxis'tis	audivis'tī	audivis'tis
3. rē'xit	rēxē'runt or -ē're	audi'vit	audivē'runt or -ē're

**a.** In vocabularies the first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. Principal parts must be learned thoroughly. With principal parts and the rules for tense formation well in mind, the conjugation of verbs becomes easy.

#### EXERCISES

**316.** Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding **-vī** to the present stem. Like **vocā'vī**, inflect **amā'vī**, **nārrā'vī**, **pācā'vī**.

**317.** Like **monui**, inflect **habui**, **tenui**, **patui**.

**318.** Like **rēxī**, inflect **dixī** (perfect of **dīcō**), **dūxī** (perfect of **dūcō**), **mīsī** (perfect of **mittō**), and **cēpī** (perfect of **capiō**).

**319.** Like **audivī**, inflect **mūnivī**.



CURIUS DENTATUS AND THE SAMNITE AMBASSADORS

## DĒ CURIŌ DENTĀTŌ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368. See if you can explain the use of the past and perfect tenses in this story.

**320.** In numērō clārōrum Rōmānōrum erat Curius Dentātus. Saepe magna proelia faciēbat, saepe inimica castra oppidaque capiēbat. Sed in mediis victōriis vita eius erat vērā et integrā. Nec in villā amplā, sed in casā parvā habitābat, et cum officia pūblica nōn prohibēbant, magnā diligentīā 5 in parvō agrō labōrābat. Ōlim Samnitēs,<sup>1</sup> finitimī Rōmānōrum, quī amicitiam Dentātī petēbant, ad eum lēgātōs misērunt. Lēgātī multa praemia pulchra et cōpiam auri (*gold*) portābant et ad agrum Dentātī properāvērunt.

1. *The Samnites*, living east and south of Latium, conquered by the Romans after a great struggle, in which Dentatus played a prominent part.

## LESSON XLV

Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs — As you sow, so shall you reap <sup>1</sup>

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

**321.** The following verbs include the three irregular verbs and all verbs of the second conjugation previously used. Review the meanings and drill on the inflection of the perfect.

**322. Principal Parts of Irregular Verbs.** Learn the principal parts of the following irregular verbs :

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT	PAST PART.	
sum	esse	fui	—	<i>be</i>
ab'sum	abes'se	ā'fui	—	<i>be away</i>
dō	dare	dedi	datus	<i>give</i>

**a.** Sum and absum have the future participles futūrus and āfutūrus.

**323. Principal Parts of Second Conjugation.** Learn the principal parts of the following verbs of the second conjugation :

fa'veō	favē're	fāvi	fautū'rus	<i>favor</i>
ha'beō	habē're	ha'bui	ha'bitus	<i>have</i>
mo'neō	monē're	mo'nui	mo'nitus	<i>advise</i>
no'ceō	nocē're	no'cui	nocitū'rus	<i>injure</i>
pā'reō	pārē're	pā'ruī	—	<i>obey</i>
pa'teō	patē're	pa'tuī	—	<i>extend</i>
persuā'deō	persuādē're	persuā'si	persuā'sus	<i>persuade</i>
prohi'beō	prohibē're	prohi'bui	prohi'bitus	<i>prevent</i>
respon'deō	respondē're	respon'di	respōn'sus	<i>reply</i>
se'deō	sedē're	sēdī	sessus	<i>sit</i>
stu'deō	studē're	stu'dui	—	<i>be eager</i>

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, Rome's greatest orator and generally considered her first man of letters.

te'neō	tenē're	te'nui	—	<i>hold</i>
ti'meō	timē're	ti'mui	—	<i>fear</i>
vi'deō	vidē're	<u>vidi</u>	visus	<i>see</i>

a. Note that all these verbs have the infinitive ending *-ēre*. This marks them as belonging to the second conjugation. Further, observe that the formation of the perfect varies in different verbs and that the past participle is sometimes lacking. Occasionally a verb that has no past participle will have a future participle ending in *-ūrus*, and this is then given in the principal parts. There are two examples of this in the above list. Do you see them? In dealing with verbs make it a rule to look at the infinitive first of all to determine the conjugation, and do not be surprised to find irregularities in the formation of the perfect and the participle.

#### DĒ CURIŌ DENTĀTŌ (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

324. Nōn in agrō sed in casā lēgātī Dentātum invēnerunt. Vir clārus ante mēnsam<sup>1</sup> sedēbat. Ibi cēnam<sup>2</sup> rāpulōrum<sup>3</sup> edēbat.<sup>4</sup> Tum lēgātī casam intrāvērunt<sup>5</sup> et dixērunt: "Factis tuis ēgregiis et officiis pūblicis, Dentāte, Samnitēs amicitiam tuam petunt. Ea praemia et id aurum (*gold*) sunt tua." <sup>5</sup> Tum Dentātus respondit: "Minimē, Samnitēs, nātūram meam tenētis.<sup>6</sup> Vērūs Rōmānus nōn studet aurō sed imperiō in (*over*) eōs quī aurum habent. Iam discēdite."

1. mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*. 2. cēna, -ae, F., *dinner*. 3. rāpulum, -ī, N., *young turnip*. 4. edō, -ere, *eat*. 5. intrō, -āre, *enter*. 6. *Understand*.

THAT CLASSICAL STUDIES HAVE BEEN OF VERY GREAT VALUE TO MANY PERSONS IS SIMPLY A MATTER OF FACT, AND NOT OF OPINION. THEIR VALUE MOREOVER HAS NOT BEEN PURELY CULTURAL BUT INTENSELY PRACTICAL. — MARION LEROY BURTON, PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

## LESSON XLVI

Amicus certus in rē incertā cernitur — A friend in need is  
a friend indeed<sup>1</sup>

### PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE · PRINCIPAL PARTS (CONTINUED)

**325. Past Perfect Indicative.** The tense sign of the past perfect indicative active is **-erā-**. This is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are the same as in the past indicative, and the inflection is like that of **fueram** (§ 308).

**326.** The past perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

**vocā'veram** (perf. stem **vocāv-**),  
*I had called*

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <b>vocā'veram</b> | <b>vocāverā'mus</b> |
| 2. <b>vocā'verās</b> | <b>vocāverā'tis</b> |
| 3. <b>vocā'verat</b> | <b>vocā'verant</b>  |

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

**monu'eram** (perf. stem **monu-**),  
*I had advised*

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <b>monu'eram</b> | <b>monuerā'mus</b> |
| 2. <b>monu'erās</b> | <b>monuerā'tis</b> |
| 3. <b>monu'erat</b> | <b>monu'erant</b>  |

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

**rē'xeram** (perf. stem **rēx-**),  
*I had ruled*

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <b>rē'xeram</b> | <b>rēxerā'mus</b> |
| 2. <b>rē'xerās</b> | <b>rēxerā'tis</b> |
| 3. <b>rē'xerat</b> | <b>rē'xerant</b>  |

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

**audi'veram** (perf. stem **audi-**),  
*I had heard*

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <b>audi'veram</b> | <b>audiverā'mus</b> |
| 2. <b>audi'verās</b> | <b>audiverā'tis</b> |
| 3. <b>audi'verat</b> | <b>audi'verant</b>  |

**327. Principal Parts of Third Conjugation.** Learn the principal parts of the following verbs of the third conjugation. The list includes all previously used. Review the meanings and drill on the inflection of the perfect and the past perfect.

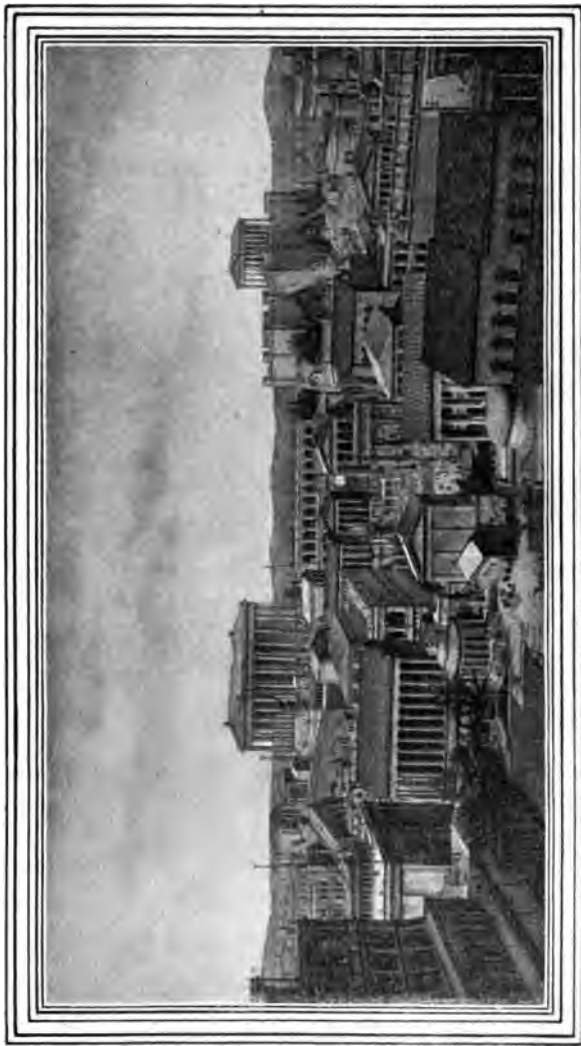
<sup>1</sup> From Ennius, the most famous of the early Latin poets. More literally, *The faithful friend is revealed when all is unfaithful*. Note the play on words.

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT	PAST PART.	
abdū'cō	abdū'cere	abdū'xī	abduc'tus	<i>lead away</i>
agō	a'gere	ēgi	actus	<i>drive</i>
ca'piō	ca'pere	cēpi	captus	<i>take</i>
crēdō	crē'dere	crē'didi	crē'ditus	<i>believe</i>
dēfen'dō	dēfen'dere	dēfen'di	dēfen'sus	<i>defend</i>
dīcō	dī'cere	dixi	dictus	<i>say</i>
dīmit'tō	dīmit'tere	dīmī'si	dīmīs'sus	<i>send away</i>
discē'dō	discē'dere	disces'si	disces'sus	<i>go away</i>
dūcō	dū'cere	dūxi	ductus	<i>lead</i>
ēdū'cō	ēdū'cere	ēdū'xī	educ'tus	<i>lead out</i>
fa'ciō	fa'cere	fēcī	factus	<i>make</i>
gerō	ge'rere	gessi	gestus	<i>carry on, wage</i>
indū'cō	indū'cere	indū'xī	induc'tus	<i>lead in</i>
mittō	mit'tere	mīsi	missus	<i>send</i>
petō	pe'tere	peti'vi or pe'tii	peti'tus	<i>seek</i>
ra'piō	ra'pere	ra'puī	raptus	<i>seize</i>
regō	re'gere	rēxi	rēctus	<i>rule</i>
resis'tō	resis'tere	re'stitī	—	<i>resist</i>
vincō	vin'cere	vīci	victus	<i>conquer</i>

## EXERCISES

328. 1. *Ēgerāmus, misisti, vicit.* 2. *Capiet, gessērunt, restiterat.* 3. *Rēxit, indūxerant, faciēmus.* 4. *Vocāverās, monuit, petiērunt.* 5. *Habēbit, rapuistis, ēdūxerātis.* 6. *Crēdideram, ēgistī, pārui.* 7. *Fēcī, dēfenderat, persuāsīmus.* 8. *Mittit, mittet, mīsī.* 9. *Dūxērunt, dimiserāmus, nocēbit.* 10. *Dixisti, discesserant, ēdūxistis.*

329. 1. We have conquered, he will favor, he had made. 2. You (*sing.*) have waged, they will extend, lead thou. 3. He has seized, they had departed, you (*plur.*) had taken. 4. He has said, we were defending, we shall reply.



**THE FORUM, THE CAPITOLINE, AND ADJACENT BUILDINGS (RESTORED)**

The left corner shows a small part of the Palatine and the palaces of the Cæsars. The right side is filled with the Fora of the emperors. The Roman Forum lies in the middle, and is bounded at the end by the Capitoline Hill, with the Arx, or Citadel, on its right summit and the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus on its left. The long building between is the Tabularium, or Record Building. Compare this picture with the one facing page 66



## LESSON XLVII

Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī — I came, I saw, I conquered<sup>1</sup>

### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE AND PERFECT INFINITIVE ACTIVE • PRINCIPAL PARTS (CONCLUDED)

**330. Future Perfect Indicative Active.** The tense sign of the future perfect indicative active is **-eri-**. This is added to the perfect stem. The personal endings are the same as in the future, and the inflection is like that of **fuero** (§ 308).

**331.** The future perfect indicative active of the four conjugations is inflected as follows :

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

**vocā'verō** (perf. stem **vocāv-**),  
*I shall have called*

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. vocā'verō  | vocāve'rimus |
| 2. vocā'veris | vocāve'ritis |
| 3. vocā'verit | vocā'verint  |

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

**monu'erō** (perf. stem **monu-**)  
*I shall have advised*

- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| monu'erō  | monue'rimus |
| monu'eris | monue'ritis |
| monu'erit | monu'erint  |

#### THIRD CONJUGATION

**rē'xerō** (perf. stem **rēx-**),  
*I shall have ruled*

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. rē'xerō  | rēxe'rimus |
| 2. rē'xeris | rēxe'ritis |
| 3. rē'xerit | rē'xerint  |

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION

**audī'verō** (perf. stem **audīv-**),  
*I shall have heard*

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| audī'verō  | audive'rimus |
| audī'veris | audive'ritis |
| audī'verit | audī'verint  |

**332. Perfect Infinitive Active.** The perfect infinitive active is also part of the perfect system and is easily learned in this connection. It is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.

<sup>1</sup> A famous dispatch of Cæsar at the conclusion of a short and brilliant campaign. He was a man of quick decision and tireless energy.

CONJ.	PERFECT STEM	PERFECT INFINITIVE
I	vocāv-	vocāvis'se, <i>to have called</i>
II	monu-	monuiss'se, <i>to have advised</i>
III	rēx-	rēxis'se, <i>to have ruled</i>
IV	audiv-	audiviss'se, <i>to have heard</i>
sum	fu-	fuis'se, <i>to have been</i>

**333. Principal Parts of Fourth Conjugation.** The following list comprises the verbs of the fourth conjugation thus far used. Learn the principal parts, review the meanings, and drill on the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative and the perfect infinitive.

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INF.	PERFECT	PAST PART.	
au'diō	audi're	audi'vi	audi'tus	<i>hear</i>
inve'niō	inveni're	invē'ni	inven'tus	<i>find</i>
mū'niō	mūni're	mūni'vi	mūni'tus	<i>fortify</i>
ve'niō	veni're	vēni	ventus	<i>come</i>

#### EXERCISES

**334.** Give the present and perfect infinitives of *dō*, *mūniō*, *faciō*, *crēdō*, *dīcō*, *mittō*, *teneō*, *videō*, *persuādeō*, *portō*, *absum*, *pācō*.

**335.** Inflect the following verbs in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect: *nārrō*, *timeō*, *veniō*, *agō*, *locō*, *mittō*, *pugnō*, *mūniō*, *sum*.

**336.** 1. You (*sing.*) have had, they have believed, they had sent. 2. He has seen, you (*sing.*) will have said, to have led. 3. You (*plur.*) have sent, they have obeyed, we had departed. 4. He has attacked, I had given, I shall have sent. 5. We shall have feared, he has extended, to have been. 6. You (*sing.*) had given, you (*plur.*) will have made, to have sent. 7. You (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) had given, he will have carried.

## LESSON XLVIII

Forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvābit — Perhaps some day you  
will take pleasure in remembering even this<sup>1</sup>

### REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

**337. Formation of Tenses of Indicative.** A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

PRESENT	First of the principal parts
PAST	Present stem + <b>-ba-m</b>
FUTURE	Present stem + $\begin{cases} \text{-bō, Conj. I and II} \\ \text{-a-m, Conj. III and IV} \end{cases}$
PERFECT	Third of the principal parts
PAST PERF.	Perfect stem + <b>-era-m</b>
FUT. PERF.	Perfect stem + <b>-erō</b>

**338. Synopsis of *vocō*.** The synopsis of the active voice of *vocō*, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **vocō, vocā're, vocā'vī, vocā'tus**

(pres. stem **vocā-**, perf. stem **vocāv-**)

INDIC- ACTIVE	{ PRESENT	vocō	INDIC- ACTIVE	{ PERFECT	vocā'vī
	{ PAST	vocā'bam		{ PAST PERF.	vocā'veram
	{ FUTURE	vocā'bō		{ FUT. PERF.	vocā'verō

PRES. IMPER. **vocā**

PRES. INFIN. **vocā're**

PERF. INFIN. **vocāvis'se**

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil, author of the *Ænē'id*, the greatest Latin epic. The sentiment is appropriate when a person is beset by difficulties and dangers. Of similar import are his words, "Revocāte animōs, maestumque timōrem mittite," *Recall your courage and banish gloomy fear.*

## EXERCISES

**339.** Following § 338 as a model, learn to write and to recite rapidly the principal parts and the synopsis of the following verbs in any person or number: **parō, dō, habeo, video, dicō, dūcō, capiō, mūniō, veniō**, and other verbs selected from the lists in §§ 161, 323, 327, 333.

**340.** Read again the story about Curius Dentatus and answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quō Samnitēs lēgātōs miserant?
2. Cūr Samnitēs lēgātōs ad eum miserant?
3. Quid lēgātī comparāverant et ad Dentātum portāverant?
4. Num Dentātus amplam villam habuit?
5. Nōne vīta Dentātī vērā et integrā fuerat?
6. Labōrāveratne Dentātus in agrō?
7. Ubi lēgātī Dentātum invēnērunt?
8. Cēpitne Dentātus praemia pulchra lēgātōrum?
9. Quid dixit?

~~~~~

**Sixth Review, Lessons XLI-XLVIII, §§ 762-767**



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

The Circus Maximus was among the most magnificent structures of the Roman world, and held nearly 400,000 people

## LESSON XLIX

Tempus fugit — Time flies

### WORD FORMATION

**341.** Something has been said in §§ 238 and 258 concerning Latin and English prefixes. Those mentioned before are here reviewed and three new ones are added.

**ā, ab, from,** as in **abdūcō, lead away**; English, *abduct*

**ad, to,** as in **addūcō, lead to**; English, *adduce*

**con- (com-, co-), together,** as in **condūcō, lead together**; English, *conduct*. Often with intensive force, as in **convincō, conquer completely**; English, *convince*

**dē, down from,** as in **dēdūcō, lead down**; English, *deduce*

**ē, ex, out from,** as in **ēdūcō, lead out**; English, *educē*

**in, in, into,** as in **indūcō, lead in**; English, *induce*

**prō, forth, forward,** as in **prōdūcō, lead forward**; English, *produce*

**re- (red-), back or again,** as in **redūcō, lead back**; English, *reduce*

**trāns (trā-), across,** as in **trādūcō, lead across**; English, *traduce*

All these prefixes, excepting **con-** and **re-**, are also used alone as prepositions.

**NOTE.** An English derivative from a Latin compound often loses the literal meaning of the Latin and is used only in a figurative sense. This is well illustrated by the derivatives given above. For example, *traduce* never means to *lead across*, but is used only in the figurative sense of to *make a parade of, dishonor, slander*. The Latin student has the advantage of being able to trace the figurative meaning back to its literal source.

**342. Derivation.** Write a list of English derivatives from the verbs **servō, locō, vocō, videō, mittō, dicō, spectō**, selecting the proper prefixes from § 341, and adding such English suffixes as you may know. Use the English dictionary.

**NOTE.** Students should keep derivation notebooks. See page 382.

## GALLĪ RŌMAM OPPUGNANT

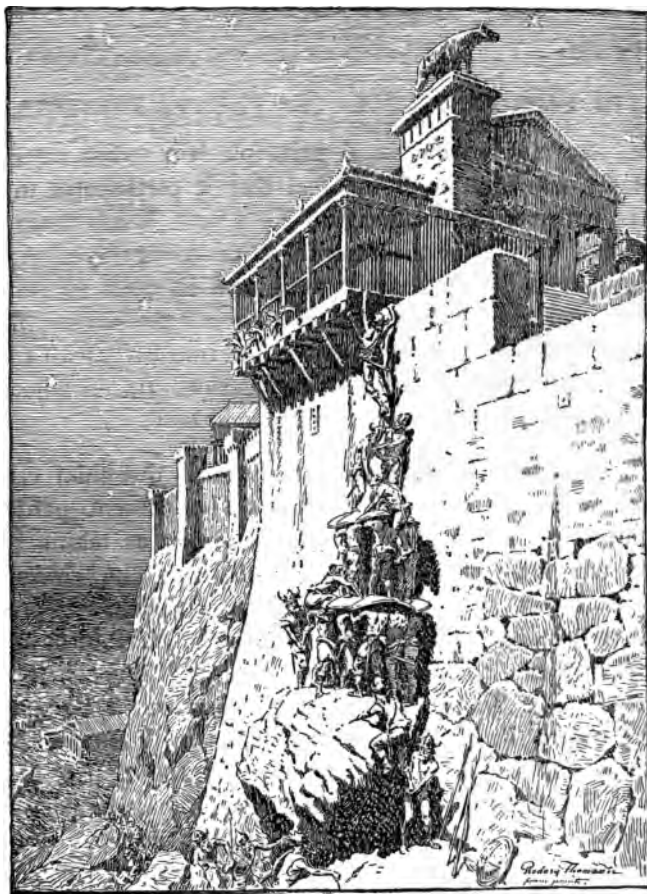
First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

**343.** Ōlim Galli Italiam vāstābant. Iam agricolās miserōs ex agris lātis ēgerant et equōs pulchrōs eōrum rapuerant. Iam multa oppida expugnāverant. Iam Rōmam petēbant. Tum Rōmāni magnopere perterrēbantur et in Capitōlium <sup>1</sup> fūgērunt. Mānlius, vir ēgregius bellī, Capitōlium firmō <sup>5</sup> praesidiō tenuit nec Gallōs timuit. Capitōlium erat in locō altō et magnīs mūrīs mūniēbātur. Diū populus nātūrā loci et praesidiō dēfendēbātur et Galli frūstrā (*in vain*) labōrābant. Victōria longē aberat. Sed dēnique barbarī novum cōnsilium cēpērunt.<sup>2</sup> Nocte<sup>3</sup> magnō silentiō<sup>4</sup> saxa<sup>5</sup> alta <sup>10</sup> ascendērunt. Nec audiēbantur nec prohibēbantur. Iam mūrōs Capitōli tenēbant. Sed erant in Capitōliō sacri ānserēs.<sup>6</sup> Eī ānserēs Gallōs audivērunt et Capitōlium servāvērunt. Nam clāmōre<sup>7</sup> suō Mānlium ex somnō<sup>8</sup> excitāvērunt.<sup>9</sup> Mānlius arma rapuit, suōs vocāvit, Gallōs dē saxīs <sup>15</sup> altīs iēcit.

1. The Capitulum was the citadel of Rome. It was located on the Capitoline Hill, which was steep and rocky. 2. cōnsilium capere, to form a plan. 3. By night. 4. silentium, silentī, N., silence. 5. saxum, -ī, N., rock. 6. Geese. These were sacred to Juno, whose temple was on the Capitoline. 7. clāmōre suō, by their cackling. 8. somnus, -ī, M., sleep. 9. excitō, -āre, arouse.



A ROMAN MARKET PLACE



THE SACRED GEESE SAVE THE CAPITOL

## LESSON L

Vincit quī sē vincit—He conquers who conquers himself<sup>1</sup>

### THE PAST PARTICIPLE • THE PASSIVE PERFECTS

**344. Participles Defined.** A participle is a verbal adjective, and takes its name from the fact that it participates in the uses of both verb and adjective. As a verb, it has tense and voice, and may be either transitive or intransitive. As an adjective, it is declined, and agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case. Thus, in "He, seeing the enemy, fled," *seeing* is a participle, present, active, and transitive, with *enemy* as its direct object. This is its verbal side. As an adjective, it agrees with *he* in gender, number, and case.

**345. Participles in English.** In English the chief classes of participles are *present* and *past*. The present participle ends in *-ing*. It usually describes an action as taking place at the same time with some other action: as, "*Reaching* for the boat I lost my balance." The past participle expresses completed action. In the passive it has the same form as the past tense: as, "The floors are *swept*," "The chairs are *mended*." The active past participle is formed by putting *having* before the passive past participle: as, "*Having swept* the floors, I rested," "*Having mended* the chairs, I sold them." Sometimes *having* is used also in passive participial expressions: as, "The floors *having been swept*, I rested." Participles with *having* are often called perfect participles.

**346. Past Participles in English and Latin.** English has both an active and a passive past participle: as, *having called*

<sup>1</sup> From Publilius Syrus. Born a slave and educated by his master, he was granted his freedom and became a noted writer.

(active), (*having been*) *called* (passive). Latin has only a passive past participle, and this participle is of special importance because, as we have seen (§ 299), it is the fourth and last of the principal parts.

**347. Participial Stem.** The participial stem is found, as will be recalled, by dropping **-us** from the past participle. From this stem are formed the future active infinitive and all passive perfects.

**348. Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect Indicative Passive.** In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle: as, *I have been called, I had been called, I shall have been called.*

Very similarly in Latin the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect passive use the present, past, and future of **sum** as an auxiliary verb with the past participle: as,

Perfect passive, **vocā'tus sum**, *I have been called* or *was called*

Past perfect passive, **vocā'tus eram**, *I had been called*

Future perfect passive, **vocā'tus erō**, *I shall have been called*

**349.** The past participle is declined like **bonus, bona, bonum**. When making part of a verb form, it agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb, as shown below:

#### EXAMPLES IN THE SINGULAR

**Vir vocātus est**, *the man was called* or *has been called*

**Puella vocāta est**, *the girl was called* or *has been called*

**Praesidium vocātum est**, *the garrison was called* or *has been called*

#### EXAMPLES IN THE PLURAL

**Viri vocāti sunt**, *the men were called* or *have been called*

**Puellae vocatae sunt**, *the girls were called* or *have been called*

**Praesidia vocāta sunt**, *the garrisons were called* or *have been called*

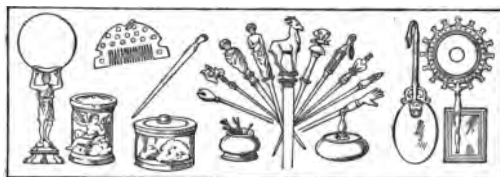
**350.** In all the conjugations the *perfect*, *past perfect*, and *future perfect* indicative passive are formed and inflected in the same way. Study these inflections, §§ 832-835.

## EXERCISES

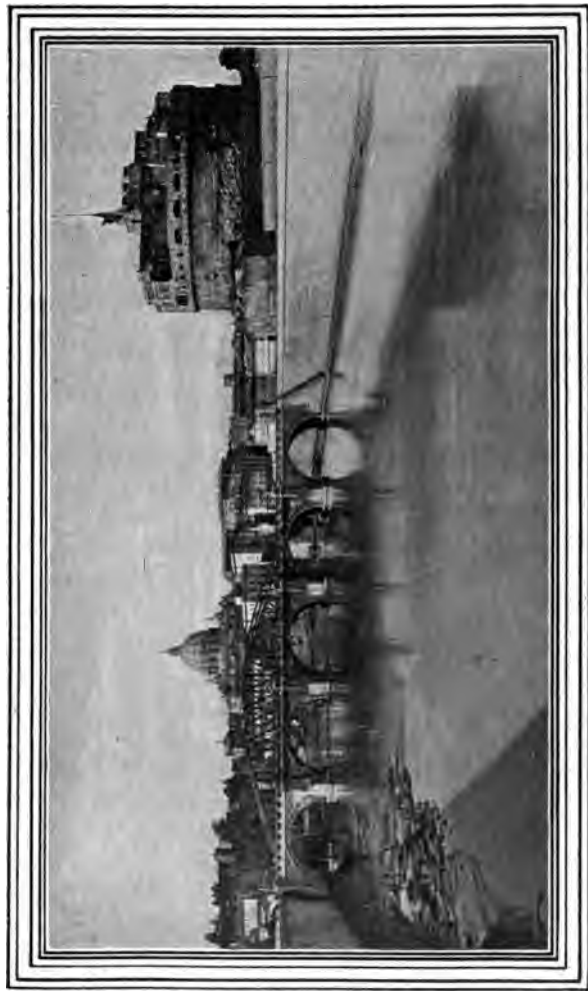
**351.** Inflect the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of *vocō*, *moneō*, *regō*, and *audiō*.

352. 1. Agricolae frumentum in oppidum sacrum portāvērunt. 2. Frumentum ab agricolis in oppidum sacrum portātum est. 3. Rēgina Lesbiae pecūniam dederat. 4. Pecūnia ā rēginā Lesbiae data erat. 5. Mānlius dē mūrō sacrō Gallōs iēcerit. 6. Galli ā Mānliō dē mūrō sacrō iacti erunt. 7. Dentātus lēgātōs dimiserat. Lēgātī ā Dentātō dimissī erant. 8. Puellae exemplum ēgregium vērae amicitiae viderant. 9. Exemplum ēgregium vērae amicitiae ā puellis vīsum erat. 10. Animī timidi eōrum factis vestrīs cōfirmāti sunt. 11. Gallī ab agris nostrīs armīs Rōmānis prohibiti erant.

**353.** 1. Greece had been freed from danger. 2. Fresh troops had been put before the sacred town by the Romans. 3. The girls had been greatly terrified and had fled. 4. The fields had been laid waste, but, because of the nature of the place, the camp had not been taken by storm. 5. Did the Gauls climb your walls? Not at all, but they laid waste the fields.



## ROMAN HAIRPINS, POWDER BOXES, AND OTHER TOILET ARTICLES



THE TIBER, CASTLE OF ST. ANGELO, AND ST. PETER'S

Navigation on the Tiber, now of little account, was of great importance to ancient Rome. There are ruins of great docks in the city and of still greater ones at Ostia, at the river's mouth, sixteen miles downstream. The Castle of St. Angelo is the tomb of the Emperor Hadrian. Concerning St. Peter's, compare the note and picture facing page 12



## LESSON LI

Dā dextram miserō—Lend a hand<sup>1</sup>

### THE PERFECT INFINITIVE PASSIVE AND THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE · PREPOSITIONS

**354.** As the perfect infinitive passive and the future infinitive active are also formed from the participial stem, they are most easily learned at this point.

**355. Perfect Infinitive Passive.** The perfect infinitive passive is formed by adding *esse* to the past participle: as, *vocātus esse*, *to have been called*. Similarly in the other conjugations we have *monitus esse*, *to have been advised*; *rēctus esse*, *to have been ruled*; *auditus esse*, *to have been heard*.

**356. Future Infinitive Active.** The future infinitive active of *vocō* is *vocātū'rus esse*, *to be about to call*. This is formed by adding *-ūrus esse* to the participial stem. Similarly in the other conjugations we have *monitū'rus esse*, *to be about to advise*; *rēctū'rus esse*, *to be about to rule*; *audītū'rus esse*, *to be about to hear*.

**357.** We have now completed the infinitive, active and passive. The synopsis of the infinitives of *vocō* is as follows:

| ACTIVE |                                                     | PASSIVE                                           |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| PRES.  | <i>vocā're</i> , <i>to call</i>                     | <i>vocā'ri</i> , <i>to be called</i>              |
| PERF.  | <i>vocāvis'se</i> , <i>to have called</i>           | <i>vocā'tus esse</i> , <i>to have been called</i> |
| FUT.   | <i>vocātū'rus esse</i> , <i>to be about to call</i> | (Rare and hence omitted)                          |

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil. Literally, *Give your right (hand) to an unfortunate (man)*.

**a.** The infinitives of the other conjugations are similarly formed; but do not forget the peculiar formation of the present infinitive passive in the third conjugation (§ 285).

**358. Prepositions.** We learned in § 77 that only the accusative and ablative are used with prepositions. Those prepositions which we have had before are here summarized and three more added.

**a.** Prepositions expressing ablative relations (*from, with, in, etc.*) govern the ablative case. Learn the following list:

|                                                 |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> , <i>from, by</i>         | <b>ē</b> or <b>ex</b> , <i>out from, out of</i> |
| <b>cum</b> , <i>with</i>                        | <b>in</b> , <i>in or on</i>                     |
| <b>dē</b> , <i>down from, concerning, about</i> | <b>prō</b> , <i>in behalf of, for</i>           |
| <b>sine</b> , <i>without</i>                    |                                                 |

**b.** Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the accusative. Among these are

|                                          |                              |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ad</b> , <i>to, towards</i>           | <b>per</b> , <i>through</i>  |
| <b>ante</b> , <i>before, in front of</i> | <b>post</b> , <i>after</i>   |
| <b>in</b> , <i>into, to, against</i>     | <b>trāns</b> , <i>across</i> |

There are many others; but learn the list above of prepositions taking the ablative, and use the accusative after all others.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 368

**359.** 1. Imperium Rōmānum Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum habitābant nōn grātum erat. 2. Itaque per multōs annōs Germānī Rōmānōs ab rēgnīs suis prohibuērunt. 3. Firmis et<sup>1</sup> vērīs animīs prō patriā fortiter pugnāvērunt. 4. Rēgna Germānōrum longē trāns Rhēnum patēbant. 5. Germānī cōpiās integrās ex silvīs oppidisque ēvocābant. 6. Numerus virōrum erat magnus et animi eōrum bellō studēbant. 7. Sed fortūna belli erat inīqua Germānis ac Rōmānis victōriam dedit. 8. Antēā

*Germānī fuerant liberī, sed post victōriam Rōmānam multi in magnās silvās fūgerunt.* 9. *Multi rapti sunt atque in Italiam missi sunt.* 10. *Quam misera erat fortūna eōrum captivōrum!*

1. What are the three Latin words for *and*?

**360.** 1. The Roman power did not formerly extend across the Rhine. 2. When you are in the realm of the Germans, you will see great forests. 3. The nature of the place was certainly unfavorable for the battle. 4. They will fight bravely and many will give their lives<sup>1</sup> for their country.<sup>2</sup> 5. After the unfavorable battle grain was provided and many fresh troops were called out.

1. Singular. 2. Not the dative.

**361.** Give the infinitives, active and passive, of the following verbs : *pācō, habēō, vidēō, agō, gerō, capiō, iaciō, audiō, mūniō.*

## LESSON LII

*Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori* — Sweet and fitting it is to die for one's country<sup>1</sup>

### THE CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

**362.** *Possum, I am able, I can*, is a compound of the adjective *potis, able*, and *sum, I am*. It is inflected in the indicative and infinitive as follows :

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *possum, posse, potui*, —

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT

|                                     |                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>possum, I am able, I can</i>     | <i>pos'sumus, we are able, we can</i>   |
| <i>potes, you are able, you can</i> | <i>potes'tis, you are able, you can</i> |
| <i>potest, he is able, he can</i>   | <i>possunt, they are able, they can</i> |

<sup>1</sup> From one of the Odes of Horace, Rome's greatest lyric poet.

## PAST

**po'teram**, *I was able, I could*; **poterā'mus**, *we were able, we could*; etc.

## FUTURE

**po'terō**, *I shall be able*; etc. **pote'rimus**, *we shall be able*; etc.

## PERFECT

**po'tui**, *I have been able, I could*; etc. **potu'imus**, *we have been able, we could*; etc.

## PAST PERFECT

**potu'eram**, *I had been able*; etc. **potuerā'mus**, *we had been able*; etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

**potu'erō**, *I shall have been able*; etc. **potue'rimus**, *we shall have been able*; etc.

## INFINITIVE MOOD

## PRESENT

**posse**, *to be able*

## PERFECT

**potuis'se**, *to have been able*

**a.** This verb has no imperative and no future infinitive. The perfect infinitive, as in all verbs, is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem (§ 332).

## EXERCISES

## DĒ MŪCIŌ SCAEVOLĀ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

**363.** Ōlim Porsenna, quī rēgnum Etrūscōrum<sup>1</sup> tum obtinēbat, cum Rōmānis dē imperiō Italiae pugnāvit et Rōmam māgnis cōpiis oppugnāvit. Iam Rōmāni inopiā frūmenti labōrābant<sup>2</sup> et magnopere perterrēbantur. Erat in numerō Rōmānōrum ēgregius iuvenis<sup>3</sup> Mūcius Scaevola.<sup>4</sup> Is 5 timidōs animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit atque dixit: "In castra

Etruscōrum prōcēdam et Porsennam interficiam. Itaque patriam periculō liberābō." Fortiter negōtium suscēpit, sed visus captusque est. Tum ante Porsennam prōductus est.

1. **Etrūsci**, -ōrum, M., *the Etruscans*, neighbors of the Romans to the north and their most powerful enemies in the early years of the city. 2. Used here in the sense of *suffer*. 3. *Youth*. 4. The English pronunciation is *Sev'o-la*.

364. 1. They had held the sovereignty across the Rhine for (*per*) many years. 2. Because of the scarcity of grain the men had not advanced. 3. That matter had been undertaken by Mucius. 4. The captives had been led before your camp. 5. After the battle a large supply of money was found there.

## LESSON LIII

Possunt quia posse videntur—They can because they think they can<sup>1</sup>

### THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

365. **Nature of the Infinitive.** The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English. Being a *verbal noun* it is used sometimes as a verb and sometimes as a noun. As a verb, it has tense and voice, may govern a case, and may be modified by an adverb. As a noun, it may have the construction of a noun. For example, in *To cross the marsh quickly was difficult*, the infinitive *to cross* is a noun, for it is the subject of *was*; but it is also a verb, for it takes an object (*marsh*) and is modified by an adverb (*quickly*).

366. **Infinitive Clause as Object.** In English, verbs of *commanding*, *wishing*, *forbidding*, and the like may be followed by a clause consisting of a noun or pronoun in the objective

<sup>1</sup> From Vergil. Literally, *They are able because they seem (think themselves) to be able*.

case and an infinitive: as, *the slave commanded the men to flee*. The same construction is used in Latin.

*Servus virōs fugere iussit, the slave commanded the men to flee*

*Eōs fābulam audire cupit, he wishes them to hear the story*

*Eum dicere vetat, he forbids him to speak*

**367. Rule for the Infinitive Object Clause.** *The verbs iubeō, command; cupiō, wish; vetō, forbid, and the like are often followed by an infinitive clause as object.*

**368. Rule for Subject of Infinitive.** *The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.*

**369. Complementary Infinitive.** In English, and also in Latin, an infinitive without a subject may be added to many verbs as an adverbial modifier to complete their meaning. Such verbs are called *verbs of incomplete predication*, and the added infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive*. Among such verbs are the following:

*incipiō, I begin*

*possum, I am able, I can*

*properō, I hasten*

*studeō, I am eager*

*Fugere incipiunt, they begin to flee*

*Oppidum capere properat, he hastens to take the town*

*Nōn pugnāre potes, you are not able to fight or you can't fight*

*Eum invenire studeō, I am eager to find him*

**370. Infinitive as Noun.** In English, and also in Latin, the infinitive is often a pure noun, being used as the subject of a sentence or as a predicate noun: as,

*Vidēre est crēdere, seeing (to see) is believing (to believe)*

*Vincere est grātum, to conquer is pleasing*

**a.** An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular, as is shown in the sentence above by *grātum*, a neuter adjective in agreement with *vincere*, the subject.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

**371.** 1. Vincere Rōmānōs erat grātum inimicis finitimis. 2. Mūcius Porsennam interficere studēbat. 3. Rōmānī eum suscipere id negōtium cupivērunt. 4. Populus eum in castra inimica prōcēdere nōn vetuit. 5. Rōmānī imperium Italiae obtinēre incēpērunt. 6. Inopiā frūmenti Rōmānī diū resistere nōn poterant. 7. Porsenna Mūcium prōdūci iussit. 8. Porsennam interficere erat officium pūblicum vērī Rōmānī.

**372.** 1. To possess power was pleasing to Dentatus. 2. The ambassadors were eager to give him<sup>1</sup> money. 3. But they could not persuade him.<sup>2</sup> 4. They began to speak, but Dentatus commanded them to depart. 5. He wished them to see an example of a true Roman. 6. Therefore he did not desire them to give him the money. 7. Dentatus forbade them to seek his friendship with money.<sup>3</sup>

1. Indirect object. 2. What case? See § 224. 3. Ablative of means.



THE ROMAN FORUM, A.D. 400

Note the Capitoline Hill with its two summits in the background

## LESSON LIV

Oleum et operam perdidī—I have wasted time and labor<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

**373.** One of the most important of the Latin prefixes is **in-**. We have already learned something of its use with verbs. It is then the same as the preposition **in**, and has the same meanings of *in, on, into, against*, and has the same force in related English words: as, Latin **indūcō**, *lead into*; English *induce*, meaning to lead one into some course of action.

**374.** But there is another prefix **in-**, identical in form but of a different origin, which may be combined with an adjective or an adverb. This **in-** negatives the word to which it is attached: thus, **firmus**, *firm* or *strong*, but **infirmus**, *infirm* or *weak*. The same prefix is similarly used in English: as, *insecure, in-sincere, in-valid*, etc. In English the prefix often changes its form to *un-*, as in *unsafe, unmoved*, etc. This **in-** is never used as a Latin preposition, but only as a prefix.

**375.** Latin prefixes before a consonant may change their final consonant to a similar letter or one more easily pronounced. This is called assimilation. Thus, **in- + mātūrus = immātūrus**, *immature*; **in- + mortālis = immortālis**, *immortal*; **con- + rēctiō = corrēctiō**, *correction*. Compare also such English words as *impossible* (**in- + possum**), *irresponsible* (**in- + respondeō**), *illiberal* (**in- + liberālis**), etc.

**376.** Another important point is that Latin simple verbs having a short **a** in the first syllable followed by a single consonant (as in **capiō**) generally change **a** to **i** in the present, and

<sup>1</sup> From Plautus. Literally, *I have wasted oil* (i. e. lamp oil) *and labor*.



MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA

to *e* in the past participle, when the simple verb is compounded with a prefix. So *in-* + *capiō* becomes *incipiō* in the present and *inceptus* in the past participle. The same change in spelling follows in English; from *capiō* we have *capture*, but *incipiō* gives us *incipient*, and *inceptus*, *inception*. So *recipiō* gives us *recipient*, *recipe*, and *receptus*, *reception*, *receptive*.

### EXERCISES

**377. Derivation.** Name ten English words in the composition of which the prefix *in-* is used, and state the force of the prefix.

**378.** Give the synopsis, active and passive, of *iaciō*, *cupiō*, *iubeō*, *vāstō*.

### DĒ MŪCIŌ SCAEVOLĀ (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 369

**379.** Porsenna in mediis castris sedēbat et magnopere perterrēbātur, nam suum periculum ex animō agere nōn poterat. Spectāvit Mūcium et dixit: "Vitā meam petere, Rōmāne, parābās. Meō iūdiō sine auxiliō sociōrum id negōtium nōn suscēpisti. Nārrā malum cōsiliū ac cōservā vitā tuā. 5 Sī nōn ita faciēs, igni<sup>1</sup> cremāberis." <sup>2</sup> Mūcius respondit: "Nōn vitā sed patriā cōservāre est officium Rōmānum. Poenās tuās minimē timeō. Vitā Rōmānam rapere potes, sed animō<sup>3</sup> Rōmānō nocēre nōn potes." Tum statim dextrā<sup>4</sup> mediō igni,<sup>5</sup> quī nōn longē aberat, iniēcit,<sup>6</sup> nec dolore<sup>7</sup> 10 superābātur. Post id factum ēgregium Porsenna vetuit eum interfici et iussit eum ad Rōmānōs remitti. Postea Mūcius appellātus est Scaevola.<sup>8</sup>

1. *By fire.* 2. *cremō, -āre, burn, consume.* 3. *Why dative? See § 224.*  
4. *dextra, -ae, F., right hand.* 5. *mediō igni, into the midst of a fire.*  
6. *iniēcit, he thrust.* 7. *By the pain.* 8. *Scaevola, left-handed.*

## LESSON LV

In Deō spērāmus — In God we trust<sup>1</sup>

### SENTENCES AND CLAUSES • RELATIVE PRONOUNS

**380. Sentences and Clauses.** Sentences are *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

**381.** A *simple* sentence makes but one statement, and has but one subject and one predicate : as,

*Columbus discovered America*

**382.** A *compound* sentence contains two or more independent statements : as,

*Columbus discovered America | and | he thereby won immortal fame*

**383.** A *complex* sentence contains one independent statement and one or more dependent statements : as,

*When Columbus discovered America | he won immortal fame*

**384.** The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called *clauses*. An independent statement is called a *main clause* ; a dependent statement, a *subordinate clause*.

**385.** Subordinate clauses may be used as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. Hence we have *noun clauses*, *adjective clauses*, and *adverb clauses*.

**386. Relative Pronouns.** Examine the following sentences :

1. *This is the wounded soldier.*
2. *This is the soldier who has been wounded.*
3. *This is the soldier, and the soldier has been wounded.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Brown University.

Number 1 is a simple sentence. Number 2 is complex, the adjective *wounded* in number 1 being represented in number 2 by the subordinate adjective clause *who has been wounded*. The word *who* is a pronoun, taking the place of *soldier*, as shown by number 3, and it also connects the subordinate adjective clause *who has been wounded* with the noun *soldier*. A pronoun that connects an adjective clause with a noun or pronoun is called a *relative pronoun*, and the noun or pronoun is called its *antecedent*. In English the relative pronouns are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, *that*.

**387. Declension of Relative Pronoun *quī*.** The relative pronoun in Latin is *quī*, *quae*, *quod*. It is declined as follows :

|      | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        | MASC.         | FEM.          | NEUT.         |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| NOM. | <i>quī</i>   | <i>quae</i>  | <i>quod</i>  | <i>quī</i>    | <i>quae</i>   | <i>quae</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>cuius</i> | <i>quōrum</i> | <i>quārum</i> | <i>quōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>cui</i>   | <i>cui</i>   | <i>cui</i>   | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>quem</i>  | <i>quam</i>  | <i>quod</i>  | <i>quōs</i>   | <i>quās</i>   | <i>quae</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>quō</i>   | <i>quā</i>   | <i>quō</i>   | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> | <i>quibus</i> |

*a.* Review the declension of *is*, § 203, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *quī*, *quae*, and *quibus* are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive *cuius* is pronounced *cōō'yōōs*, and the dative *cui* is pronounced *kwee*.

**388. Translation.** The relative *quī* is translated as follows :

|      | MASC. AND FEM.          | NEUT.                                  |
|------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>who, that</i>        | <i>which, what, that</i>               |
| GEN. | <i>of whom, whose</i>   | <i>of which, of what, whose</i>        |
| DAT. | <i>to or for whom</i>   | <i>to or for which, to or for what</i> |
| ACC. | <i>whom, that</i>       | <i>which, what, that</i>               |
| ABL. | <i>from, etc., whom</i> | <i>from, etc., which or what</i>       |

**389. Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** Note the following sentences :

**Puer quem vidēs est Mārcus**, *the boy whom you see is Mark*

**Puella quam vidēs est Lesbia**, *the girl whom you see is Lesbia*

The relatives **quem** and **quam** agree with their antecedents **puer** and **puella** in gender and number, but not in case. The antecedents are nominatives, subjects of **est**, and the relatives are accusatives, objects of **vidēs**. The rule for the agreement of the relative is, therefore, as follows :

**390. Rule for Agreement of Relative Pronoun.** *The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

**391. 1.** Mūcius, quī ā Porsennā in iūdicium vocātus est, animum vērum habēbat. **2.** Rōma, quam Porsenna expugnāre cupiēbat, inopiā frūmenti labōrābat. **3.** Vir cuius vita prō patriā datur ēgregiam fāmam obtinēbit. **4.** Porsenna, quem Mūcius interficere studēbat, magnopere perterritus est. **5.** Factum quō Mūcius vitam suam cōservāre potuit ā multis poētis nārrātum est. **6.** Quid dē Mūciō putās? Vir clārus meō iūdicio erat Mūcius. **7.** Cūr appellātus est Scaevola?

**392. 1.** Afterwards the camp was moved from that unfavorable place. **2.** Only a few hurled their spears, the rest immediately fled. **3.** The baggage which was captured was placed in our camp. **4.** Will he begin to send back the grain which they have found? I don't think so. **5.** He will command the troops which he has summoned to move the baggage across the Rhine.

## LESSON LVI

Iacta est ālea — The die is cast<sup>1</sup>

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES • THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

**393. Interrogatives in English.** Interrogative pronouns and adjectives are used in asking questions. In English the interrogative pronouns are *who?* *which?* and *what?* *Which* and *what* are used also as interrogative adjectives.

*Who is your friend?* (*Who*, interrogative pronoun)

*What friends have you?* (*What*, interrogative adjective)

**394. Interrogatives in Latin.** The Latin interrogative pronoun is *quis* (*who?*), *quid* (*what?*). It is declined in the singular as follows:

|      | MASC. AND FEM.                | NEUT.                                  |
|------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>quis, who?</i>             | <i>quid, what? which?</i>              |
| GEN. | <i>cuius, whose?</i>          | <i>cuius, whose?</i>                   |
| DAT. | <i>cui, to or for whom?</i>   | <i>cui, to or for which or what?</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>quem, whom?</i>            | <i>quid, what? which?</i>              |
| ABL. | <i>quō, from, etc., whom?</i> | <i>quō, from, etc., which or what?</i> |

The plural forms are the same as those of the relative (§ 387).

*Quis est amicus tuus, who is your friend?*

*Qui sunt amici tui, who are your friends?*

**395.** The Latin interrogative adjective is *qui* (or *quis*), *quae*, *quod*. It is declined like the relative (§ 387).

*Quōs librōs habēs, what books have you?*

<sup>1</sup> Words of Julius Cæsar when he crossed the river Rubicon, the boundary of his province, with an armed force. This act amounted to a declaration of war against the Roman government.

**396. Ablative Absolute.** In English a noun with a participle attached is often used to make a phrase grammatically independent of the main clause: as,

*The town having been captured* } *the lieutenant fled*  
*With the town captured*

The independent phrase is called the absolute construction. The noun is in the nominative case, and is called the *nominative absolute*.

**397.** In Latin a noun with attached participle in the absolute construction is put in the ablative, and the construction is called the *ablative absolute*: as,

**Oppidō captō, lēgātus fūgit**

**a.** The ablative absolute denotes the circumstances accompanying the action of the main verb, a fundamental ablative relation often expressed in English by the preposition *with*. Note the second form in § 396: *With the town captured, the lieutenant fled*.

**398.** There is no present participle "being" in Latin. In consequence we often have two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, in the ablative absolute with no participle: as,

**fiiliā rēginā, his daughter being queen**  
**pueris tardis, the boys being slow**

**399. Translation of Ablative Absolute.** The absolute construction, rather rare in English, is very common in Latin, and is often best translated by a clause introduced by *when, after, since, though*, etc. Use the form of clause that will best express the thought. Note the following translations of **oppidō captō, lēgātus fūgit**:

*when, since, after, although, etc.* { *the town was captured, the*  
*lieutenant fled*

**400. Rule for Ablative Absolute.** *The ablative of a noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be used in the absolute construction to denote attendant circumstances.*

### EXERCISES

**401.** 1. Castris mōtis, crēbra tēla nostris<sup>1</sup> nocēre nōn potuērunt. 2. Eō locō occupātō, reliquae cōpiae periculō liberātae sunt. 3. Agris vāstātis et equis raptis, inopiā frūmentī mox labōrābimus. 4. Sociis nostris interfectis, ā quibus auxilium petēmus? 5. Eō proeliō factō, paucī prōcēdere studēbant. 6. Quōrum<sup>2</sup> erat imperium Italiae? Imperium Italiae erat Rōmānōrum. 7. Quī Germānōs cōpiās integrās dūcere trāns Rhēnum vetuērunt? Rōmānī. 8. Quibus bona rēgina pecūniam dari iussit? Miseris captivis. 9. Lēgātō in iūdicium vocātō, populus bellum gerī nōn cupīvit.

1. Why dative? See § 224. 2. Predicate genitive of possession, § 150.

**402.** 1. After the battle was fought,<sup>1</sup> to what famous place did they wish the lieutenant to move the camp? 2. How far away was the camp which you saw? 3. Did the battle rage<sup>2</sup> a long time? I think so. 4. Whose money did you find? Galba's. 5. After the town had been stormed, did not the people suffer<sup>3</sup> the penalty for<sup>4</sup> (their) wicked deeds? 6. Who can tell the story of Dentatus? I can.

1. Not **pugnō**. 2. Literally, *was it fought*, the word *battle* not being expressed. See § 259, note 3. 3. **dō**, **-are**. 4. **prō** with the ablative.





#### THE ARCH OF TITUS AND THE COLOSSEUM

The Arch of Titus was erected in the first century of our era to commemorate the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus. To the same period belongs the Colosseum, the most impressive ruin in Rome, covering about five acres. In it gladiatorial combats were held for nearly five hundred years. There were seats for almost 100,000 spectators and several hundred gladiators or wild beasts could fight in the arena at the same time



## SECOND HALF YEAR

Classes should have reached at least this point at the beginning of the second half year. This is suggested not as a maximum, however, but as a minimum. Go as far beyond it as you can consistently with good work, so as to have more time for the reading of the stories at the end of the book before the close of the year.

### LESSON LVII

Salūs populi suprēma lēx estō — The safety of the people shall be the supreme law<sup>1</sup>

#### THE THIRD DECLENSION • CONSONANT STEMS

**403.** Nouns that end in **-is** in the genitive singular are of the Third Declension. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

#### CLASSES OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

**404.** Nouns of the third declension are divided into two classes, known as *consonant stems* and *i-stems*.

*a.* The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are added. When the stem ends in a consonant, the stem is the same as the base. In vowel stems the stem is formed by adding the stem vowel to the base: thus, the base of **hostis**, *enemy*, is **host-**, and the stem is **host + i = hosti-**. Consonant stems and *i-stems* differ somewhat in declension, so the distinction is an important one.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Missouri, quoted from a famous code of Roman laws.

## 144 THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS

### CONSONANT STEMS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES

**405.** Masculines and feminines are declined alike. The nominative is often the same as the base or nearly so. Often it is formed by adding *-s* to the base. In that case the added *-s* causes various changes in spelling. Always learn the genitive along with the nominative, for the genitive gives the key to all the other forms.

|      | <b>cōsul, M., <i>consul</i></b><br>(base cōsul-) | <b>legiō, F., <i>legion</i></b><br>(base legiōn-) | <b>pater, M., <i>father</i></b><br>(base patr-) | TERMINA-<br>TIONS |
|------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| NOM. | cōn'sul                                          | le'giō                                            | pa'ter                                          | —                 |
| GEN. | cōn'sulis                                        | legiō'nīs                                         | pa'tris                                         | -is               |
| DAT. | cōn'sulī                                         | legiō'nī                                          | pa'trī                                          | -ī                |
| ACC. | cōn'sulem                                        | legiō'nem                                         | pa'trem                                         | -em               |
| ABL. | cōn'sule                                         | legiō'ne                                          | pa'tre                                          | -e                |
|      |                                                  |                                                   |                                                 |                   |
| NOM. | cōn'sulēs                                        | legiō'nēs                                         | pa'trēs                                         | -ēs               |
| GEN. | cōn'sulum                                        | legiō'num                                         | pa'trum                                         | -um               |
| DAT. | cōnsu'libus                                      | legiō'nibus                                       | pa'tribus                                       | -ibus             |
| ACC. | cōn'sulēs                                        | legiō'nēs                                         | pa'trēs                                         | -ēs               |
| ABL. | cōnsu'libus                                      | legiō'nibus                                       | pa'tribus                                       | -ibus             |

|      | <b>princeps, M., <i>chief</i></b><br>(base princip- <sup>1</sup> ) | <b>miles, M., <i>soldier</i></b><br>(base milit- <sup>1</sup> ) | <b>rēx, M., <i>king</i></b><br>(base rēg-) |     |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| NOM. | prin'ceps                                                          | miles                                                           | rēx                                        | -s  |
| GEN. | prin'cipis                                                         | mī'litis                                                        | rēgis                                      | -is |
| DAT. | prin'cipī                                                          | mī'litī                                                         | rēgī                                       | -ī  |
| ACC. | prin'cipem                                                         | mī'litem                                                        | rēgem                                      | -em |
| ABL. | prin'cipe                                                          | mī'lite                                                         | rēge                                       | -e  |

<sup>1</sup> An *i* in the last syllable of the base is often changed in the nominative to *e*: as, *princeps*, base *princip-*; *miles*, base *milit-*.

### THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS 145

|      |              |          |          |       |
|------|--------------|----------|----------|-------|
| NOM. | prin'cipēs   | mī'litēs | rēgēs    | -ēs   |
| GEN. | prin'cipum   | mī'litum | rēgum    | -um   |
| DAT. | prin'cipibus | mī'libus | rē'gibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | prin'cipēs   | mī'litēs | rēgēs    | -ēs   |
| ABL. | prin'cipibus | mī'libus | rē'gibus | -ibus |

a. The nominative case termination **s** combines with a final **c** or **g** of the base and makes **x**: thus, **rēg** + **s** gives **rēx**, *king*; and **duc** + **s** gives **dux**, *leader*. A final **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**: thus, **lapid** + **s** gives **lapis**, *stone*; **mīlet** + **s** gives **mīles**, *soldier*.

b. The base or stem is found by dropping **-is** in the genitive singular.

c. Review § 108 and apply the rules to this declension.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

406. 1. Si militēs rēgis oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, ab legiōnibus Rōmānis vincentur. 2. Cum tēla nostra iacere incipiēmus, pauci resistent; reliquī statim fugient. 3. Militēs nostri ā patre cōsulis dūcēbantur. 4. Multis interfectis, rēx principēs rēgnī lēgātōs<sup>1</sup> mīsīt et pācem petiit. 5. Lēgātis auditis, pāx rēgi data est. 6. Pater cōsulis iussit rēgem in suum rēgnum discēdere nec iniūriam agrīs nostris facere. 7. Rēx, qui legiōnēs nostrās magnopere timuit, imperiō<sup>2</sup> Rōmānō pāruiit et statim discessit. 8. Numquam<sup>3</sup> postea bellum cum legiōnibus nostris gerere poterit.

1. In apposition with **principēs**. 2. Why dative? See § 224.

X 407. 1. The consul commanded the soldiers to move the camp quickly from that unfavorable place. 2. The legions could not fight bravely there. 3. The king, who was eager to make peace, sent ambassadors. 4. After peace had been made,<sup>1</sup> the chiefs forbade the king's father to call out the legions.

1. Ablative absolute.

## LESSON LVIII

**SI** quaeris pēnīnsulam amoenam, circumspice — If you are seeking a charming peninsula, look about you<sup>1</sup>

### THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (CONTINUED)

**408. Neuter Consonant Stems.** There are many neuter consonant stems. The nominative singular generally differs from the base. Thus, bases in *-in-* have final *-en* in the nominative, and bases in *-er-* or *-or-* generally have *-us*.

|      | <b>flūmen, N., river</b><br>(base flūmin-) | <b>tempus, N., time</b><br>(base tempor-) | <b>caput, N., head</b><br>(base capit-) | TERMINATIONS |
|------|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------|
| NOM. | flū'men                                    | tem'pus                                   | ca'put                                  | —            |
| GEN. | flū'minis                                  | tem'poris                                 | ca'pitis                                | -is          |
| DAT. | flū'mini                                   | tem'pori                                  | ca'piti                                 | -i           |
| ACC. | flū'men                                    | tem'pus                                   | ca'put                                  | —            |
| ABL. | flū'mine                                   | tem'pore                                  | ca'pite                                 | -e           |
| NOM. | flū'mina                                   | tem'pora                                  | ca'pita                                 | -a           |
| GEN. | flū'minum                                  | tem'porum                                 | ca'pitum                                | -um          |
| DAT. | flūmi'nibus                                | tempo'ribus                               | capi'tibus                              | -ibus        |
| ACC. | flū'mina                                   | tem'pora                                  | ca'pita                                 | -a           |
| ABL. | flūmi'nibus                                | tempo'ribus                               | capi'tibus                              | -ibus        |

**a.** These neuter nouns, like all other neuters, have the nominative and accusative alike, which in the plural end in *-a* (§ 108. *a*).

**b.** Some neuters of this class have passed into English without change: as, *acumen*, *omen*, *specimen*. A few have kept the Latin form also in the plural: as, *genus*, plural *genera*; *stamen*, plural *stamens* and *stamina*, with a difference in meaning. Note, too, the plurals *viscera* and *capita*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Michigan.

## MĀRCUS ET QUĪNTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 370

**409. QUĪNTUS.** Quid audivisti, Mārce, dē magnō bellō quod cōsul noster in Germāniā nunc gerit? Diū patria in periculis mediis fuit et timidi animi perterreri incipiunt.

**MĀRCUS.** Bona fāma vēnit. Cōsul magnās cōpiās Germānōrum crēbris proeliis superāvit atque eōs trāns flūmen Rhēnum ēgit. Rēx Germānōrum, vir barbarus et inimicus, in silvās fūgit. Et<sup>1</sup> māter et soror eius, quae in castris Germānis erant, captae sunt.

**Q.** Certē ea fāma, si vērā est, grāta populō Rōmānō erit. Quō modo (*how*) dē victōriā audivisti?

**M.** Et pater et frāter meus cum legiōnibus pugnant. Hodiē<sup>2</sup> litterās<sup>3</sup> ā patre accēpimus.

**Q.** Certē animum meum cōfirmāvistī. Sed tempus fugit. Valē.<sup>4</sup>

1. et . . . et, *both . . . and*. 2. *Today*. 3. *litterae, -arum, F., letter*. 4. *Good-by*.

✕ **410.** 1. When kings ruled the Romans, the times were evil. 2. Rome, the capital of Italy, has a well-known river. 3. After the king was killed,<sup>1</sup> both his son and his brother begged for peace. 4. Did not the Romans capture both his mother and his sister?<sup>2</sup> I think so. 5. After the ambassadors had been received,<sup>1</sup> the chiefs who were eager for war<sup>3</sup> fled.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. See § 251. 3. What case? See § 223.



## LESSON LIX

Cēdant arma togae — Let arms yield to peace<sup>1</sup>

### RŌMULUS ET REMUS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 371. Decline all the nouns, adjectives, and pronouns in the story, and give the principal parts of all the verbs.

411. Rōmulus et Remus erant filii Mārtis,<sup>1</sup> dei belli. Eōrum māter erat Rhea Silvia, filia Numitōris,<sup>2</sup> quī rēx Albānōrum<sup>3</sup> antea fuerat, sed ā malō frātre Amūliō pulsus erat. Itaque Amūlius, quī rēgnum Albānōrum tum obtinēbat, puerōs magnopere timuit et eōs interficere cōsiliū cēpit. 5 Rhea vitam filiōrum suōrum cōservāre studēbat, sed rēx iussit servum eōs in flūmen dēicere. Imperiō rēgis autem servus nōn pārui, sed puerōs in arcā lignēā<sup>4</sup> posuit, quae aquā<sup>5</sup> flūminis sine periculō vehī<sup>6</sup> poterat. Mox puerī ad ripam flūminis vectī sunt.<sup>6</sup> Ibi lupa,<sup>7</sup> quae nōn longē aberat, 10 puerōs audivit atque cūrāvit.<sup>8</sup> Postea pāstor<sup>9</sup> benignus<sup>10</sup> eōs invēnit et in casam parvam portāvit.

Post longum tempus Rōmulus et Remus, quī viri iam erant, et malum rēgem interfēcērunt et rēgnum Numitōri reddidērunt. Tum auxiliō sociōrum suōrum novum oppidum 15 ad (*near*) flūmen posuērunt. Eius flūminis nōmen est Tiberis.<sup>11</sup> Eius oppidi nōmen est Rōma. Rōma posita est in eō locō ubi (*where*) Rōmulus et Remus inventi erant.

1. **Mārs**, genitive **Mārtis**. 2. Numitor, brother of Amulius, was the dethroned king of Alba, at that time the largest town in Latium. 3. **Albānī, -ōrum**, M., *the Albans*. 4. **in arcā lignēā**, *in a wooden chest*. 5. Ablative of means. 6. **vehō, -ere**, *carry*. 7. **lupa, -ae**, F., *wolf*. 8. **cūrō, -āre**, *care for*. 9. **pāstor, -ō'ris**, M., *shepherd*. 10. **benignus, -a, -um**, *kind*. 11. **Tiberis**, *the Tiber*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Wyoming. Literally, *Let arms yield to the toga*. The toga, the dress of the civilian, was a sign of peace.

## LESSON LX

Virtūte et armīs—By valor and arms<sup>1</sup>

### THE THIRD DECLENSION, *I*-STEMS, MASCULINES AND FEMININES

**412.** Masculine and feminine *i*-stems are declined alike. As distinguished from consonant stems, they have **-ium** in the genitive plural and **-is** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

|      | <b>caedēs, F., <i>slaughter</i></b><br>(stem <i>caedi</i> -, base <i>caed</i> -) |             | <b>hostis, M., <i>enemy</i></b><br>(stem <i>hosti</i> -, base <i>host</i> -) |             |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| NOM. | caedēs                                                                           | caedēs      | hostis                                                                       | hostēs      |
| GEN. | caedis                                                                           | cae'dium    | hostis                                                                       | hos'tium    |
| DAT. | caedī                                                                            | cae'dibus   | hostī                                                                        | hos'tibus   |
| ACC. | caedem                                                                           | caedis, -ēs | hostem                                                                       | hostis, -ēs |
| ABL. | caede                                                                            | cae'dibus   | hoste                                                                        | hos'tibus   |

|      | <b>urbs, F., <i>city</i></b><br>(stem <i>urbi</i> -, base <i>urb</i> -) |            | <b>cohors, F., <i>cohort</i></b><br>(stem <i>cohorti</i> -, base <i>cohort</i> -) |                |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| NOM. | urbs                                                                    | urbēs      | co'hors                                                                           | cohor'tēs      |
| GEN. | urbis                                                                   | ur'bium    | cohor'tis                                                                         | cohor'tium     |
| DAT. | urbī                                                                    | ur'bibus   | cohor'tī                                                                          | cohor'tibus    |
| ACC. | urbem                                                                   | urbīs, -ēs | cohor'tem                                                                         | cohor'tis, -ēs |
| ABL. | urbe                                                                    | ur'bibus   | cohor'te                                                                          | cohor'tibus    |

**a.** A few nouns have either **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular: as, *civis* (abl. *civī* or *cive*), *ignis* (abl. *ignī* or *igne*), *nāvis* (abl. *nāvī* or *nāve*).

**b.** A number of Latin and Greek nouns ending in **-is** or **-x** have passed into English without change and form their plural in **-es**: as, *analysis*, *analyses*; *appendix*, *appendices*; *axis*, *axes*; *basis*, *bases*; *crisis*, *crises*; *hypothesis*, *hypotheses*; *index*, *indices*; *oasis*, *oases*; *parenthesis*, *parentheses*; *thesis*, *theses*; *vertex*, *vertices*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Mississippi.

**413.** Masculine and feminine i-stems include the following :

*a.* Nouns in **-ēs** or **-is** with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative.

Thus **caedēs**, **caedis**, is an i-stem, but **miles**, **militis**, is a consonant stem.

*b.* Nouns of more than one syllable in **-ns** or **-rs**: as, **cliēns**, **cohors**.

*c.* Nouns of one syllable in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant: as, **urbs**, **arx**.

### RŌMĀNĪ ET SABĪNĪ

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 371

**414.** Erant in urbe novā multī virī, sed mulierēs paucae. Itaque Rōmulus spectācula<sup>1</sup> pūblica comparāvit et Sabīnōs,<sup>2</sup> finitīmōs suōs, invitāvit.<sup>3</sup> Magnus numerus Sabīnōrum cum filiābus ad spectācula Rōmāna vēnit. Tum signō datō<sup>4</sup> Rōmānī filiās Sabīnōrum rapuērunt. Statim Sabīnī cohortēs 5 ad bellum ēvocāvērunt, et iam caedēs misera nōn longē aberat. Sed mulierēs, filiae Sabīnōrum, quās Rōmānī in mātirimōnium dūxerant, in medium proelium properāvērunt et bellum prohibuērunt.

1. **spectāculum**, -ī, N., *spectacle, game*. 2. **Sabīnī**, -ōrum, M., *the Sabines*, the nearest neighbors of Rome. 3. **invitō**, -āre, *invite*. 4. Ablative absolute.

**415.** 1. The king had been driven from his realm by his wicked brother. 2. Where did Romulus build the new city? 3. After the city was built,<sup>1</sup> whose daughters did the Romans marry? 4. The neighbors commanded the Romans to give back the women, but could not persuade them.<sup>2</sup> 5. The cohorts of the enemy were thrown down from the rampart with great slaughter.<sup>3</sup>

1. Ablative absolute. 2. What case? See § 224. 3. What construction? See § 168.



MULIERES BELLUM PROHIBUERUNT

## LESSON LXI

Deus dītat—God enriches<sup>1</sup>

### THE THIRD DECLENSION, *I*-STEMS, NEUTERS

**416.** Neuter *i*-stems end in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar* in the nominative singular, in *-i* in the ablative singular, and have an *-i*- in every form of the plural. They are declined as follows :

|      | <b>mare, N., <i>sea</i></b><br>(stem <b>mari-</b> ,<br>base <b>mar-</b> ) | <b>animal, N., <i>animal</i></b><br>(stem <b>animāli-</b> ,<br>base <b>animāl-</b> ) | <b>calcar, N., <i>spur</i></b><br>(stem <b>calcāri-</b> ,<br>base <b>calcār-</b> ) | TERMINA-<br>TIONS |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| NOM. | ma're                                                                     | an'imal                                                                              | cal'car                                                                            | —                 |
| GEN. | ma'ris                                                                    | animā'lis                                                                            | calcā'ris                                                                          | -is               |
| DAT. | ma'rī                                                                     | animā'li                                                                             | calcā'rī                                                                           | -ī                |
| ACC. | ma're                                                                     | an'imal                                                                              | cal'car                                                                            | —                 |
| ABL. | ma'rī                                                                     | animā'li                                                                             | calcā'rī                                                                           | -ī                |
| NOM. | ma'ria                                                                    | animā'lia                                                                            | calcā'ria                                                                          | -ia               |
| GEN. | —                                                                         | animā'lium                                                                           | calcā'rium                                                                         | -ium              |
| DAT. | ma'ribus                                                                  | animā'libus                                                                          | calcā'ribus                                                                        | -ibus             |
| ACC. | ma'ria                                                                    | animā'lia                                                                            | calcā'ria                                                                          | -ia               |
| ABL. | ma'ribus                                                                  | animā'libus                                                                          | calcā'ribus                                                                        | -ibus             |

**a.** In the nominative and accusative singular the final *-i* of the stem is either dropped or changed to *-e*.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 371

**417.** Equitēs Rōmānī calcāria magna gerēbant et equī eōrum erant pulchra animālia. 2. Ōra Galliae maribus et insulis continētur. 3. Gallia multās civitatēs et multās linguās habet.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Arizona, whose wealth consists of minerals.

4. Principēs civitātis, quī bellō semper studēbant, lēgātōs ad Rōmānōs remitti vetuērunt. 5. Vidistine animālia magna quae in mediō mari habitant? Paucā vidi. 6. Num calcāria quae eques gerit equō nocēbunt? Nōn nocēbunt. 7. Barbarī cōpiās suās trāns flūmen dūxērunt, sed lēgātus iussit cohortēs castris<sup>1</sup> continēri. 8. Linguae Latinae magnā diligentīā studēmus. 9. Pōnite castra celeriter, hostēs impedimenta iam cēpērunt.

1. Latin, *by camp*, ablative of means.

418. 1. Do their horsemen wear spurs? I think so. 2. If the danger is great, we can keep the soldiers in camp.<sup>1</sup> 3. We saw many large animals in the forests of Germany. 4. To sail through the deep seas is pleasing to sailors.<sup>2</sup> 5. The Romans found savage peoples and strange<sup>3</sup> languages in those states.

1. Compare § 417. 7. 2. See § 130. 3. novus, -a, -um.



THE TIBER AT THE FOOT OF THE AVENTINE

## LESSON LXII

Nil sine nūmine — Nothing without divine guidance<sup>1</sup>

### THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR NOUNS

**419.** A few nouns of the third declension are somewhat irregular in inflection. Among these are the following:

|      | homō, M., <i>man</i> | vis, F., <i>force</i> | iter, N., <i>march</i> |
|------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| NOM. | ho'mō                | vis                   | iter                   |
| GEN. | ho'minis             | vis ( <i>rare</i> )   | iti'neris              |
| DAT. | ho'minī              | vī ( <i>rare</i> )    | iti'nerī               |
| ACC. | ho'minem             | vim                   | iter                   |
| ABL. | ho'mine              | vī                    | iti'nere               |
| NOM. | ho'minēs             | vi'rēs                | iti'nera               |
| GEN. | ho'minum             | vi'rium               | iti'nerum              |
| DAT. | homi'nibus           | vi'ribus              | itine'ribus            |
| ACC. | ho'minēs             | vi'ris, -ēs           | iti'nera               |
| ABL. | homi'nibus           | vi'ribus              | itine'ribus            |

*a.* The accusative plural **viris** may be distinguished from the dative and ablative plural **viris** (from **vir**) by the length of the *i* in the first syllable.

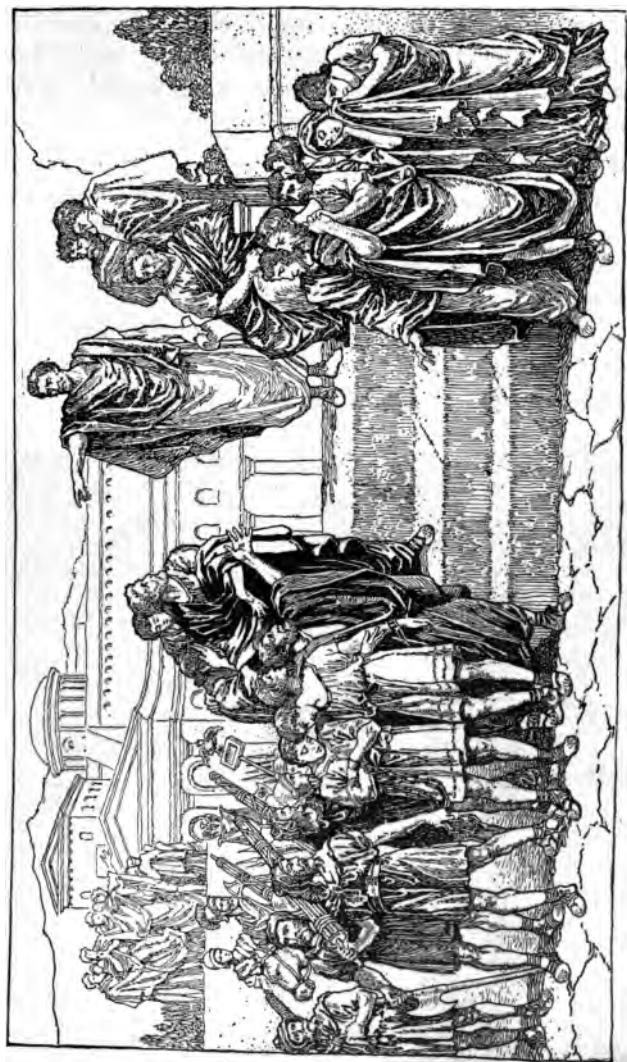
### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

#### DĒ BRŪTŌ PRĪMŌ CŌNSULE

**420.** Ōlim Rōmānī ā rēgibus regēbantur, sed post multōs annōs rēgēs vi et armīs pulsī sunt atque cōsulibus imperium cōmissum est. Primus cōsul erat Brūtus, quem ēgregiā virtūte populus amābat. Tamen erant in urbe quidam<sup>1</sup> mali

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Colorado.



BRŪTUS FĪLIŌS SUŌS INTERFICĪ IUBET

156 THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR NOUNS

hominēs qui imperiō cōsulis inimici erant ac rēgēs reduci cupiebant. In eōrum numerō erant filii Brūtī. Itaque Brūtus filiōs suōs in iudiciū vocāvit et iussit eōs interfici. Quid dē eō exemplō virtūtis Rōmānae putās?

1. *quidam, some, certain.*

421. 1. The men <sup>who</sup> were in the boat were overcome by the violence of the sea. 2. A few who were saved will march to the nearest city. 3. After the battle had begun,<sup>1</sup> our soldiers by their great valor quickly conquered the remainder of the enemy.<sup>2</sup> 4. Nevertheless, the enemy did not flee, but led their forces back into camp.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Latin idiom, *the remaining enemy*.



ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

## LESSON LXIII

Iūstitia omnibus — Justice to all<sup>1</sup>

### ORPHEUS ET EURYDICĒ

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

**422.** Poëtae multās fābulās dē Orpheō, sacrō vāte,<sup>1</sup> narrant. Eum etiam animālīa et arborēs<sup>2</sup> libenter<sup>3</sup> audiēbant. Orpheus puellam pulchram, Eurydicē,<sup>4</sup> in mātīmōnium dūxerat, sed mors eam rapuit et Orpheus vir miser relictus est. Tum Orpheus dolōrem<sup>5</sup> suum continēre nōn poterat et ausus est 5 ad inferōs<sup>6</sup> dēscendere.<sup>7</sup> Ibi Plūtōnem,<sup>8</sup> rēgem inferōrum, petiit et dixit: “Cūr, Plūtō, eam iniūriam miserō virō fēcisti? Certē nōn aequum est Eurydicē mortī dari. Eam reducere studeō.” Tum dulcissimē<sup>9</sup> cecinit<sup>10</sup> et etiam Plūtōnī persuāsit. Tamen Plūtō eum spectāre Eurydicē vetuit 10 et dixit, “Sī in eō locō eam spectābis, postea eam vidēbis numquam.” Iam salūs nōn longē aberat. Sed Orpheus resistere nōn potuit et Eurydicē spectāvit. Statim magnā vī Eurydicē rapta est et numquam est reddita.

1. vātēs, -is, M. and F., *bard, inspired singer*. 2. arbor, -oris, F., *tree*. 3. Gladly. 4. *Eu-ryd'i-ce*. This is the accusative case. 5. dolor, -ōris, M., *grief*. 6. inferī, -ōrum, M., *shades, lower world*. 7. dēscendō, -ere, *descend*. 8. Plūtō, -ōnis, M., *Pluto*. 9. *Very sweetly*. 10. Perfect of canō, -ere, *sing*.

**423.** Answer the following questions in Latin:

1. Quī dē Orpheō fābulās narrant?
2. Quam puellam Orpheus in mātīmōnium dūxit?
3. Cūr mala erat fortūna Orpei?
4. Quid Orpheus facere studuit?
5. Quid Plūtō vetuit?
6. Num Orpheus puellam servāre potuit?

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the District of Columbia.

## LESSON LXIV

*Alis volat propriis* — She flies with her own wings<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

**424.** Selecting appropriate prefixes from § 341, write a list of English derivatives from the following verbs. Define the derivatives, looking them up in the English dictionary if necessary.

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>putō</i>  | <i>agō</i>   | <i>habēō</i> |
| <i>moveō</i> | <i>parō</i>  | <i>pellō</i> |
| <i>capiō</i> | <i>pugnō</i> | <i>teneō</i> |

**425. Latin Suffixes.** Many Latin words are formed from others by means of suffixes. Thus :

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>civis, citizen</i>   | <i>civitās, state</i>             |
| <i>adveniō, come to</i> | <i>adventus, arrival</i>          |
| <i>capiō, take</i>      | <i>captivus, captive</i>          |
| <i>aequus, level</i>    | <i>aequō, make level</i>          |
| <i>liber, free</i>      | <i>libertās, freedom</i>          |
| <i>magnus, great</i>    | <i>magnitūdō, greatness</i>       |
| <i>pecus, cattle</i>    | <i>pecūnia, wealth</i>            |
| <i>vir, man</i>         | <i>virtūs, manliness, courage</i> |

We see, too, that by the use of suffixes different parts of speech are derived from each other, such as verbs from nouns, nouns from verbs, nouns from adjectives, etc. Some of the suffixes are readily recognized and have a uniform and easily defined meaning. We shall study some of the more important ones later on (§§ 626–629). A knowledge of prefixes and suffixes will greatly increase your Latin and English vocabulary, as it will enable you to grasp the meaning of many words without consulting a dictionary.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Oregon.

**426. English Suffixes.** Suffixes are equally important in English. Many of them are of Latin origin and have the same meaning as in Latin. As an illustration of the part that suffixes play in the making of English words, note the following combinations of *port-*, 'carry,' from Latin *portō* :

porter      portly      portage      portability      portable

Using prefixes as well, we get a much larger number : as,

|             |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| comport     | unexportable | importation  |
| comportable | exportation  | importer     |
| deport      | exporter     | reimport     |
| deportable  | reëxport     | report       |
| deportation | import       | reportable   |
| department  | importable   | unreportable |
| export      | important    | reporter     |
| exportable  | unimportant  | etc.         |



**Eighth Review, Lessons LVII-LXIV, §§ 774-777**



A ROMAN STREET SCENE

## LESSON LXV

Tē Deum laudāmus — We praise Thee, O God

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, THREE ENDINGS

**427.** All adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like **bonus, pulcher, liber**) or of the third declension.

**428.** Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have i-stems and are declined like nouns with i-stems (§ 412).

**429. Classes of Adjectives.** Adjectives of the third declension are classified as follows:

Class I. Adjectives of three endings—a different form in the nominative for each gender.

Class II. Adjectives of two endings—the nominative of the masculine and feminine alike, the neuter different.

Class III. Adjectives of one ending—the nominative masculine, feminine, and neuter all alike.

**430.** Adjectives of the third declension in **-er** have three endings; those in **-is** have two; the others have one.

### CLASS I

**431.** Adjectives of three endings are declined as follows:

**acer, ācris, ācre** (stem **ācri-**, base **ācr-**), *sharp, keen, eager*

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.      | FEM.       | NEUT.   |
|------|-------|-------|-------|------------|------------|---------|
| NOM. | ācer  | ācris | ācre  | ācrēs      | ācrēs      | ācria   |
| GEN. | ācris | ācris | ācris | ācrium     | ācrium     | ācrium  |
| DAT. | ācrī  | ācrī  | ācrī  | ācribus    | ācribus    | ācribus |
| ACC. | ācrem | ācrem | ācre  | ācris, -ēs | ācris, -ēs | ācria   |
| ABL. | ācrī  | ācrī  | ācrī  | ācribus    | ācribus    | ācribus |

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 372

**432.** 1. Rōmānī ācre proelium cum cōpiīs pedestribus eque-  
tribusque hostium facient. 2. Proeliō commissō equitēs nostrī  
cōpiās equestrēs hostium in fugam dare cupient. 3. Hostēs  
magnā virtūte pugnābunt, tamen vincentur. 4. Mulierēs puellae-  
que, quae proelium spectant, aut capientur aut salūtem fugā  
petent. 5. Castra nostra in aequō locō posita sunt. 6. Firmum  
praesidium ante castra locātum erat. 7. Cōpiaē pedestrēs per  
silvās magnīs itineribus<sup>1</sup> reductae erant. 8. Hominēs eius civi-  
tātis bona tēla habēbant et vāllum magnā vī oppugnāverunt.

1. *magna itinera, forced marches.*

**433.** 1. The sailors of Britain are not timid, and do not fear  
death. 2. But with eager hearts they dare to sail even through  
the midst of the perils of the sea. 3. Leaving safety behind,<sup>1</sup>  
they put the enemy to flight. 4. The spurs which the cavalry  
forces wore<sup>2</sup> were new. 5. The men had swift horses, and  
sought safety in flight.<sup>3</sup> 6. Either kill the captive or let him go.<sup>4</sup>

1. Ablative absolute. 2. *gerō, -ere*. 3. Latin, *by flight*. 4. Imperative  
of *dimitto, -ere*.

**434. Derivation.** Define the following English words and  
give the Latin word to which each is related :

|             |          |              |            |
|-------------|----------|--------------|------------|
| dislocate   | repel    | disintegrate | dispute    |
| prohibition | project  | legation     | temporal   |
| amplify     | official | minimize     | invincible |

## LESSON LXVI

Christō et Ecclesiāe — For Christ and the Church<sup>1</sup>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, TWO ENDINGS

#### CLASS II

435. Adjectives of two endings are declined as follows :

**omnis, omne** (stem **omni-**, base **omn-**), *every, all*<sup>2</sup>

|      | M. AND F. | NEUT. | M. AND F.  | NEUT.   |
|------|-----------|-------|------------|---------|
| NOM. | omnis     | omne  | omnēs      | omnia   |
| GEN. | omnis     | omnis | omnium     | omnium  |
| DAT. | omni      | omni  | omnibus    | omnibus |
| ACC. | omnem     | omne  | omnis, -ēs | omnia   |
| ABL. | omni      | omni  | omnibus    | omnibus |

#### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

436. 1. Brūtus, p̄mus cōsul, suōs filiōs in iūdicium vocāvit. 2. Brūtus eōs ad certam mortem dūci iussit. 3. Filii cōsulis in<sup>1</sup> salūtem commūnem cōsilia capere incēperant. 4. Itaque coācti sunt grave supplicium dare. 5. Brūtus erat certus amicus patriae et omnia<sup>2</sup> prō bonō publicō faciēbat. 6. Etiam Rōmānis id grave supplicium nōn grātum erat. 7. Nōn omnēs Brūtō similēs esse possunt. 8. Rōmāni omnibus terris multa exempla virtūtis vērae dedērunt.

1. *Against.* 2. Adjective used as a noun. This usage is very common.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Harvard University.

<sup>2</sup> **Omnis** is usually translated *every* in the singular and *all* in the plural.

437. 1. The languages of Gaul and of Italy were not at all similar. 2. The wars which the Romans waged with the Gauls were long and severe. 3. The fortune of war is not always sure. 4. All men are compelled to defend the common safety, or the country cannot be preserved. 5. Our courageous soldiers with their swift horses will keep<sup>1</sup> the violence of the enemy from our towns.

1. prohibeō, -ēre.

## LESSON LXVII

Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur — Birds of a feather flock together<sup>1</sup>

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, ONE ENDING

#### CLASS III

438. Adjectives of one ending are declined as follows :

**pār** (stem **pari-**, base **par-**), *equal*

|      | M. AND F. | NEUT. | M. AND F.  | NEUT.   |
|------|-----------|-------|------------|---------|
| NOM. | pār       | pār   | parēs      | paria   |
| GEN. | paris     | paris | parium     | parium  |
| DAT. | pari      | pari  | paribus    | paribus |
| ACC. | parem     | pār   | paris, -ēs | paria   |
| ABL. | pari      | pari  | paribus    | paribus |

a. Some adjectives of one ending have -e in the ablative singular.

b. Adjectives declined like **pār** do not always end in -r, but have various other endings, such as -x, -ns, -es, etc. The final letter of the base is shown by the genitive : as, **fēlix**, **fēlicis** ; **āmēns**, **āmēntis** ; etc.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *Equals most easily assemble with equals*. A Latin proverb quoted by Cicero in his well-known essay on old age.

MIDAS, THE KING OF THE GOLDEN TOUCH<sup>1</sup>

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

439. Ōlim erat rēx cuius nōmen erat Midās. Ei deus Bacchus erat amicus et dixerat: "Tibi,<sup>1</sup> rēx, beneficium dare studeō. Id quod maximē petis, tibi dabō." Sed sapientia rēgis pār bonae fortunae nōn erat et respondit, "Cupio omnia quae corpore meō tangam<sup>2</sup> in aurum<sup>3</sup> mūtārī."<sup>4</sup> Statim rēx accēpit dōnum<sup>5</sup> quod petiverat. Saxum<sup>6</sup> tangit et saxum in aurum solidum<sup>7</sup> mūtātur. Tum arborem<sup>8</sup> tangit, et arbor est similis aurō. Rēx gaudet<sup>9</sup> et deō grātiās agit. Sed cum cibum<sup>10</sup> et aquam tangit, et cibus et aqua in aurum mūtantur. Magnopere perterritus Midās mortem<sup>10</sup> certam timuit et deum vocāvit: "Servā, servā, Bacche. Dā auxilium miserō. Dōnum<sup>5</sup> tuum nōn est beneficium, sed grave supplicium." Bacchus audivit et iussit eum in flūmine corpus suum lavere.<sup>11</sup> Rēx pārui et liberātus est. Etiam nunc harēna<sup>12</sup> eius flūminis est aurea.<sup>13</sup> 15

1. tibi, to you. 2. Future of tangō, -ere, touch. 3. aurum, -ī, N., gold. 4. mūtō, -āre, change. 5. dōnum, -ī, N., gift. 6. saxum, -ī, N., stone. 7. solidus, -a, -um, solid. 8. arbor, -oris, F., tree. 9. gaudeō, -ēre, rejoice. 10. cibus, -ī, M., food. 11. lavō, -ere, wash. 12. harēna, -ae, F., sand. 13. aureus, -a, -um, golden.

440. Give the principal parts of all the familiar verbs used in § 439. Decline the nouns aqua, beneficium, rēx, nōmen, mors, corpus. Decline the adjectives certus, similis.

<sup>1</sup> Read "The Golden Touch" in Hawthorne's "The Wonder-Book."



ROMAN SILVER CUPS

## LESSON LXVIII

Excelsior — Higher<sup>1</sup>

### REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES • THE COMPARATIVE WITH QUAM

**441. Comparison of Adjectives in English.** In English, adjectives regularly change their form to express quality in different degrees. This is called comparison. There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*. The usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *-er* for the comparative and *-est* for the superlative: as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Sometimes we use the adverbs *more* and *most*: as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

**442. Comparison of Adjectives in Latin.** In Latin, as in English, adjectives are regularly compared by adding suffixes. From the base of the positive the comparative is formed by adding *-ior*, masculine and feminine, and *-ius*, neuter; the superlative, by adding *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum*. Thus, *altus* (base *alt-*), *high*, and *gravis* (base *grav-*), *heavy*, are compared as follows:

|                                        |                                                     |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>altus</i> , -a, -um,<br><i>high</i> | <i>altior</i> , <i>altius</i> ,<br><i>higher</i>    | <i>altissimus</i> , -a, -um,<br><i>highest</i>   |
| <i>gravis</i> , grave,<br><i>heavy</i> | <i>gravior</i> , <i>gravius</i> ,<br><i>heavier</i> | <i>gravissimus</i> , -a, -um,<br><i>heaviest</i> |

**443.** Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding *-rimus*, *-rima*, *-rimum* to the nominative masculine of the positive. Thus, *ācer* (base *ācr-*),

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of New York.

*sharp*; **pulcher** (base **pulchr-**), *pretty*; and **liber** (base **liber-**), *free*, have the following comparative and superlative forms:

|                                                                               |                                                           |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>acer</b> , <b>ācris</b> , <b>ācre</b> ,<br><i>sharp</i>                    | <b>ācrior</b> , <b>ācrius</b> ,<br><i>sharper</i>         | <b>ācerrimus</b> , -a,<br><i>-um, sharpest</i>     |
| <b>pulcher</b> , <b>pulchra</b> , <b>pul-</b><br><b>chrum</b> , <i>pretty</i> | <b>pulchrrior</b> , <b>pulchrius</b> ,<br><i>prettier</i> | <b>pulcherrimus</b> , -a,<br><i>-um, prettiest</i> |
| <b>liber</b> , <b>libera</b> , <b>liberum</b> ,<br><i>free</i>                | <b>liberior</b> , <b>liberius</b> ,<br><i>freer</i>       | <b>liberrimus</b> , -a,<br><i>-um, freest</i>      |

**444.** The superlative is often translated by *very*: as, **altissimus**, *very high*.

**445. Comparative with *quam*.** In English two objects are compared by the use of a comparative followed by the conjunction *than*: as, *the ditch is wider than the wall*. In this sentence *ditch* is nominative, subject of *is*; and *wall* is also nominative, subject of *is* understood. That is to say, the two objects compared are in the same case. In Latin the word for *than* is **quam** and the usage is the same. Thus the sentence above becomes **fossa est lātiior quam mūrus**.

**446. Rule for Comparative with *quam*.** *In comparisons with *quam* the two objects compared are in the same case.*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

**447.** 1. Cōsul est aequior quam rēx. 2. Supplicium rēgis erat gravissimum. 3. Equus est celerior quam homō. 4. Sed equus nōn est omnium animālium celerrimum.<sup>1</sup> 5. Virtūs Scaevolae, quī ignem et mortem nōn timēbat, erat clārissima. 6. Quis erat fortior quam Thēseus, quī puerōs puellāsque patriae servāvit? 7. Viae Rōmānae erant longissimae et per multās terrās patēbant. 8. Iter quod per silvās dūcēbat erat difficile. 9. Castra

in locō iniquissimō posita erant. 10. Id iter erat brevius et facilius. 11. Mare est altius quam flūmen.

1. Neuter, agreeing with **animal** understood.

448. 1. The wall of that town was very high. 2. Galba's horse is more beautiful and swifter than mine. 3. Those soldiers are very eager. 4. That route was longer and more difficult. 5. The longest rivers are not always the deepest. 6. The fire which the goddess gave to the queen was very sacred.

449. Compare the adjectives **brevis**, **fortis**, **nōtus**, **gravis**, **crēber**, **miser**, **grātus**, **longus**, **tardus**, **integer**.

## LESSON LXIX

Silent lēgēs inter arma — Laws are silent amid arms<sup>1</sup>

### DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

450. Declension of Comparatives. Comparatives are adjectives of the third declension. They are of two endings (§ 429) and are declined as follows :

**altior, higher**

|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.    | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.      |
|------|----------------|----------|----------------|------------|
| NOM. | altior         | altius   | altiōrēs       | altiōra    |
| GEN. | altiōris       | altiōris | altiōrum       | altiōrum   |
| DAT. | altiōrī        | altiōrī  | altiōribus     | altiōribus |
| ACC. | altiōrem       | altius   | altiōrēs       | altiōra    |
| ABL. | altiōre        | altiōre  | altiōribus     | altiōribus |

451. Ablative of Measure of Difference. In the sentence *Sextus is a foot taller than Julia* the word *foot* expresses the measure of difference in height between Sextus and Julia.

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, the greatest Roman orator.

The Latin form of expression would be *Sextus is taller by a foot than Julia*, *Sextus est longior pede quam Iulia*, and the ablative *pede* is called the *ablative of the measure of difference*.

**452. Rule for Ablative of Measure of Difference.** *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

*a.* The neuter ablatives *multō*, *by much*; *nihilō*, *by nothing*; and *paulō*, *by a little*, are very common in this construction.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 373

**453.** 1. *Corpus hominis est multō levius quam corpus equi.* 2. *Inter ea oppida iter est nihilō facilius.* 3. *Puellae sunt paulō breviōrēs quam pueri.* 4. *Mea poena est multō gravior quam tua.* 5. *Cōpiae pedestrēs erant nihilō fortiōrēs quam cōpiae equestrēs.* 6. *Nihil grātius quam fābulam dē virtūte Dentāti audivimus.* 7. *Estne tua soror brevior quam mea? Longior pede ea est.* 8. *Animālia vīdimus quae multō tardiōra sunt quam equi.* 9. *Urbe expugnātā, filia pulcherrima rēginae inter ignēs et arma relictā est.* 10. *Oppidum vestrum ab eō locō magnō spatiō abest.*

**454.** 1. *The marches which the commander made were neither very long nor very swift.* 2. *The commander thanked the bravest legion most of all.* 3. *Your spears are no<sup>1</sup> longer and no lighter than mine.* 4. *Between the Gauls and the Germans very frequent wars were waged.* 5. *That river is no<sup>1</sup> wider, but a foot<sup>1</sup> deeper.* 6. *Nothing is more beautiful than Rome, the capital of Italy.* 7. *We are a long distance from Italy.*

1. Ablative of measure of difference. 2. Latin, *distant by a great space.*

**455.** Decline the comparatives occurring in § 453.

## LESSON LXX

Lūx et vērītās — Light and truth<sup>1</sup>

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES • THE DECLENSION OF *PLŪS*

**456. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives.** Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison: as, *good, better, best; much, more, most*. So some Latin adjectives are compared irregularly. Among these are the following:

| POSITIVE                      | COMPARATIVE    | SUPERLATIVE       |
|-------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>   | melior, melius | optimus, -a, -um  |
| magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i> | maior, maius   | maximus, -a, -um  |
| malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>    | peior, peius   | pessimus, -a, -um |
| multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>  | ——, plūs       | plūrimus, -a, -um |
| parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i> | minor, minus   | minimus, -a, -um  |

**457.** The following adjectives, with regular comparative, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive:

| POSITIVE                      | COMPARATIVE       | SUPERLATIVE            |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>      | facilior, -ius    | facillimus, -a, -um    |
| difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>   | difficilior, -ius | difficillimus, -a, -um |
| similis, -e, <i>like</i>      | similior, -ius    | simillimus, -a, -um    |
| dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> | dissimilior, -ius | dissimillimus, -a, -um |

**458. Declension of *plūs*.** Plūs, *more*, in the singular is a neuter noun. The plural (*more, many, several*) is used as an adjective. It is declined as follows:

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Yale University, the University of Indiana, the University of North Carolina, and the University of Montana.

## 170 IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

|      | SINGULAR   | PLURAL              |            |
|------|------------|---------------------|------------|
|      | NEUT. NOUN | MASC. AND FEM. ADJ. | NEUT. ADJ. |
| NOM. | plūs       | plūrēs              | plūra      |
| GEN. | plūris     | plūrium             | plūrium    |
| DAT. | —          | plūribus            | plūribus   |
| ACC. | plūs       | plūris, -ēs         | plūra      |
| ABL. | plūre      | plūribus            | plūribus   |

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

459. 1. Reliqui hostēs, qui proelium committere audēbant, cōpiis nostris nōn parēs erant atque in maximam silvam fūgērunt. 2. Libertās est multō melior quam servitūs. 3. Nihil peius quam servitūs esse potest. 4. Lēgēs quibus<sup>1</sup> pārēmus sunt lēgibus<sup>2</sup> Rōmānis nōn dissimillimae. 5. Dux vetuit plūrēs captīvōs dimitti. 6. Linguae Galliae et Britanniae erant similimae. 7. Fortēs mulierēs difficillimum iter aut pericula plūrima silvārum nōn timuērunt. 8. Rēx pessimus ampliōrem pecūniam petiit, sed populus plūs dare nōn potuit. 9. Minōrēs principēs civitātis maximam auctōritātem nōn habēbant. 10. Agris<sup>3</sup> igni vāstātis, dux oppida maxima oppugnāre incēpit.

1. What case? See § 224. 2. Dative, § 130. 3. Ablative absolute.

460. Among the Romans the consuls had the greatest authority. 2. After the kings<sup>1</sup> were driven out, greater liberty was given to the people. 3. The smallest states often have the bravest men and the best women. 4. The shortest route was much more difficult than the longest. 5. After that time the captives feared either certain death or the worst slavery. 6. Your laws and your languages are very different.<sup>2</sup>

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Express by the superlative.

## LESSON LXXI

Omnia praeclāra rāra — All the best things are rare<sup>1</sup>

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**461. Formation of Adverbs.** An adverb is a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, and generally answers the question *How? Where? When? Why? To what extent?*

**462. Rule for Adverbs.** *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

**463.** Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives. In English they usually end in *-ly*: as, adjective *brave*, adverb *bravely*. Latin adverbs, too, have certain endings. They are compared, but not declined.

**464.** Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the adjective.

|      |                     |                             |                       |
|------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| ADJ. | <i>lātus, wide</i>  | <i>pulcher, beautiful</i>   | <i>liber, free</i>    |
| ADV. | <i>lātē, widely</i> | <i>pulchrē, beautifully</i> | <i>liberē, freely</i> |

**465.** Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are generally formed by adding *-iter* to the base of the adjective.

|      |                         |                           |                          |
|------|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| ADJ. | <i>ācer, sharp</i>      | <i>celer, swift</i>       | <i>brevis, brief</i>     |
| ADV. | <i>ācritēr, sharply</i> | <i>celeritēr, swiftly</i> | <i>brevitēr, briefly</i> |

**466. Comparison of Adverbs.** Adverbs are compared like the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in *-ius* and the superlative in *-ē*.

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero, Rome's foremost man of letters.

## 172 FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

| POSITIVE                            | COMPARATIVE      | SUPERLATIVE        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| <b>lātē</b> , <i>widely</i>         | <b>lātius</b>    | <b>lātissimē</b>   |
| <b>pulchrē</b> , <i>beautifully</i> | <b>pulchrius</b> | <b>pulcherrimē</b> |
| <b>liberē</b> , <i>freely</i>       | <b>liberius</b>  | <b>liberrimē</b>   |
| <b>ācriter</b> , <i>sharply</i>     | <b>ācrius</b>    | <b>ācerrimē</b>    |
| <b>similiter</b> , <i>similarly</i> | <b>similius</b>  | <b>simillimē</b>   |

**467.** Using the regular terminations, form adverbs from the following adjectives, and compare them :

|               |                |              |               |               |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>longus</b> | <b>brevis</b>  | <b>altus</b> | <b>gravis</b> | <b>celer</b>  |
| <b>tardus</b> | <b>similis</b> | <b>malus</b> | <b>levis</b>  | <b>fortis</b> |

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

**468.** 1. Dux tardissimē prōcessit quod nihil dē nātūrā loci cognōverat. 2. Tum iussit equitēs celerrimē discēdere et hominēs ex proximō oppidō rapere. 3. Post breve tempus equitēs septem<sup>1</sup> hominēs cēpērunt et eōs ad ducem addūxērunt. 4. Dux cupivit captivōs nārrāre omnia quae cognōverant. 5. Is captivīs dixit: "Dicite liberrimē, hominēs. Si ita nōn faciētis, gravissimum supplicium dabitis." 6. Tamen septem captivī nihil respondērunt et certam mortem fortissimē exspectāvērunt.

1. Count seven in Latin; see § 283.

**469.** 1. When that plan<sup>1</sup> became known, their<sup>2</sup> allies quickly deserted the city and sought safety in flight.<sup>3</sup> 2. The commander had been very severely wounded by a spear. 3. The soldiers advanced more slowly because they were waiting for fresh troops. 4. The captives were quickly brought to the commander. 5. He wished to learn the nature of the place. 6. A few<sup>1</sup> being lightly wounded, the rest did not advance farther.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Not **suus**. 3. Latin, *by flight*.

## LESSON LXXII

Salūs populi — The safety of the people<sup>1</sup>

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (CONCLUDED)

**470. Case Forms used as Adverbs.** The accusative or the ablative neuter singular of some adjectives is used adverbially. Thus the comparative adverb in **-ius** is really the accusative neuter singular of the comparative adjective. Other examples are the following :

**facile**, *easily*, accusative of **facilis**, *easy*  
**plūrimum**, *very much*, accusative of **plūrimus**, *most*  
**primum**, *first*, accusative of **primus**, *first*  
**primō**, *at first*, ablative of **primus**, *first*

**471.** The following adverbs are formed irregularly and have irregular comparison :

|                                   |                                 |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>bene</b> , <i>well</i>         | <b>melius</b> , <i>better</i>   | <b>optimē</b> , <i>best</i>         |
| <b>diū</b> , <i>long</i> (time)   | <b>diūtius</b> , <i>longer</i>  | <b>diūtissimē</b> , <i>longest</i>  |
| <b>magnopere</b> , <i>greatly</i> | <b>magis</b> , <i>more</i>      | <b>maximē</b> , <i>most</i>         |
| <b>saepe</b> , <i>often</i>       | <b>saepius</b> , <i>oftener</i> | <b>saepissimē</b> , <i>oftenest</i> |

**a.** Note the difference in meaning between **diū**, *long* in time, and **longē**, *long* in space.

**472.** In English, adverbs and adjectives are often compared by means of *more* and *most*. So some Latin adverbs and adjectives are compared by means of **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*: as, **idōneus**, *suitable*; **magis idōneus**, *more suitable*; **maximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.

**a.** The Latin comparative sometimes means *quite* or *somewhat*, and the superlative is often best translated by *very* or *exceedingly*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Missouri.

## COLLOQUIUM — DUO DISCIPULI

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

**473. PRIMUS.** Habēsne multās fābulās in tuō librō?

SECUNDUS. Plūrimās fābulās habeo. Omnēs fābulae sunt bonae; sed optima fābula, meō iūdictiō, est fābula dē Thēseō. Quam facile et bene pericula maxima superāvit!

P. Certē facta Thēseī sunt nōtissima, tamen fābula Mānli, viri clārissimī, meum animum magis tenet. Is Rōmam ā Gallis quī mūrōs ascenderant servāvit. Facta Mānli sunt maiōra quam facta Thēseī.

S. Minimē ita putō. Quid autem dē Scaevolā dicam? Nōne erat eius virtūs multō magis ēgregia?

P. Id est vērum, nam is ignem mortemque nōn timēbat. Tamen Dentātus maiōra negōtia, primō in bellō deinde in pāce, suscēpit ac saepius patriam servāvit. Itaque Dentātus erat maior quam Scaevola.

S. Iam dē quattuor virīs fāmae nōtissimis diximus. Primus<sup>1</sup> erat Thēseus, secundus erat Mānlius, tertius erat Scaevola, quārtus erat Dentātus. Dē Brūtō autem, primō cōnsule, nōn diximus. Sed dē omnibus dicere nōn possumus. Diūtius manēre nōn possum. Frāter meus mē<sup>2</sup> exspectat et ā villā nostrā magnō spatiō absum.

1. Learn the ordinal numerals, *first, second, third, fourth*, as they appear here. 2. *Me*.

**474. Derivation.** Using prefixes previously studied (§§ 341, 373, 374) and such suffixes as appear in § 426, and any others you know, make a list of at least twenty-five English derivatives from the verbs *nāvigō, timeō, sedeō, vincō, faciō*.



THE ROMAN CAMPAGNA AND THE ALBAN MOUNT

The great plain surrounding Rome, known as the Campagna, now nearly bare, was in ancient times a terrestrial paradise of villas and gardens. After the fall of the Roman Empire it was laid waste by barbarian invaders and has never been reclaimed. The Alban Mount was the sacred mountain of the Latins. On its slope was built Alba Longa, Rome's mother city



## LESSON LXXIII

Ad maiōrem Dei glōriam — To the greater glory of God<sup>1</sup>

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION

**475.** Nouns that end in **-ūs** in the genitive singular are of the Fourth Declension.

**476.** Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter. The nominative singular of masculine nouns ends in **-us**; of neuters, in **-ū**.

**a.** Feminines, by exception, are **domus, house**; **manus, hand**; and a few others.

**477.** Nouns of the fourth declension are declined as follows :

|      |               | <b>adventus, M., arrival</b> | <b>cornū, N., horn</b> |              |       |
|------|---------------|------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|-------|
|      |               | (base advent-)               | (base corn-)           | TERMINATIONS |       |
|      |               |                              |                        | MASC.        | NEUT. |
| NOM. | adventus      | cornū                        | -us                    | -ū           |       |
| GEN. | adventūs      | cornūs                       | -ūs                    | -ūs          |       |
| DAT. | adventui (-ū) | cornū                        | -ui (-ū)               | -ū           |       |
| ACC. | adventum      | cornū                        | -um                    | -ū           |       |
| ABL. | adventū       | cornū                        | -ū                     | -ū           |       |
|      |               |                              |                        |              |       |
| NOM. | adventūs      | cornua                       | -ūs                    | -ua          |       |
| GEN. | adventuum     | cornuum                      | -uum                   | -uum         |       |
| DAT. | adventibus    | cornibus                     | -ibus                  | -ibus        |       |
| ACC. | adventūs      | cornua                       | -ūs                    | -ua          |       |
| ABL. | adventibus    | cornibus                     | -ibus                  | -ibus        |       |

**a.** The base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

**b.** **Cornū** is the only neuter in common use.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the Jesuits.

**EXERCISES**

First learn the special vocabulary, page 374

• **478.** 1. Ante adventum Caesaris equitātus hostium magnā celeritāte ācerrimum impetum in castra fēcit. 2. Continēre exercitum ā proeliō difficile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit lēgiōnēs ex castris ēdūci. 4. Ā dextrō cornū equitātum Rōmānū sinistrō cornū equitātum sociōrum posuit. 5. Signō datō, proelium commissum est. 6. Diū et ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est.<sup>1</sup> 7. Dēnique multis<sup>2</sup> interfectis et vulnerātis, hostēs fugere incēpērunt ad castra quae trāns flūmen posita erant. 8. Eā victōriā cognitā, civitatēs proximae, primum minōrēs, deinde eae quae plūrimum poterant, pācem petiērunt.

1. See § 259, note 3. 2. Adjective used as a noun, ablative absolute.

**479.** 1. After Cæsar's arrival<sup>1</sup> was known, the cavalry fought well. 2. First on the right wing, then on the left, the signal was given. 3. The swiftness of our attack terrified the army most of all. 4. Lesbia remained a little<sup>2</sup> longer,<sup>3</sup> because she was expecting her sister. 5. The farmer held the animal by the horn. 6. He very easily led it to the shore.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Ablative of measure of difference. 3. Why not *longius*?



**OFFERING A SACRIFICE**

## LESSON LXXIV

In lūmine tuō vidēbimus lūmen — In thy light we shall see light<sup>1</sup>

### EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

**480. Regular Expressions of Place.** The place *to which*, the place *from which*, and the place *at or in which* are regularly expressed by prepositions with their proper cases. From this general principle we deduce the following rules :

**481. Rule for Accusative of Place to Which.** *The place to which is expressed by ad or in with the accusative, and answers the question Whither?*

Galba ad casam properat, Galba hastens to his cottage

**482. Rule for Ablative of Place from Which.** *The place from which is expressed by ā or ab, dē, ē or ex, with the ablative, and answers the question Whence?* (Cf. § 295.)

Galba ā casā properat, Galba hastens from his cottage

**483. Rule for Ablative of Place at or in Which.**<sup>2</sup> *The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with in, and answers the question Where?*

Galba in casā habitat, Galba lives in his cottage

**484. Important Exceptions.** Names of towns and small islands, domus, home,<sup>3</sup> and rūs, country, omit the preposition in expressions of place.

Galba Athēnās properat, Galba hastens to Athens

Galba Athēnīs properat, Galba hastens from Athens

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Columbia University.

<sup>2</sup> This is often called the locative ablative (from locūs, place).

<sup>3</sup> When domus means house, the preposition is used.

Galba Athēnis habitat, *Galba lives at (or in) Athens*

Galba domum properat, *Galba hastens home*

Galba rūs properat, *Galba hastens to the country*

Galba domō properat, *Galba hastens from home*

Galba rūre properat, *Galba hastens from the country*

a. Names of *countries*, like *Germānia*, *Italia*, etc., do not come under these exceptions. With them prepositions must be used.

**485. Locative Case.** Names of towns and small islands that are singular and belong to the first or second declension express the place *at which* by the so-called *locative* case. This is like the genitive singular in form. Other locatives are *domi*,<sup>1</sup> *at home*, and *rūrī*, *in the country*.

Galba Rōmae habitat, *Galba lives at Rome*

Galba Corinthī habitat, *Galba lives at Corinth*

Galba domī habitat, *Galba lives at home*

Galba rūrī habitat, *Galba lives in the country*

a. When the name of the town is *plural*, there is no special locative form and the ablative must be used (§ 483).

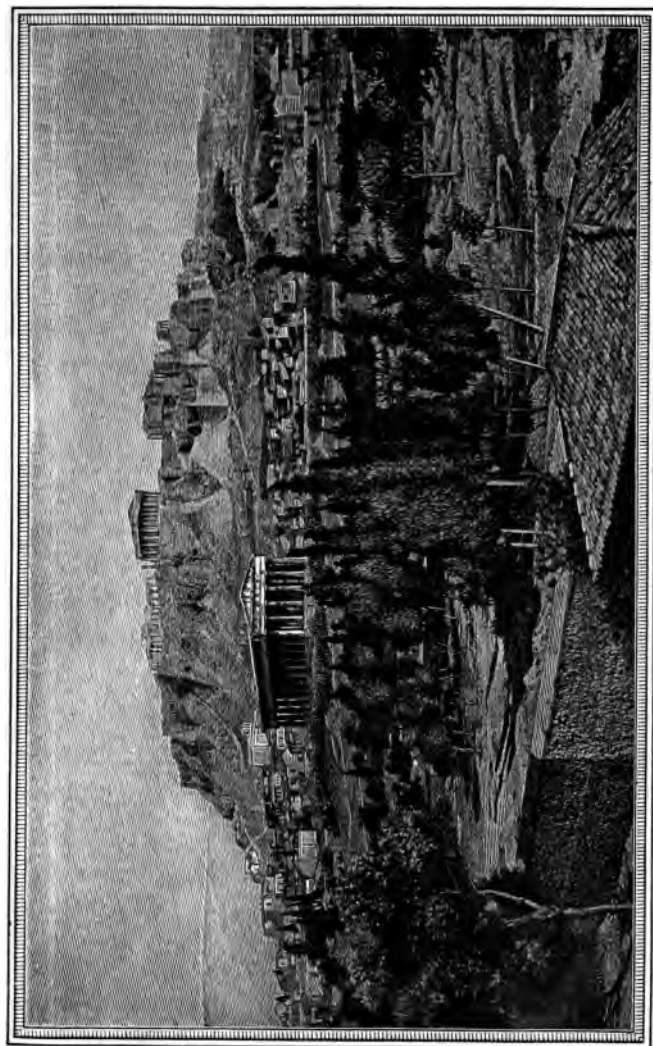
Galba Athēnis habitat, *Galba lives at Athens*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 375

**486.** 1. Num<sup>1</sup> frāter tuus iter in Galliam cum exercitū Caesaris fēcit? 2. Minimē. Frāter meus domī mānsit. 3. Ubi est domus tua? 4. Anteā rūrī habitābāmus, nunc in urbe domum habēmus. 5. Habitāsne Rōmae? 6. Nōn Rōmae sed Athēnis<sup>2</sup> habitō, quae urbs est in Graeciā. Mox ab Italiā nāvīgābō et domum celerrimē contendam. Nōne cupis Athēnās, urbem Minervae, nāvīgāre? 7. Cupiō, sed nōn possum. Officia pública mē<sup>3</sup> prohibent. Meliōra tempora exspectō.

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of *domus* see § 813.



ATHĒNAE, URBS MINERVAE



**Tum** in nāvem ascendam atque primum Athēnās, deinde ad reliquās urbēs clārās, quae magnō spatiō absunt, contendam.

1. See § 251. 2. *Athēnae*, -ārum, F., *Athens*. 3. *Me*.

**487.** 1. The cavalry was on the right wing, the infantry on the left. 2. Ambassadors of the king hastened to Rome and thanked<sup>1</sup> the consul. 3. In the country we saw an ample supply of grain. 4. The men who were the most powerful remained at Rome. 5. They were waiting for the arrival of a ship. 6. When an attack<sup>2</sup> had been made on the city, the consul fled from Rome into the country.

1. *grātiās agere*, followed by the dative. 2. Ablative absolute.

## LESSON LXXV

Rēgnant populī — The peoples rule<sup>1</sup>

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

**488. Fifth Declension.** Nouns that end in -ēī in the genitive singular are of the Fifth Declension. The nominative singular ends in -ēs.

**489.** Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine.

**490.** Nouns of the fifth declension are declined as follows :

|      | diēs (base di-), M., <i>day</i> |        | rēs (base r-), F., <i>thing</i> |       | TERMINATIONS |       |
|------|---------------------------------|--------|---------------------------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| NOM. | diēs                            | diēs   | rēs                             | rēs   | -ēs          | -ēs   |
| GEN. | diēī                            | diērum | rei                             | rērum | -ēī          | -ērum |
| DAT. | diēī                            | diēbus | rei                             | rēbus | -ēī          | -ēbus |
| ACC. | diem                            | diēs   | rem                             | rēs   | -em          | -ēs   |
| ABL. | diē                             | diēbus | rē                              | rēbus | -ē           | -ēbus |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Arkansas.

*a.* The vowel *e* which appears in every form is regularly long. But it is shortened in the ending *-ei* after a consonant, as in *rēi*; and before *-m* in the accusative singular, as in *diem*. (Cf. § 194. 2.)

*b.* Only *diēs* and *rēs* are declined throughout. Other nouns of this declension lack all or a part of the plural.

*c.* What do the abbreviations A. M. and P. M. stand for? (Cf. p. 383.)

**491. Declension shown by Genitive.** The key to the declension of a noun is the ending of its genitive singular. Review the five distinctive genitive endings given below.

| DECLENSION | GENITIVE ENDING |
|------------|-----------------|
| I          | -ae             |
| II         | -i              |
| III        | -is             |
| IV         | -ūs             |
| V          | -ēi             |

**492. Ablative of Time When.** The ablative relation of *at*, *in*, or *on* (§ 65) may refer to *time* as well as to *place*: as, *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative expressing this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

**493. Rule for Ablative of Time When.** *The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

*a.* Occasionally the preposition *in* is found. Compare the English *The next day we started* and *On the next day we started*.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 375

- 494.** 1. Hieme diēs sunt multō breviorēs quam aestāte.  
 2. Primā lūce agricolae labōrāre incēpērunt. 3. Populus oppidum nocte reliquit quod diūtius manēre timuit. 4. Hieme Rōmae habitāmus, aestāte rūri. 5. Omnēs rēs quās hominēs

pessimi fēcerant clāriōrēs erant quam lūx. 6. Proximō<sup>1</sup> annō in Italiā domi eram. 7. Eis rēbus cognitis, omnēs paulō ācrius contendere incēpērunt. 8. Dux iussit legiōnem primam mediā nocte discēdere. 9. Eō diē vidimus multōs ignēs qui agrōs hostium vāstābant. 10. Ignēs magnō spatiō aberant.

1. *Last*. It may also mean *next* if the sense demands that translation.

495. 1. Galba, who lives in the country, is a remarkable example of industry. 2. For he begins to work at daylight. 3. Neither does he leave the fields before night. 4. In summer he works longer<sup>1</sup> than in winter. 5. But even at that time many things claim<sup>2</sup> his attention. 6. And he does not often sit<sup>3</sup> idly at home.

1. Not longius. 2. *animum tenēre*, *claim attention*. 3. *sedēre*, *sit idly*.

## LESSON LXXVI

Est modus in rēbus — There is a proper measure in things<sup>1</sup>

### GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION · WORD FORMATION

496. **Gender in Third Declension.** In all the declensions except the third the gender of nouns is easy to determine. In the third, however, the rules for gender are numerous and present many exceptions. The subject has therefore been postponed to prevent confusion during the learning of the case forms. We take it up at this point, confining it to a few rules that are of great practical service and have few exceptions.

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the great lyric poet. The sentiment teaches the value of the golden mean. One of the sayings of one of the seven sages of Greece was, "Nothing too much." The Latin equivalent, *nē quid nimis*, quoted from Terence, will be found on the title-page of this book.

**a. Masculine** are most nouns in **-or** and **-es** (genitive **-itis**).

**b. Feminine** are most nouns in **-dō, -iō, -tās, -ūs**, and in **-s** preceded by a consonant.

(1) Exception : masculine are

**dēns**, a tooth, and **mōns**, a mountain,  
**pōns**, a bridge, and **fōns**, a fountain.

**c. Neuter** are most nouns in **-e, -al, -ar, -n, -ūs**.

**497. Word Formation.** To the prefixes that you have learned (**ā, ab, ad, con-, dē, ē, ex, in, in-, prō, re-, trāns**) we now add four more : **inter, per, prae, and sub**. Two of these, **inter** and **per**, you have already learned as prepositions.

**a. Inter**, *between* or *among*, also used as a preposition with the accusative : as, **intermittō**, *send between* or *among*, hence *interrupt*, *suspend*; English derivatives, *intermission*, *intermittent*; **intericiō** (**inter** + **iaciō**, *throw*), *throw between*; English derivatives, *interject*, *interjection*, etc.

**b. Per**, *through*, also used as a preposition with the accusative : as, **permittō**, *send through*, hence *give leave*, *permit*; English derivatives, *permission*, *permissible*, etc. As a prefix **per** often has the force of *through and through, thoroughly* : as, **terreō**, *frighten*; **perterreō**, *frighten thoroughly*; **moveō**, *permovēō*; etc.

**c. Prae**, *before*, also used as a preposition with the ablative, but more common as a prefix : as, **praemittō**, *send ahead*. In English this prefix usually appears as *pre-*, as in the word *prefix* itself, which means to *fix* or *fasten before* or *in front*. Compare also such words as *predict* (**prae** + **dicō**), *prepare* (**prae** + **parō**), *precede* (**prae** + **cēdō**, *move*), *preoccupy* (**prae** + **occupō**), etc.

**d. Sub**, *under*, also used as a preposition, generally with the ablative : as, **submittō**, *send under*, hence *yield*, *submit*; English derivatives, *submission*, *submissive*, etc. The prefix also takes the form *suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, and sus-*, as in *suc-cumb*, *suf-fer*, *sug-gest*, *sup-port*, *sus-tain*. Look up these words in the English dictionary and note the force of the prefix and the meaning of the root word.

EXERCISES

**498. Derivation.** What should you judge to be the meaning of *inter + veniō*, *per + veniō*, *prae + veniō*, *sub + veniō*?

**499. Derivation.** With *veniō* as the root word, write a list of twenty-five English derivatives, using prefixes and suffixes, and define each derivative.

**500.** With the aid of the rules in § 496 give the gender of the following nouns:

|              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>mare</i>  | <i>aestās</i> | <i>animal</i> |
| <i>mors</i>  | <i>nōmen</i>  | <i>legiō</i>  |
| <i>pedes</i> | <i>virtūs</i> | <i>corpus</i> |

**501.** Give the rules for gender in the five declensions. See §§ 86, 97, 496, 476, 489.

LESSON LXXVII

*Nōn omnia possumus omnēs*—We cannot all do all things<sup>1</sup>

THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

**502.** Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in *-ius* and the dative in *-i* in all genders. The rest of the singular and all the plural forms are regular. Learn the meaning of each:

|                                                            |                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>alius, alia, aliud, other, another</i> (of several)     | <i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone</i>                                   |
| <i>alter, altera, alterum, the one, the other</i> (of two) | <i>tōtus, -a, -um, all, whole, entire</i>                      |
| <i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither</i> (of two)           | <i>ūllus, -a, -um, any</i>                                     |
| <i>nūllus, -a, -um, none, no</i>                           | <i>ūnus, -a, -um, one, alone</i> ; (in the plural) <i>only</i> |
|                                                            | <i>uter, utra, utrum, which?</i> (of two)                      |

<sup>1</sup> From Lucilius, a famous writer of Latin satire.

503. Declension of *nūllus* and *alius*.

|      | MASC.    | FEM.     | NEUT.    | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
|------|----------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|
| NOM. | nūllus   | nūlla    | nūllum   | alius  | alia   | aliud  |
| GEN. | nūlli'us | nūlli'us | nūlli'us | ali'us | ali'us | ali'us |
| DAT. | nūlli    | nūlli    | nūlli    | aliī   | aliī   | aliī   |
| ACC. | nūllum   | nūllam   | nūllum   | aliū   | aliā   | aliud  |
| ABL. | nūllō    | nūllā    | nūllō    | aliō   | aliā   | aliō   |

The plural is regular.

504. *Alius* and *alter* are frequently used in pairs as follows :

*alius . . . alius, one . . . another*

*alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*

*aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others*

*alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other party*

*alter iubet, alter pāret, the one commands, the other obeys*

*aliī terram, aliī aquam amant, some love the land, others the water*

505. *Alius* repeated in another case expresses briefly a double statement.

*alius aliud petit, one seeks one thing, another another* (literally, *another seeks another thing*)

*aliī aliam urbem occupant, some seize one city, others another* (literally, *others seize another city*)

## EXERCISES

506. 1. Utra domus est Caesaris? Neutra domus est Caesaris.  
 2. Ea civitās nec ūlli lēgī<sup>1</sup> nec ūlli imperiō<sup>1</sup> pārebit. 3. Exercitus duo cornua habet; alterum appellātur dextrum, alterum sinistrum. 4. Alii aliās rēs portābant. 5. Alii hieme, aliī aestāte ācrius labōrant. 6. Gallī sōli impetum eōrum prohibēre nōn poterant. 7. Alius aliam rem spectāvit. 8. Alii equī sunt celerēs, aliī tardī. 9. Omnia in ūnō locō locāta erant.

1. Why dative? See § 224.

507. 1. Some horses are slower than others. 2. The king had seized the sovereignty of the entire island. 3. Some live on one street, others on another. 4. At night we could see many fires; some were large, others small. 5. At daylight neither commander was at home. 6. At no time of the year have I seen any ships in that sea. 7. You can make that journey without any danger.

## LESSON LXXVIII

Nec tēcum possum vivere, nec sine tē—I can live neither with you nor without you<sup>1</sup>

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS · PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE  
PRONOUNS

508. **Classes of Pronouns.** The classes of pronouns are the same in Latin as in English.

**a. Personal pronouns**, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of: as, *ego, I; tū, you*. (Cf. § 509.)

**b. Possessive pronouns**, which denote possession: as, *meus, my; tuus, your; suus, his, her, its, their*; etc. (Cf. § 133.)

**c. Reflexive pronouns**, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject: as, *sē vidit, he saw himself*. (Cf. § 511.)

**d. Intensive pronouns**, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun: as, *ipse id vidī, I myself saw it*. (Cf. § 516.)

**e. Demonstrative pronouns**, which point out persons or things: as, *is, this, that*. (Cf. § 203.)

**f. Relative pronouns**, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent: as, *quī, who*. (Cf. § 386.)

**g. Interrogative pronouns**, which ask a question: as, *quis? who?* (Cf. § 394.)

**h. Indefinite pronouns**, which point out indefinitely: as, *aliquis, someone, anyone; quidam, some, certain ones*; etc. (Cf. § 528.)

<sup>1</sup> From Martial, a Roman poet, famous for his epigrams.

**509. Personal Pronouns.** The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego, I*, and *nōs, we*; of the second person, *tū, thou* or *you*, and *vōs, ye* or *you*. They are declined as follows :

| SINGULAR |                                    |                                     |
|----------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|          | FIRST PERSON                       | SECOND PERSON                       |
| NOM.     | <i>ego, I</i>                      | <i>tū, you</i>                      |
| GEN.     | <i>mei, of me</i>                  | <i>tui, of you</i>                  |
| DAT.     | <i>mihi, to or for me</i>          | <i>tibi, to or for you</i>          |
| ACC.     | <i>mē, me</i>                      | <i>tē, you</i>                      |
| ABL.     | <i>mē, with, from, etc., me</i>    | <i>tē, with, from, etc., you</i>    |
| PLURAL   |                                    |                                     |
| NOM.     | <i>nōs, we</i>                     | <i>vōs, you</i>                     |
| GEN.     | <i>nostrum or nostri, of us</i>    | <i>vestrum or vestri, of you</i>    |
| DAT.     | <i>nōbīs, to or for us</i>         | <i>vōbīs, to or for you</i>         |
| ACC.     | <i>nōs, us</i>                     | <i>vōs, you</i>                     |
| ABL.     | <i>nōbīs, with, from, etc., us</i> | <i>vōbīs, with, from, etc., you</i> |

a. The nominatives, *ego, tū, nōs, vōs*, are used only to express emphasis or contrast.

**510.** The personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, they, etc.*) is regularly expressed by the demonstrative pronoun *is, ea, id* (§ 205).

**511. Reflexive Pronouns.** The reflexives of the first person (*myself, ourselves*) and of the second person (*yourself, yourselves*) are expressed by the forms of *ego* and *tū* : as,

|                                   |                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>vidēo mē, I see myself</i>     | <i>vidēmus nōs, we see ourselves</i>   |
| <i>vidēs tē, you see yourself</i> | <i>vidētis vōs, you see yourselves</i> |

**512.** The reflexive pronoun of the third person (*himself, herself, itself, themselves*) has a special form, declined alike in the singular and plural.

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL

|      |                                                                           |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NOM. | lacking                                                                   |
| GEN. | <i>suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>                       |
| DAT. | <i>sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>               |
| ACC. | <i>sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves</i>                   |
| ABL. | <i>sē or sēsē, with, from, etc., himself, herself, itself, themselves</i> |

## EXAMPLES

*Puer sē videt, the boy sees himself*

*Puella sē videt, the girl sees herself*

*Animal sē videt, the animal sees itself*

*II sē vident, they see themselves*

**513. Enclitic Use of *cum*.** The preposition *cum*, when used with the ablatives *mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs*, is joined to them : as, *mēcum, with me*; *nōbīs'cum, with us*; etc. *Cum* is likewise joined to *quō, quā*, and *quibus*, the ablative forms of the relative and interrogative : as,

*Vir quōcum puer venit, the man with whom the boy is coming*

*Quibuscum bellum gerunt, with whom do they carry on war?*

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 375

**514. 1.** *Mea patria est mihi nōta, et tua patria est tibi nōta.*  
**2.** *Vestri amīci sunt nōbīs grātī, et nostri amīci sunt vōbīs grātī.*  
**3.** *Lēgātī pācem amīcitiāque sibi et sociīs suīs petiērunt.* **4.** *Si tū<sup>1</sup> arma capiēs, ego<sup>1</sup> rēgnum tuum occupābō.* **5.** *Uter vestrum est civis Rōmānus? Neuter nostrum.* **6.** *Quibus<sup>2</sup> rēbus cognitīs, multī sēsē in fugam dedērunt.* **7.** *Timōre servitūtis commōtae, multae mulierēs sēsē interfēcērunt.* **8.** *Quōcum imperātor iter faciet? Mēcum.*

**1.** Personal pronouns in the nominative are emphatic. **2. These.** The relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence with the force of a demonstrative.

515. 1. You cannot see yourself. 2. The queen is pleasing to herself, but not to her kingdom. 3. The general, alarmed by your arrival, fled.<sup>1</sup> 4. You will suffer<sup>2</sup> punishment on that day, but not I.<sup>3</sup> 5. Many things alarmed us, but most of all the fear of the cavalry.

1. Latin, *gave himself into flight*. 2. Latin, *give*. 3. The pronouns *you* and *I*, being emphatic, must be expressed.

## LESSON LXXIX

Nīl sine magnō vīta labōre dedit mortālībus—Life has given nothing to mortals without great labor<sup>1</sup>

### THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* • THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN *ĪDEM*

516. Intensive Pronoun *ipse*. The intensive *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, is used both as a pronoun and as an adjective. It is usually an adjective and emphasizes the noun or pronoun with which it agrees, and is translated *himself, herself, itself, myself, yourself*, etc.: as,

Homō ipse venit, *the man himself is coming*

Puella ipsa venit, *the girl herself is coming*

Puerī ipsī veniunt, *the boys themselves are coming*

Ego ipse veniō, *I myself am coming*

a. In English the pronouns *himself* etc. are used both intensively (as, *Galba will come himself*) and reflexively (as, *Galba will kill himself*); in Latin the former would be translated by the adjective *ipse*, the latter by the pronoun *sē*:

Galba ipse veniet

Galba sē interficiet

b. *Ipse* is sometimes translated by *very*: as, *eō ipsō diē, on that very day*.

<sup>1</sup> From Horace.

517. The intensive pronoun *ipse* is declined like the nine irregular adjectives (§ 502).

|      | MASC.          | FEM.           | NEUT.          | MASC.          | FEM.           | NEUT.          |
|------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>ipse</i>    | <i>ipsa</i>    | <i>ipsum</i>   | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipsae</i>   | <i>ipsa</i>    |
| GEN. | <i>ipsi'us</i> | <i>ipsi'us</i> | <i>ipsi'us</i> | <i>ipsōrum</i> | <i>ipsārum</i> | <i>ipsōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipsi</i>    | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>ipsum</i>   | <i>ipsam</i>   | <i>ipsum</i>   | <i>ipsōs</i>   | <i>ipsās</i>   | <i>ipsa</i>    |
| ABL. | <i>ipsō</i>    | <i>ipsā</i>    | <i>ipsō</i>    | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   | <i>ipsis</i>   |

518. Demonstrative Pronoun *idem*. The demonstrative pronoun *idem*, *the same*, is a compound of *is*, and is declined as follows :

|      | MASC.                            | FEM.                             | NEUT.                            |
|------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| NOM. | <i>idem</i>                      | <i>e'adem</i>                    | <i>idem</i>                      |
| GEN. | <i>eius'dem</i>                  | <i>eius'dem</i>                  | <i>eius'dem</i>                  |
| DAT. | <i>ei'dem</i>                    | <i>ei'dem</i>                    | <i>ei'dem</i>                    |
| ACC. | <i>eun'dem</i>                   | <i>ean'dem</i>                   | <i>idem</i>                      |
| ABL. | <i>eō'dem</i>                    | <i>eā'dem</i>                    | <i>eō'dem</i>                    |
| NOM. | <i>ii'dem</i><br><i>ei'dem</i>   | <i>eae'dem</i>                   | <i>e'adem</i>                    |
| GEN. | <i>eōrun'dem</i>                 | <i>eārun'dem</i>                 | <i>eōrun'dem</i>                 |
| DAT. | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> |
| ACC. | <i>eōs'dem</i>                   | <i>eās'dem</i>                   | <i>e'adem</i>                    |
| ABL. | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> | <i>iis'dem</i><br><i>eis'dem</i> |

a. The forms *iidem* and *iiedem* are often spelled and pronounced with one *i*.

b. The demonstrative *idem* is used both as a noun and as an adjective.

c. *Īdem* is sometimes best rendered *also, at the same time*: *as idem dixi, I also said.*

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

519. 1. Ego et tū<sup>1</sup> eandem urbem incolimus. 2. Iter ipsum nōn timēmus, sed aliīs rēbus commōti sumus. 3. Ōlim nōs ipsi idem iter fēcimus, sed aliō tempore annī. 4. Rōmānī in maximam spem adventū imperātōris adducti erant. 5. Iam tōtam spem salūtis dēposuērunt, quod pars exercitūs capta est et imperātor ipse est in manibus hostium. 6. Tamen vōs ipsi eōsdem saepissimē vicistis. 7. Imperātor suā manū filiam servāvit, sed sē ipse<sup>2</sup> servāre nōn potuit.

1. Latin says *I and you*, not *you and I*. 2. The intensive **ipse** here agrees with the subject, though in English the emphasis falls on the predicate.

520. 1. The general himself gave a part of the army the right of way through the same kingdom. 2. After all hope<sup>1</sup> of safety was left behind, the citizens themselves laid down their arms. 3. The same great fear seized<sup>2</sup> the hearts of all.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. **occupō, -āre**.

## LESSON LXXX

Nōn sibi, sed suis—Not for herself, but for her own<sup>1</sup>

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

521. Use of *hic, iste, and ille*. The demonstrative pronoun **is, ea, id**, makes no definite reference to place or time (§ 203); but **hic** (*this, he*) refers to a person or thing near the speaker, **iste** (*that, he*) to a person or thing near the person addressed, and **ille** (*that, he*) to a person or thing remote from both.

*Amāsne hunc equum, do you like this horse (of mine)?*

*Istum equum amō, sed illum equum nōn amō, I like that horse (of yours), but that horse (yonder) I don't like*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Tulane University.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE* 191

**522.** The demonstratives *hic*, *iste*, and *ille* are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. When used as adjectives, they regularly precede their nouns.

**523.** Declension of *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*. *Hic* is declined as follows :

|      | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| NOM. | <i>hic</i>   | <i>haec</i>  | <i>hoc</i>   | <i>hī</i>    | <i>hae</i>   | <i>haec</i>  |
| GEN. | <i>huius</i> | <i>huius</i> | <i>huius</i> | <i>hōrum</i> | <i>hārum</i> | <i>hōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>huic</i>  | <i>huic</i>  | <i>huic</i>  | <i>his</i>   | <i>his</i>   | <i>his</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>hunc</i>  | <i>hanc</i>  | <i>hoc</i>   | <i>hōs</i>   | <i>hās</i>   | <i>haec</i>  |
| ABL. | <i>hōc</i>   | <i>hāc</i>   | <i>hōc</i>   | <i>his</i>   | <i>his</i>   | <i>his</i>   |

*a. Huius* is pronounced *hoo'yōōs*, and *huic* is pronounced *hweek* (one syllable).

**524.** The demonstrative pronouns *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, and *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms *istud* and *illud*, are declined like *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*. (See § 517.)

### A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN ADDRESSES HIS FOLLOWERS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

**525.** *Ille fortis Gallōrum princeps suōs convocāvit et hōc modō<sup>1</sup> animōs eōrum cōfirmāvit: "Vōs, quī hōs finēs incolitis, in hunc locum convocāvi,<sup>2</sup> quod mēcum dēbētis istōs agrōs atque istās domōs ā manibus Rōmānis liberāre. Hoc nōbīs nōn difficile erit, quod illi hostēs hās silvās, hōs montēs 5 timent. Si fortēs erimus, deī ipsī nōbīs viam salūtis dēmōnstrābunt. Itaque dēpōnite istum timōrem. Magnam spem victōriāe habēō. Iam magnam partem exercitūs Rōmāni superāvimus."*<sup>2</sup>

1. Ablative of manner. 2. Translate by the present perfect

**526.** 1. Is that spear (of yours<sup>1</sup>) heavy? No, this spear (of mine<sup>1</sup>) is light. 2. That spear of Mark's is much longer than mine. 3. You ought to show us the road that leads across this mountain. 4. That road which extends through our territory is much shorter. 5. The very manner of life of those savages is not the same.

1. English words in parentheses are not to be translated.

## LESSON LXXXI

Labor omnia vincit—Labor conquers all things<sup>1</sup>

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**527.** Indefinite pronouns do not, like demonstratives, point out definite persons or things, but refer to them indefinitely: as, *someone, anyone, something, some, any*.

**528.** Indefinite pronouns, like demonstratives, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. The simple indefinite pronoun is *quis, someone, anyone*, and the indefinite adjective is *qui, quae, quod, some, any*.<sup>2</sup> Far more common are the compounds *aliquis, someone; quisque, each one*; and *quidam, a certain one*. The forms of these indefinites are as follows:

1. Substantive forms:

| MASC. AND FEM.                     |                                 | NEUT.                                  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>aliquis, someone, anyone</i>    |                                 | <i>aliquid, something, anything</i>    |
| <i>quisque, each one, everyone</i> |                                 | <i>quidque, each thing, everything</i> |
| MASC.                              | FEM.                            | NEUT.                                  |
| <i>quidam, a certain man</i>       | <i>quaedam, a certain woman</i> | <i>quiddam, a certain thing</i>        |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Oklahoma.

<sup>2</sup> The indefinites *quis* and *qui* are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives (§§ 394, 395).

## 2. Adjective forms :

| MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.                     |
|---------|---------|---------------------------|
| aliqui  | aliqua  | aliquod, <i>any</i>       |
| quisque | quaeque | quodque, <i>each</i>      |
| quidam  | quaedam | quoddam, <i>a certain</i> |

**529. Declension of Indefinites.** Indefinites are declined, in general, like the interrogatives **quis** and **qui**. An **m** coming before a **d** is changed to **n** : as, **quendam**, not **quemdam**.<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 376

**530.** 1. Hōc proeliō factō, Galli suam quisque<sup>1</sup> domum properāvērunt. 2. Quidam hominēs, quī amici illius rēgis existimābantur, ab imperātōre retenti sunt. 3. Est in vitā cuiusque aliqua adversa (*ill*) fortūna. 4. Aliquis debet tibi viam dēmōnstrāre. 5. Quisque nostrum illi fortī militi aliquid dare debet. 6. Ego quendam rūri vidi quī per illōs finēs iter fecerat.

1. In apposition with **Galli**.

**531.** 1. If you see a certain Quintus at Rome, send him to me. 2. Even I said something to someone. 3. Some who were considered very brave did not retain their arms. 4. Each citizen ought to uphold the state and obey the laws.<sup>1</sup> 5. Certain cities are considered equal to Rome itself.

1. Dative, § 224.

## Tenth Review. Lessons LXXIII-LXXXI, §§ 783-787

<sup>1</sup> The declension of the indefinites is given in § 831, but demands little special study.

## LESSON LXXXII

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae — As many men, so many minds<sup>1</sup>

### CARDINAL NUMERALS AND THEIR DECLENSION

**532. Cardinal Numerals.** Cardinal numerals answer the question *How many?* The first twelve cardinals are as follows:<sup>2</sup>

|             |            |              |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1, ūnus     | 5, quinque | 9, novem     |
| 2, duo      | 6, sex     | 10, decem    |
| 3, trēs     | 7, septem  | 11, ūndecim  |
| 4, quattuor | 8, octō    | 12, duodecim |

*a.* The word for 100 is *centum*; for 200, *ducenti*; for 1000, *mille*.

**533. Declension of Cardinals.** Of the cardinals, only *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* used as a noun, are declined.

**534. Ūnus, one,** is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like *nūllus* (§ 503).

**535.** Learn the declension of *duo*, *two*, and of *trēs*, *three*. See § 824.

**536. Mille, thousand,** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and is declined like the plural of *mare*:

|      |                |
|------|----------------|
| NOM. | <b>milia</b>   |
| GEN. | <b>milium</b>  |
| DAT. | <b>milibus</b> |
| ACC. | <b>milia</b>   |
| ABL. | <b>milibus</b> |

<sup>1</sup> From Terence, the famous writer of comedies. The motto means that every man has his opinion.

<sup>2</sup> A fuller table of numerals is given in § 823.

**537. Ducenti**, *two hundred*, and other hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of **bonus**: as,

|            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| ducenti    | ducentae   | ducenta    |
| ducentōrum | ducentārum | ducentōrum |
| ducentis   | ducentis   | ducentis   |
| etc.       | etc.       | etc.       |

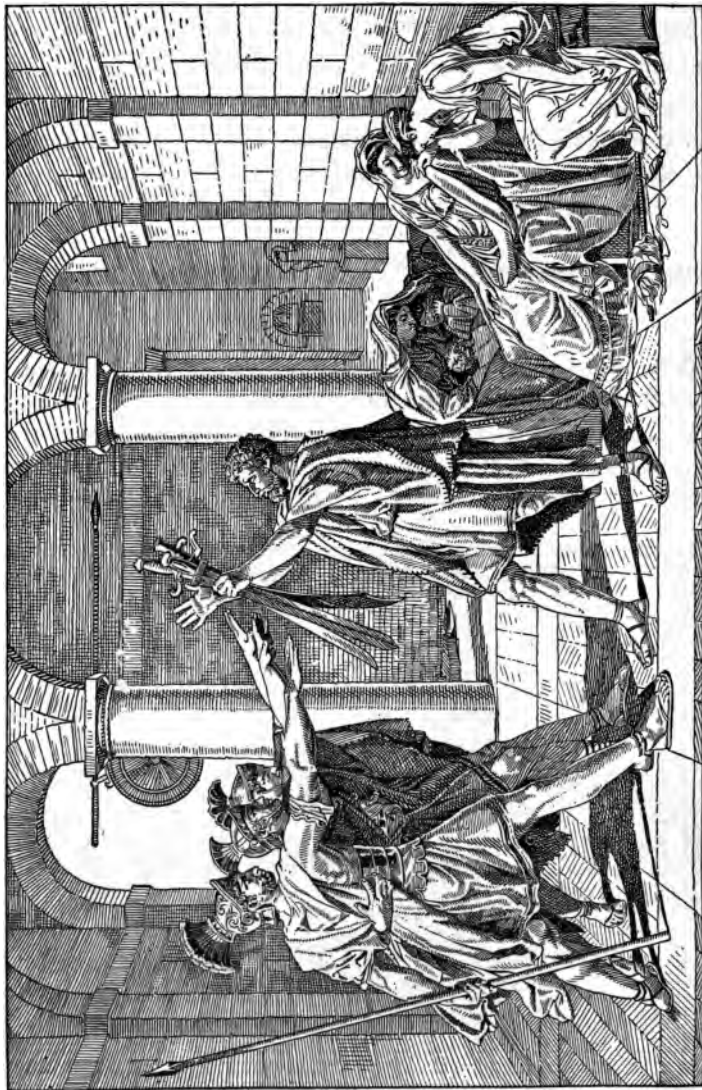
### THE CONTEST OF THE HORATII AND THE CURIATII

Try to translate this at sight

**538.** Ōlim Rōmānī cum Albānīs<sup>1</sup> bellum gerēbant. Erant in duōbus exercitibus trigeminī<sup>2</sup> frātrēs, trēs Horātīi in exercitū Rōmānō, trēs Curiātīi in exercitū Albānō. Ducibus convocātis, quīdam ex eis dixit: "Cūr omnēs nōs pugnāmus? Melius est paucōs<sup>3</sup> prō omnibus contendere et reliquōs<sup>3</sup> esse 5



SO-CALLED TOMB OF THE HORATHI AND CURIATHI

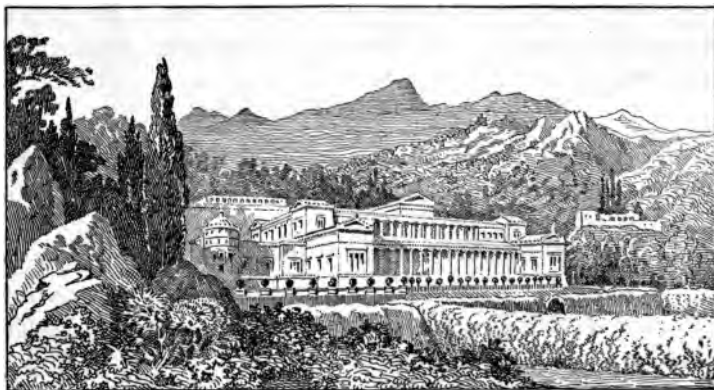


PATER IPSE TRIBUS FILIIS ARMA NOVA DEDIT

integrōs. Cūr nōn iubēmus trēs Horātiōs cum tribus Curiātiis pugnāre et hōc modō bellum diiudicāmus<sup>4</sup>?" Hōc cōnsiliō omnibus<sup>5</sup> persuāsit, et pater ipse Horātiōrum filiis fortibus suis nova arma dedit.

Et Horātii et Curiatii certāmini<sup>6</sup> studēbant et manūs cōn- 10  
seruērunt.<sup>7</sup> Primō impetū trēs Albānī ā tribus Rōmānis vulnerāti sunt, duo Rōmānī ā tribus Albānis interfecti sunt, ūnus Rōmānus integer erat. Iam tōtus Albānōrum exercitus certam victōriam exspectābat. Rōmānus autem fugam simulāvit<sup>8</sup> et illō modō trēs vulnerātōs Albānōs sēparāvit.<sup>9</sup> 15  
Tum subitō<sup>10</sup> revertit<sup>11</sup> et singulōs<sup>12</sup> superāvit atque interfēcit. Postea Rōmānī in<sup>13</sup> Albānōs multōs annōs<sup>14</sup> imperium tenēbant.

1. Albānī, -ōrum, *the Albans*, who lived near Rome. 2. *Triplet*.  
3. paucōs is the subject accusative of contendere, and reliquōs of esse. The infinitive clauses are the subjects of est. 4. diiudicō, -āre, *decide*.  
5. Why dative? See § 224. 6. certāmen, -inis, n., *contest*. 7. manūs cōnseruērunt, *joined in a hand-to-hand struggle*. 8. simulō, -āre, *pretend*.  
9. sēparō, -āre, *separate*. 10. Suddenly. 11. revertō, -ere, *turn back*.  
12. singulī, *one at a time*. 13. Over. 14. multōs annōs, *for many years*.



VILLA OF A WEALTHY ROMAN

## LESSON LXXXIII

Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem—With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom<sup>1</sup>

### ORDINAL NUMERALS · THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE, OR THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

**539. Ordinal Numerals.** Ordinal numerals answer the question *In what order?* The first twelve are as follows :

*first*, primus, -a, -um  
*second*, secundus, -a, -um  
*third*, tertius, -a, -um  
*fourth*, quārtus, -a, -um  
*fifth*, quintus, -a, -um  
*sixth*, sextus, -a, -um

*seventh*, septimus, -a, -um  
*eighth*, octā'vus, -a, -um  
*ninth*, nōnus, -a, -um  
*tenth*, decimus, -a, -um  
*eleventh*, undecimus, -a, -um  
*twelfth*, duodecimus, -a, -um

The ordinals are all declined like **bonus**.

**540. Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.** In the sentence *Of all these the Belgæ are the bravest*, the phrase *of all these* represents the whole number of whom the Belgæ are the bravest part. This sentence is expressed similarly in Latin : as,

**Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgæ**

and the genitive **hōrum omnium** is called the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive.

**541. Rule for Genitive of the Whole.** *A genitive denoting the whole is used with words denoting a part, and is known as the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Massachusetts.

**542.** *Mille*, singular, is an indeclinable adjective: as, *mille militēs*, *a thousand soldiers*. *Milia*, plural, is a neuter noun, and is followed by the genitive: as, *decem milia militum*, *ten thousand soldiers* (literally, *ten thousands of soldiers*).

**543.** Cardinal numbers, except *milia*, are followed by the ablative with *ex* or *dē*, instead of the genitive: as, *ūnus ex pueris*, *one of the boys*.

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

**544.** *Annus quattuor tempora*<sup>1</sup> *et duodecim mēnsēs*<sup>2</sup> *continet*. *Aestās est omnium temporum grātissimum*. *Nunc mēnsis primus annī est Iānuārius, sed antiquis*<sup>3</sup> *temporibus Mārtius*<sup>4</sup> *primus mēnsis existimābātur*. *Quā dē causā September erat septimus mēnsis antiqui*<sup>3</sup> *annī, Octōber erat* 5 *octāvus mēnsis, November erat nōnus mēnsis, December erat decimus mēnsis*. *Omnium mēnsium Februārius erat brevissimus*. *Urbs Rōma plūs quam mille annōs*<sup>5</sup> *permānsit*<sup>6</sup> *et multa milia hominum habet*.

1. Here used in the sense of *seasons*. 2. *mēnsis, -is, m., month*. 3. *antiquus, -a, -um, ancient*. 4. *March*. 5. *plūs quam mille annōs, for more than a thousand years*. 6. Present Perfect, § 312.

**545.** The Romans had seven kings. The first king was Romulus, the second king was Numa, the third king was Tullus Hostilius, the fourth king was Ancus Marcius, the fifth king was Tarquinius Priscus, the sixth king was Servius Tullius, the seventh king was Tarquinius Superbus. Of all the kings Tarquinius Superbus was the worst. For this reason he was driven out by Brutus, the first consul.

## LESSON LXXXIV

CIVI ET REI PŪBLICAE—For the citizen and the commonwealth<sup>1</sup>

### THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME OR EXTENT OF SPACE

**546.** The questions *How long?* and *How far?* are answered in English by an adverbial objective expressing duration of time or extent of space. This relation is similarly expressed in Latin by the Latin objective, or accusative : as,

Galli sex diēs pugnāverunt, *the Gauls fought for six days*  
Aqua centum pedēs alta est, *the water is a hundred feet deep*

**547.** Rule for Accusative of Duration or Extent. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

**548.** The accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of the time *when* or *within which* (§ 493) must be carefully distinguished. Select what would be accusatives of time or space and ablatives of time in the following passage if it were in Latin :

At midnight I went on deck. For many hours I had been tossing sleepless in my bunk. In the first place, the storm which began on Monday had now been raging for five days. Furthermore, in a few hours we should be in the channel; only a few miles from safety, to be sure, but also in the most dangerous zone of our voyage. The night was clear, and once I thought I saw a periscope, but it was only a floating spar extending several feet above the water. I was distinctly nervous, and did not care to repeat my former experience when I spent forty-eight hours in a leaky boat, which we rowed forty-seven miles before we were saved.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Oklahoma.

## CÆSAR IN GAUL

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

**549.** Caesar bellum in Galliā septem annōs gessit. Primō annō Helvētiōs superāvit, et eōdem annō Germānōs, quī magnum numerum hominum trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant, ex Galliā expulit. Multōs iam annōs Germānī magnam partem Galliae obtinēbant.<sup>1</sup> Quā dē causā principēs Galliae lēgātōs 5 ad Caesarem miserant et auxilium petierant. Lēgātis auditis, Caesar brevī tempore cōpiās suās coēgit. Magnō itinere cōnfectō, aciem instrūxit et primā lūce proelium cum Germānis commisit. Tōtum diem ācriter pugnātum est. Caesar ipse ā dextrō cornū aciem dūxit. Dēnique post magnam caedem 10 Germānī alii aliam in partem trāns Rhēnum fugam cēpērunt.

1. Translate as if past perfect.

**550.** 1. The battle began at daylight and part of the army fought all<sup>1</sup> day. 2. That bridge is two hundred feet long. 3. The enemy's camp was twelve miles<sup>2</sup> distant. 4. Those mountains are three hundred feet high. 5. In a short time the queen had collected five thousand men. 6. That forest extended a great distance.

1. Not *omnis*. 2. Latin, *twelve thousands of paces*.



A GATE OF POMPEII (RESTORED)

## LESSON LXXXV

Amicitia nisi inter bonōs esse nōn potest—Friendship cannot exist except between the good<sup>1</sup>

### THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT · THE GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**551. Ablative of Respect.** Note the following sentences :

*Civēs erant pauci numerō, the citizens were few in number*  
*Mārcus frātre[m] virtūte superat, Mark excels his brother in valor*

The ablatives *numerō* and *virtūte* answer the question *In what respect?* and are called ablatives of respect.

**552. Rule for Ablative of Respect.** *The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

**553. Genitive with Adjectives.** Compare the following sentences :

*Rēx bellum cupit, the king desires war*  
*Rēx belli cupidus est, the king is desirous of war*

The relation between the verb *cupit* and its direct object *bellum* is clearly similar to that between the adjective *cupidus* and its genitive *belli*. Genitives used as the object of the action or feeling implied in certain adjectives are therefore called objective genitives.

**554. Rule for Genitive with Adjectives.** *The adjectives cupidus, desirous ; peritus, skilled ; imperitus, ignorant, and others of similar character are followed by the objective genitive.*

<sup>1</sup> From Cicero's famous essay on friendship.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 377

555. 1. Aciem instruere nōn poterat, quod erat imperītus rei militāris. 2. Sapientiā Minerva reliquās deās superābat. 3. Signō datō, legiō decima, cupidior laudis quam vitae ipsius, prōcēdere incēpit. 4. Galli et Germāni dissimillimī linguā ac lēgibus erant. 5. Quīdam ex principibus, quod pācis cupidi erant, lēgātōs ad nōs mīsērunt. 6. Dux rei militāris peritus in locō iniquō nōn permanēbit. 7. Servi libertātis cupidissimī aliī aliam in partem fūgērunt. 8. Quīdam imperātor, Galba nōmine, timōre commōtus iter intermitti iussit. 9. Oppidum, nūllō spatiō intermissō, mūrō viginti<sup>1</sup> pedēs altō dēfendebatur. 10. Cūr in eādē libertāte quam ā patribus nostris accēpimus permanēre nōn possumus?

1. *Twenty.*

556. 1. Few men were equal to Cæsar either<sup>1</sup> in wisdom or in valor. 2. The men are unskilled in languages. 3. These ought not to sail to other lands. 4. Cæsar was king in fact,<sup>2</sup> but not in name. 5. Some work because they are desirous of praise, others because they are desirous of money. 6. The commander himself is skilled in the art of war. 7. He will not let several days elapse without good cause.

1. *Either . . . or, aut . . . aut.* 2. *rēs.*



ANCIENT COINS

## LESSON LXXXVI

Nōn omnis moriar—I shall not wholly die<sup>1</sup>

### DEPONENT VERBS • THE GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

**557. Deponent Verbs.** A deponent verb is one that is passive in form but active in meaning.

**558.** The principal parts of deponents are, of course, passive.

**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge**

**a.** A few verbs are deponent in the perfect system only: as,

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare**

**559.** Deponent verbs are conjugated in the passive:

**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum** (*urge*), like **vocor** (§ 832)

**vereor, verērī, veritus sum** (*fear*), like **moneor** (§ 833)

**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** (*follow*), like **regor** (§ 834)

**patior, patī, passus sum** (*suffer*), like **capior** (§ 836)

**partior, partīrī, partītus sum** (*share*), like **audior** (§ 835)

**560.** Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive, the active participles, and a few other active forms which will be noted later.<sup>2</sup>

**561. Genitive or Ablative of Description.** English and Latin employ similar expressions of quality or description. Thus we may say either *Cæsar was a man of great courage* or *Cæsar was a man with great courage*. Similarly in Latin we may use the genitive in the first case and the ablative in the second: as,

**Cæsar erat vir magnæ virtūtis**

**Cæsar erat vir magnā virtūte**

<sup>1</sup> From Horace, the poet laureate of the Augustan age.

<sup>2</sup> The complete synopsis of deponent verbs is given in § 837.

**562. Rule for Genitive or Ablative of Description.** *The genitive or the ablative, with a modifying adjective, is used in expressions of quality or description.*

a. Numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive, and descriptions of physical characteristics are usually in the ablative.

**fossa decem pedum**, a ditch of ten feet, or a ten-foot ditch  
**puella parvis manibus**, a girl with small hands

### CÆSAR AND THE HELVETIANS

First learn the special vocabulary, page 378

**563. 1.** Helvētīi, quī nec deōs nec hominēs verēbantur, magnum dolōrem patiēbantur quod ex omnibus partibus<sup>1</sup> magnae altitudinis montibus continēbantur. **2.** Quā dē causā cōsiliū cēpērunt ex suis finibus cum omnibus cōpiis excēdere. **3.** His rēbus cognitis, Caesar, vir ēgregiā virtūte et rei militāris peritissimus, magnīs itineribus in Galliam contendit. **4.** Nōn passus est Helvētiōs iter per finēs Rōmānōs facere, sed plūrēs<sup>2</sup> diēs eōs secūtus est. **5.** Dēnique Helvētīi, itinere intermissō, aciem instrūxērunt. **6.** Helvētīi Rōmānis erant parēs virtūte, sed nōn armīs. **7.** Tum Caesar militēs hortātus est, et, proeliō commissō, magnam partem hostium interfēcit.

**1. ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides. **2. Several.**

**564. 1.** Cæsar constructed<sup>1</sup> a ten-foot rampart.<sup>2</sup> **2.** The rampart was many miles<sup>3</sup> long. **3.** Men of no wisdom suffer pain because they do not fear the laws. **4.** One man urges one thing, another another.<sup>4</sup> **5.** But we shall follow Cæsar's authority. **6.** In height your mountains are not equal to ours.

**1. dūcō.** **2.** Latin, a rampart of ten feet. **3.** Latin, many thousands of paces. **4.** Translate the sentence by three Latin words. See § 505.

## LESSON LXXXVII

Vōx clāmantis in dēsertō — The voice of one crying in the wilderness<sup>1</sup>

### PARTICIPLES

**565.** The nature of the participle has been already discussed (§ 344). Latin has four participles, the present and the future in the active voice, and the past and the future (also called the gerundive) in the passive voice.<sup>2</sup>

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>I. Present Active Participle.</b> Present Stem + <b>-ns</b> or <b>-ēns</b></p>                            | <p>{ <i>vocāns, calling</i><br/><i>monēns, advising</i><br/><i>regēns, ruling</i><br/><i>audiēns, hearing</i></p>                                              |
| <p><b>II. Future Active Participle.</b> Participial Stem + <b>-ūrus, -a, -um</b></p>                            | <p>{ <i>vocātūrus, about to call</i><br/><i>monitūrus, about to advise</i><br/><i>rēctūrus, about to rule</i><br/><i>auditūrus, about to hear</i></p>          |
| <p><b>III. Past Passive Participle.</b> Participial Stem + <b>-us, -a, -um</b></p>                              | <p>{ <i>vocātus, having been called</i><br/><i>monitus, having been advised</i><br/><i>rēctus, having been ruled</i><br/><i>auditus, having been heard</i></p> |
| <p><b>IV. Future Passive Participle or Gerundive.</b> Present Stem + <b>-ndus</b> or <b>-endus, -a, -um</b></p> | <p>{ <i>vocandus, to be called</i><br/><i>monendus, to be advised</i><br/><i>regendus, to be ruled</i><br/><i>audiendus, to be heard</i></p>                   |

**566. Declension of Participles.** All participles ending in **-us** are declined like **bonus** (§ 120). Present participles are declined like adjectives of one ending; see the declension of **vocāns**, § 817.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Dartmouth College. From the Latin translation of the Bible.

<sup>2</sup> It is to be noted that Latin, unlike English, has no past active participle (*having called*) or present passive participle (*being called*).

**567. Past and Future Participles.** We have made frequent use of the past passive participle as the last of the principal parts (§ 299), and in the formation of the perfect passive system (*vocātus sum*, etc.). We have also used it frequently in agreement with a noun in the ablative absolute (§ 400): as,

*Gallis superātis, Caesar in Italiam contendit, after the Gauls had been overcome, Caesar hastened into Italy*

The future active participle with *esse* makes the future active infinitive (§ 356): as, *vocātūrus esse, to be about to call*.

**568. Present Active Participle.** The present active participle, as well as the past passive, is often used with a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute.

*Caesare dūcente, nihil timēmus, Caesar leading (or when Caesar leads), we fear nothing*

**569. Participles of Deponent Verbs.** Deponent verbs have four participles, of the same form as those of other verbs: as,

*hortāns, urging*  
*hortātūrus, about to urge*  
*hortātus, having urged*  
*hortandus, to be urged*<sup>1</sup>

But note that the past participle of deponents is *active* in meaning, and that only deponent verbs have an *active* past participle. Compare

*hortātus, having urged (active), from hortor, deponent*  
*vocātus, having been called (passive), from vocō, not deponent*

**570. Give the participles of the following verbs:**

|              |              |              |               |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| <i>portō</i> | <i>mittō</i> | <i>mūniō</i> | <i>vereor</i> |
| <i>iaciō</i> | <i>dūcō</i>  | <i>moveō</i> | <i>patior</i> |

<sup>1</sup> The future passive participle, or gerundive, of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as well as in form.

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 378

**571.** 1. Caesar sequēns barbarōs nec nocte nec diē iter intermīsīt. 2. Magnam multitudinem hostium fugientium interfēcīt et grave supplicium dē captivīs sūmpsīt. 3. Magnitūdine et altitūdine illud flūmen omnia alia superat. 4. In<sup>1</sup> eō flūmine imperātor pontem mille pedum fēcīt. 5. His bellis cōfectis, imperātor librum dē rē militārī scrīpsīt. 6. Ubi Lesbiam vidisti? Lesbiam sedentem ante casam Galbae vidī. 7. Tertiā hōrā explōrātōrēs, qui praemissī erant, locum idōneum castris dēlēgērunt. 8. Illō imperātōre dūcente, certissima esse victōria dēbet. 9. Dux tuus est celerior corpore quam animō. 10. Veritī fortunam pessimam, grātiās deis iam ēgimus quod cōservātī erāmus.

1. Where we say "build a bridge *over*," the Romans said "build a bridge *in*," because bridges were often built of boats.

**572.** 1. When our country calls,<sup>1</sup> we ought to take up arms. 2. The king, fearing the multitude, did not dare to send ahead spies. 3. After suffering<sup>2</sup> wrongs for many years, the allies were eager for war. 4. At the fourth hour suitable scouts were chosen and sent forward. 5. Cæsar inflicted punishment on that king. 6. Many books have been written concerning the size of Rome. 7. After drawing up<sup>3</sup> the line of battle, the commander waited for two hours.

1. Express by the present participle in the ablative absolute. 2. Past participle. 3. Express by the past participle in the ablative absolute, and note that, as this participle is regularly passive in Latin, the voice of the English verb must be changed, and thus the English becomes *after the line of battle had been drawn up*. Never fail to change an English past participle from the active to the passive before translating, unless the Latin verb is deponent (cf. § 569).

## LESSON LXXXVIII

Scientia sōl mentis—Knowledge the sun of the mind<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

**573. Spelling of English Words in -ant and -ent.** Many English nouns and adjectives ending in *-ant* and *-ent* are derived from the Latin present participle, and have the same form as its base. Thus:

| LATIN VERB | PRESENT PARTICIPLE | ENGLISH WORD     |
|------------|--------------------|------------------|
| occupō     | occupāns, -antis   | <i>occupant</i>  |
| servō      | servāns, -antis    | <i>servant</i>   |
| importō    | importāns, -antis  | <i>important</i> |
| studeō     | studēns, -entis    | <i>student</i>   |
| agō        | agēns, -entis      | <i>agent</i>     |
| contineō   | continēns, -entis  | <i>continent</i> |

English words of this kind derived from Latin verbs of the first conjugation end in *-ant*; from verbs of other conjugations, in *-ent*.

**a.** Exceptions to this rule are words of Latin origin that have come into English through the medium of Norman French, where the present participle of verbs of all conjugations ends regularly in *-ant*. Thus, from *teneō* (present participle *tenēns*) the English derivative is not *tenent*, as we should expect, but *tenant* (cf. French *tenant*).

**574. Nouns in -or denoting the Agent or Doer.** Many Latin nouns denoting the *agent* or *doer* are formed from Latin verbs by changing *-us* of the past participle to *-or*. These nouns have generally passed into English with no change of form. Thus:

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Delaware College.

| VERB    | PAST PARTICIPLE | LATIN NOUN | ENGLISH NOUN     |
|---------|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| agō     | actus           | āctor      | <i>actor</i>     |
| audiō   | auditus         | auditor    | <i>auditor</i>   |
| capīō   | captus          | captor     | <i>captor</i>    |
| inveniō | inventus        | inventor   | <i>inventor</i>  |
| liberō  | liberatus       | liberātor  | <i>liberator</i> |
| moneō   | monitus         | monitor    | <i>monitor</i>   |
| nārrō   | nārratus        | nārrātor   | <i>narrator</i>  |
| nāvigō  | nāvigātus       | nāvigātor  | <i>navigator</i> |
| spectō  | spectātus       | spectātor  | <i>spectator</i> |
| vincō   | victus          | victor     | <i>victor</i>    |

The number of these nouns, both in Latin and English, is very great. Some of the Latin nouns have a feminine form in **-trix**: as, **administrātrix**, **victrix**, etc. The same suffix is used in English: as, *administrator*, M.; *administratrix*, F.

### EXERCISES

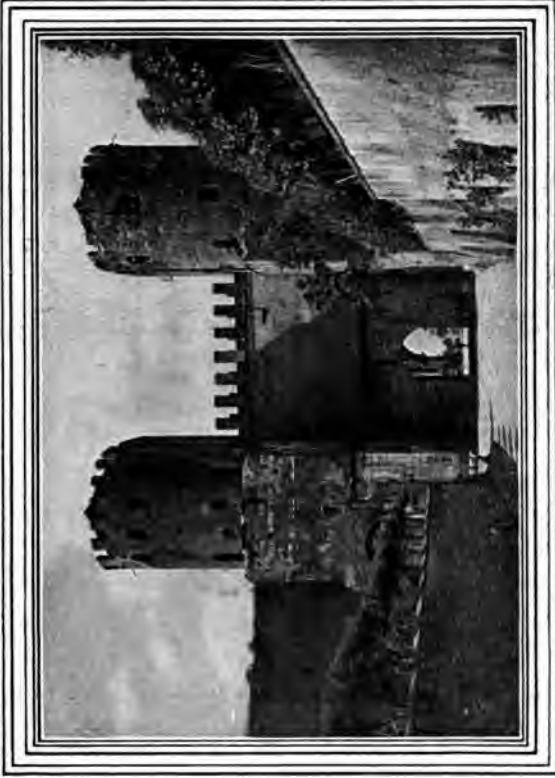
First learn the special vocabulary, page 378.

**575.** 1. Rōmānī bellum cum Albānīs gerentēs omnēs nōn pugnāvērunt. 2. Nam imperātōrēs melius cōsiliū docēbant. 3. Trēs frātrēs, virtūtis magnae et rei militāris perītī, utrimque (*from each side*) dēlēctī sunt. 4. Apud duōs exercitūs ācerrimē pugnātum est. 5. Curiātiis interfectis, civitās Rōmāna maiōrem potestātem habuit. 6. Albānī vērō dolōrem magnum passi sunt.

**576. Derivation.** Using prefixes previously studied (§ 497) and such suffixes as appear in § 426, and any others you know, make a list of at least twenty English derivatives from the verbs *scribō*, *sūmō*, *iaciō*, *audiō*, *pōnō*.



**Eleventh Review. Lessons LXXXII-LXXXVIII, §§ 788-792**



THE GATE OF ST. SEBASTIAN

Rome is still a walled town. The wall built about 600 B. C. by King Servius Tullius sufficed for nine hundred years, though the city had spread far beyond it on every side. But about A. D. 300 the danger of barbarian invasion became so great that the present wall was constructed. It is nearly twelve miles in circuit and has fifteen gates. The gate in the picture is the Porta Appia, now called the Gate of St. Sebastian, through which passes the Appian Way



## LESSON LXXXIX

Scientia crēscat, vīta colātur—Let knowledge grow, let  
life be enriched<sup>1</sup>

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE COMPARED

**577. Subjunctive Mood.** Besides the indicative and imperative, Latin has a third mood, called the subjunctive.

**578. Tenses of Subjunctive.** The subjunctive has four tenses : present, past, perfect, and past perfect.

The personal endings, active and passive, are the same as in the indicative.

*a.* The meaning of the subjunctive varies in different constructions to such a degree that it is not practical to translate the subjunctive forms in the paradigms.

**579. Present Subjunctive of First Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is *-ē-*, which takes the place of *-ā*, the final vowel of the present stem : as,

| ACTIVE                                             | PASSIVE                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| $\text{voc}(\bar{a}) + \bar{e} + m = \text{vocem}$ | $\text{voc}(\bar{a}) + \bar{e} + r = \text{vocer}$ |

**580.** In the subjunctive, as elsewhere, a long vowel is shortened before *nt* and final *-m*, *-t*, or *-r* (see § 194). The present subjunctive is inflected as follows :

| ACTIVE VOICE |          | PASSIVE VOICE  |           |
|--------------|----------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. vo'cem    | vocē'mus | vo'cer         | vocē'mur  |
| 2. vo'cēs    | vocē'tis | vocē'ris (-re) | vocē'mini |
| 3. vo'cet    | vo'cent  | vocē'tur       | vocen'tur |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of The University of Chicago.

**581. Present Subjunctive of Second Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive in the second conjugation is **-ā-**, which is added to the present stem and is followed by the personal endings: as,

ACTIVE **monē + ā + m = moneam** PASSIVE **monē + ā + r = monear**

Long vowels are shortened in the usual places (§ 194).

| ACTIVE VOICE       |           | PASSIVE VOICE   |            |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. mo'ne <b>am</b> | moneā'mus | mo'ne <b>ar</b> | moneā'mur  |
| 2. mo'ne <b>ās</b> | moneā'tis | moneā'ris (-re) | moneā'mini |
| 3. mo'ne <b>at</b> | mo'neant  | moneā'tur       | monean'tur |

**582. Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.** The indicative mood asserts facts or inquires after facts. The subjunctive, on the other hand, expresses *desires, wishes, purposes, possibilities, expectations*, and the like. The following sentences illustrate the difference between indicative and subjunctive ideas.

| INDICATIVE IDEAS                                                                                        | SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>We call him</i><br><b>Eum vocāmus</b>                                                             | 1. <i>Let us call him</i><br><b>Eum vocēmus</b> (desire)                                                                   |
| 2. <i>You see the city</i><br><b>Urbem vidēs</b>                                                        | 2. <i>May you see the city</i><br><b>Urbem videās</b> (wish)                                                               |
| 3. <i>Scouts come who warn you</i><br><b>Explōrātōrēs veniunt qui tē monent</b>                         | 3. <i>Scouts come to warn (or who are to warn) you</i><br><b>Explōrātōrēs veniunt qui tē moneant</b> (purpose)             |
| 4. <i>They fight bravely</i><br><b>Fortiter pugnant</b>                                                 | 4. <i>They would fight bravely</i><br><b>Fortiter pugnent</b> (possibility)                                                |
| 5. <i>He waits at Rome until the enemy are overcome</i><br><b>Rōmae exspectat dum hostēs superantur</b> | 5. <i>He waits at Rome until the enemy shall be overcome</i><br><b>Rōmae exspectat dum hostēs superentur</b> (expectation) |

## EXERCISE

583. Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative, and which in the subjunctive, in a Latin translation?

And we won't come back till it's over over there.

How splendidly our soldiers made good the words of their song. Who would have expected so speedy and so glorious a victory? They were young. They were fine. They were brave. But they had not been tested. "Let us hope, let us have confidence," was the best one could say. The crisis was at hand. At Paris, less than forty miles away, one might hear the thunder of the guns. And still the enemy pressed on and the brave French were forced back. American forces were rushed to the front. The French urged retreat to a stronger position. "We came to fight, not to retreat," said the Yanks. Then in plunged the Marines. May their glory ever shine! And what they did thrilled the world. From that day onward the Stars and Stripes blazed the victorious trail.

'Tis the Star-Spangled Banner, O long may it wave  
O'er the land of the free, and the home of the brave!

584. Inflect the present subjunctive, active and passive, of *vāstō*, *moveō*, *servō*, *iubeō*.



GREEK VASES

## LESSON XC

Scūtō bonae voluntātis tuae corōnāstī nōs—Thou hast  
encompassed us by the shield of Thy loving-kindness<sup>1</sup>

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS · SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

**585. Present Subjunctive of Third Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive of the third conjugation is **-ā-**. This **-ā-** takes the place of **-e**, the final vowel of the present stem, and is followed by the personal endings :

ACTIVE **reg(e) + ā + m = regam**      PASSIVE **reg(e) + ā + r = regar**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. re'gam | regā'mus |
| 2. re'gās | regā'tis |
| 3. re'gat | re'gant  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

- |                |           |
|----------------|-----------|
| re'gar         | regā'mur  |
| regā'ris (-re) | regā'mini |
| regā'tur       | regan'tur |

**a.** In like manner inflect **capiam**, the present subjunctive of **capiō**, and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation (see § 836).

**586. Present Subjunctive of Fourth Conjugation.** The sign of the present subjunctive of the fourth conjugation is **-ā-**. This is added to the present stem and is followed by the personal endings :

ACTIVE **audī + ā + m = audiam**      PASSIVE **audī + ā + r = audiar**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. au'diam | audiā'mus |
| 2. au'diās | audiā'tis |
| 3. au'diat | au'diant  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| au'diar         | audiā'mur  |
| audiā'ris (-re) | audiā'mini |
| audiā'tur       | audian'tur |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Maryland. From the Latin translation of the Bible.

**587. Subjunctive of Purpose.** Observe the following sentence:

**Explōrātōrēs veniunt quī tē moneant,** *scouts come to warn you*

The verb **moneant** in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it expresses the scouts' purpose. This use of the subjunctive is called the *subjunctive of purpose*. In English the purpose is often expressed, as here, by the infinitive. *It is never so expressed in good Latin prose.*

**588. Rule for Subjunctive of Purpose.** *A clause expressing purpose takes the subjunctive.*

**589.** A clause of purpose is introduced by the relative pronoun **quī** (as above), or by **ut**, *in order that, that*; or, if negative, by **nē**, *in order that not, that not, lest*.

**Caesar mittit milītēs quī agrōs vāstent,** *Cæsar sends soldiers to lay waste (literally, who should lay waste) the fields*

**Milītēs veniunt ut agrōs vāstent,** *soldiers come to lay waste (literally, in order that they may lay waste) the fields*

**Agricolæ pugnant nē agrī vāstentur,** *the farmers fight that their fields may not be laid waste*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

**590.** 1. Dux, vir summae virtūtis, praemittit explōrātōrēs quī locum idōneum castris dēligant. 2. Iubet eōs celerrimē properāre nē tempus āmittant. 3. Interim quidam princeps, vir summā potestāte apud Gallōs, ducem quaerit ut condiціōnēs pācis petat. 4. Sed dux eum rapit ut dē eō supplicium sūmat. 5. Tum vērō suōs (*his men*) convocat ut ratiōnem proeli doceat.

**591.** 1. The soldier asks for better arms that he may not lose his life. 2. The king sends his son to hear the conditions of peace. 3. He follows this plan lest he lose the supreme power. 4. An army is hastening to inflict punishment on

## LESSON XCI

Et docēre et rērum exquirere causās — Both to teach and to search out the reasons of things<sup>1</sup>

### PAST SUBJUNCTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**592. Inflection of Past Subjunctive.** The past subjunctive of any verb may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active. The past subjunctive of **vocō** and **monēō** is inflected as follows :

#### ACTIVE VOICE

|             |            |          |            |
|-------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. vocā'rem | vocārē'mus | monē'rem | monērē'mus |
| 2. vocā'rēs | vocārē'tis | monē'rēs | monērē'tis |
| 3. vocā'ret | vocārē'nt  | monē'ret | monērē'nt  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

|                     |             |                  |             |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. vocā'rer         | vocārē'mur  | monē'rer         | monērē'mur  |
| 2. vocārē'ris (-re) | vocārē'mini | monērē'ris (-re) | monērē'mini |
| 3. vocārē'tur       | vocārē'ntur | monērē'tur       | monērē'ntur |

**593. Sequence of Tenses Defined.** Tenses referring to present or future time are called *primary* tenses. Tenses referring to past time are called *secondary* tenses. As a rule, the tenses of the verbs used in the principal and the dependent clause of a complex sentence harmonize ; that is, all are primary or all are secondary. For example, in *He says that he is coming* both of the verbs are present and in a primary tense ; but if we change *He says* to *He said*, a corresponding change takes place in the verb in the dependent clause, and we say *He said that he was coming*, both of the verbs being in a secondary tense. This harmony between the tenses is called the *sequence of tenses*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Georgia.

**594. Primary and Secondary Tenses.** In the following table the primary tenses are marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

| INDICATIVE         | SUBJUNCTIVE      |
|--------------------|------------------|
| (1) Present        | (1) Present      |
| (2) Past           | (2) Past         |
| (1) Future         | (1) Perfect      |
| (2) Perfect        | (2) Past Perfect |
| (2) Past Perfect   |                  |
| (1) Future Perfect |                  |

When indicatives and subjunctives are used in the same sentence, the tenses generally harmonize.

**595. Rule for Sequence of Tenses.** *In a complex sentence a primary tense of the indicative in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary by a secondary.*

**596. EXAMPLES**

I. Primary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

|                                                                         |                |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present                                                                 | <b>Mittit</b>  | } <b>hostēs ut agrōs vāstent</b> (Pres. Subjv.)                                                          |
| Future                                                                  | <b>Mittet</b>  |                                                                                                          |
| Fut. Perf.                                                              | <b>Miserit</b> |                                                                                                          |
| <i>He</i> { <i>sends</i><br><i>will send</i><br><i>will have sent</i> } |                | <i>foes</i> { <i>that they may,</i><br><i>in order to, or</i><br><i>to</i> } <i>lay waste the fields</i> |

II. Secondary tenses in principal and dependent clauses:

|                                                                                |                 |                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Past                                                                           | <b>Mittēbat</b> | } <b>hostēs ut agrōs vāstārent</b> (Past Subjv.)                                                           |
| Perfect                                                                        | <b>Misit</b>    |                                                                                                            |
| Past Perf.                                                                     | <b>Miserat</b>  |                                                                                                            |
| <i>He</i> { <i>was sending</i><br><i>sent or has sent</i><br><i>had sent</i> } |                 | <i>foes</i> { <i>that they might,</i><br><i>in order to, or</i><br><i>to</i> } <i>lay waste the fields</i> |

## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

**597.** 1. Partem impedimentōrum relinquit ut ad illud oppidum celeriter perveniat. 2. Interim imperātor trēs legiōnēs remiserat quae illōs finēs statim pācārent. 3. Propter nātūram eius loci nēmō excēdere potuit quī fortūnam miseram nostram nūntiāret. 4. Hostēs vāllum decem milia passuum longum et fossam octō pedum perdūxerant ut itinere nostrōs prohibērent. 5. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō, multī peritī rei militāris domum contendērunt ut prō rē pūblicā pugnārent. 6. Ampliōrēs cōpiās expectābimus nē hostēs summum montem<sup>1</sup> obtineant. 7. Propter vulnera imperātor in castris manēre dēbet atque mittere aliquem quī animōs militum hortētur. 8. Quidam vir laudis cupidissimus librum dē suis victōriis scripsit. 9. Quidam vērō cīvēs, timōre summō permōti, Caesarem quaerunt ut eum dē ratiōne belli cōsulant.

1. **summum montem**, *the top of the mountain.*

**598.** 1. Cæsar forbade the Germans to advance farther, lest they should settle in Gaul. 2. After all things<sup>1</sup> had been prepared, he climbed to the top of the mountain to storm the camp. 3. I shall arrive at Rome<sup>2</sup> at daybreak<sup>3</sup> that I may undertake this serious business of the republic immediately. 4. Scævola came to put<sup>4</sup> the king to death. 5. Because of his supreme valor no one inflicted punishment on him.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. Accusative without a preposition. 3. Latin, *first light*, ablative of time. 4. Latin, *give the king to death*.

## LESSON XCII

Artēs, scientia, vērītās — The arts, knowledge, truth<sup>1</sup>

### PAST SUBJUNCTIVE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS NOUN CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

**599. Inflection of Past Subjunctive.** The past subjunctive of *regō* and *audiō* is inflected as follows :

#### ACTIVE VOICE

|             |            |          |            |
|-------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. re'gerem | regerē'mus | audi'rem | audirē'mus |
| 2. re'gerēs | regerē'tis | audi'rēs | audirē'tis |
| 3. re'geret | re'gerent  | audi'ret | audir'ent  |

#### PASSIVE VOICE

|                     |             |                  |             |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. re'gerer         | regerē'mur  | audi'rer         | audirē'mur  |
| 2. regerē'ris (-re) | regerē'mini | audirē'ris (-re) | audirē'mini |
| 3. regerē'tur       | regeren'tur | audirē'tur       | audiren'tur |

*a.* Like *regerem* inflect *caperem*, the past subjunctive of *capio*, and other *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation (see § 836).

**600. Noun Clause Defined.** A clause is often used as a part of speech, and is then named after the part of speech to which it is equivalent (cf. § 385). Thus we saw in § 386 that a relative clause has the force of an adjective and hence is called an adjective clause. A clause may modify a verb like an adverb, and is then called an adverbial clause : as, *vērunt ut pācem peterent*, *they came to seek peace* (adverbial clause of purpose). Similarly, a clause that is used as a noun is called a *noun* clause. Such a clause is often the subject or object of a verb : as,

*That we should agree seems impossible* (clause used as subject)

*Cæsar commanded that the captives should be let go* (clause used as object)

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Michigan.

**601. Noun Clauses of Purpose.** In English, verbs of *asking, commanding, urging*, etc. are usually followed by an infinitive clause as object: as,

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <i>They asked</i>     | } <i>me to come</i> |
| <i>They commanded</i> |                     |
| <i>They urged</i>     |                     |

Verbs of this kind denote a purpose or desire that something be done, and the infinitive expresses what that something is. But in Latin, as we have learned (§ 582), a purpose or desire is not expressed by the infinitive, but by the subjunctive. Compare the following English and Latin sentences:

*They urged me to come*

**Hortābantur mē ut venīrem** (lit. *that I should come*)

**602. Rule for Noun Clauses of Purpose.** *Verbs denoting a purpose or desire that something be done are followed by a subjunctive clause as object, introduced by ut or nē.*

**603.** The following common verbs are regularly followed by a noun clause with **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive:

**hortor, urge**

**imperō, order** (with the dative of the *person* ordered and a subjunctive clause of the *thing* ordered)

**moneō, advise**

**persuādeō, persuade** (with the same construction as **imperō**)

**petō, rogō, beg, ask**

**postulō, demand, require**

**a.** Remember that **iubeō, order**, takes the infinitive as in English (§ 367). Compare the following sentences:

**Iubeō eum venīre, I order him to come**

**Imperō eī ut veniat, I give orders to him that he come**

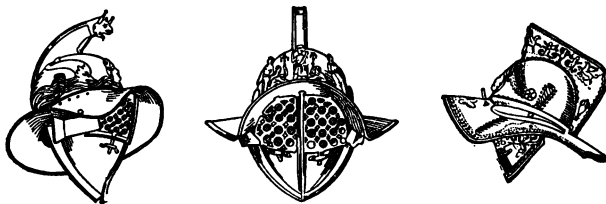
## EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 379

604. 1. Maximē lēgātōs hortātus est ut dē rē frūmentāriā prōvidērent. 2. Imperātor rēgī imperat nē sociis populi Rōmānī noceat. 3. Gallī, timōre servitūtis permōti, postulāvērunt ut exercitus rei pūblicae ex finibus suis excēderet. 4. Plūrimis vulneribus acceptis, quīdam nōbis persuāsit ut fugam temptārēmus. 5. Propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae imperātor monuit ut castra in alium locum movērentur. 6. Petimus et hortāmur ut nōs ab iniūriis dēfendās. 7. Ad urbem tertiā hōrā pervēnī, sed nēmō mē rogāvit ut ūnum (*even one*) diem manērem. 8. Proximō diē magna multītūdō vēnit ut mē cōsuleret et dē condiōnibus pācis quaereret. 9. His rēbus gestis, lēgātus cum tribus legiōnibus relictus est ut dē rē frūmentāriā prōvidēret.

605. 1. Because of <sup>1</sup> your wounds I urge you not to try<sup>2</sup> that long journey. 2. You asked him to look out<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> the grain supply, didn't you<sup>4</sup>? Not at all. 3. Seek for the general and demand that he lead his forces out of my territory. 4. He ordered<sup>5</sup> the captives not to attempt<sup>2</sup> flight. 5. The woman demanded that the money be found.

1. The ablative of cause might be used, but the accusative with **propter** is more common. 2. Not infinitive. 3. **dē**. 4. On this form of question, review § 251. 5. What construction follows **iubeō**? What **imperō**?



GLADIATORS' HELMETS

## LESSON XCIII

Deī sub nūmine viget—She flourishes under the will of God<sup>1</sup>

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

**606. Subjunctive of *sum*.** The subjunctive of *sum* is inflected as follows:

| PRESENT       |              | PAST         |                 |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>sim</i> | <i>simus</i> | <i>essem</i> | <i>essē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>sīs</i> | <i>sitis</i> | <i>essēs</i> | <i>essē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>sit</i> | <i>sint</i>  | <i>esset</i> | <i>essent</i>   |

| PERFECT           |                  | PAST PERFECT    |                   |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>fu'erim</i> | <i>fue'rimus</i> | <i>fuis'sem</i> | <i>fuissē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>fu'eris</i> | <i>fue'ritis</i> | <i>fuis'sēs</i> | <i>fuissē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>fu'erit</i> | <i>fu'erint</i>  | <i>fuis'set</i> | <i>fuissē'tis</i> |

**607. Subjunctive of *possum*.** The subjunctive of *possum* is inflected as follows:

| PRESENT          |                  | PAST          |                  |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>possim</i> | <i>possi'mus</i> | <i>possem</i> | <i>possē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>possīs</i> | <i>possi'tis</i> | <i>possēs</i> | <i>possē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>possit</i> | <i>possint</i>   | <i>posset</i> | <i>possent</i>   |

| PERFECT             |                    | PAST PERFECT      |                     |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>potu'erim</i> | <i>potue'rimus</i> | <i>potuis'sem</i> | <i>potuissē'mus</i> |
| 2. <i>potu'eris</i> | <i>potue'ritis</i> | <i>potuis'sēs</i> | <i>potuissē'tis</i> |
| 3. <i>potu'erit</i> | <i>potu'erint</i>  | <i>potuis'set</i> | <i>potuis'sent</i>  |

*a.* Compare the perfect subjunctive with the future perfect indicative. Note that the past subjunctive may be formed by adding **m** to the present active infinitive (*posse* + **m**), and the past perfect subjunctive by adding **m** to the perfect active infinitive (*potuisse* + **m**).

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Princeton University.

## EXERCISES

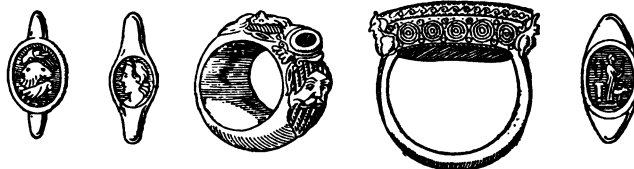
First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

**608.** 1. Si exercitus vester finibus nostris appropinquābit, magnam multitudinem mittēmus quae iter vestrum vi et armis impediat. 2. Imperātor reliquās cōpiās prōdūxit nē rē frumentāriā interclūderetur. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>1</sup> habitā,<sup>2</sup> nē tardissimī quidem rogant ut iniquae condiciōnēs pācis accipiantur. 4. Caesar quidem trēs legiōnēs cōscripserat ac postulāverat ut iter hostiū maximē impeditur. 5. Antea nē eius quidem ōrātiō civibus persuādere potuerat ut rem publicam cōservāre dēberent. 6. Nunc vērō nēmō ausus est rogāre nē legiōnēs novae cōscriberentur. 7. Caesar vāllum ad flūmen perdūxit nē aquā ab hostibus interclūderetur. 8. Tum suōs,<sup>3</sup> gravibus vulneribus impeditōs, hortātus est ut sēsē in castris continērent.

1. Ablative absolute. 2. ōrātiōnem habēre = *deliver an oration*.  
3. Possessive adjective used as a noun, *his men*.

**609.** 1. As winter<sup>1</sup> was approaching, he ordered<sup>2</sup> two cohorts to look out for a grain supply. 2. Someone urged the chief to make<sup>3</sup> a speech. 3. He asked the citizens to hinder<sup>3</sup> the march of the enemy. 4. He demanded of them (*ab eis*) that they shut the enemy off from the river. 5. Yet not even he could persuade the timid citizens to enroll<sup>3</sup> new legions.

1. Ablative absolute with present participle. 2. Write with both *iubeō* and *imperō*. 3. Not infinitive.



FINGER RINGS WITH ENGRAVED SETTINGS

## LESSON XCIV

Lūx sit—Let there be light<sup>1</sup>

### THE PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOCŌ, MONEŌ, REGŌ, AND AUDIO*

**610. Inflection of Perfect Subjunctive.** Learn the inflection of the following perfect subjunctives :

|           | ACTIVE            | PASSIVE                               |
|-----------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| CONJ. I   | <b>vocā'verim</b> | <b>vocā'tus (-a, -um) sim (§ 832)</b> |
| CONJ. II  | <b>monu'erim</b>  | <b>mo'nitus (-a, -um) sim (§ 833)</b> |
| CONJ. III | <b>rē'xerim</b>   | <b>rēc'tus (-a, -um) sim (§ 834)</b>  |
| CONJ. IV  | <b>audi'verim</b> | <b>audi'tus (-a, -um) sim (§ 835)</b> |

**611. Inflection of Past Perfect Subjunctive.** Learn the inflection of the following past perfect subjunctives :

|           | ACTIVE             | PASSIVE                                 |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| CONJ. I   | <b>vocāvis'sem</b> | <b>vocā'tus (-a, -um) essem (§ 832)</b> |
| CONJ. II  | <b>monuis'sem</b>  | <b>mo'nitus (-a, -um) essem (§ 833)</b> |
| CONJ. III | <b>rēxis'sem</b>   | <b>rēc'tus (-a, -um) essem (§ 834)</b>  |
| CONJ. IV  | <b>audivis'sem</b> | <b>audi'tus (-a, -um) essem (§ 835)</b> |

**a.** Note that the formation and inflection of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive active are like **fuerim** and **fuissem**, the corresponding tenses of **sum** ; and that in the passive **sim** and **essem** take the place of **sum** and **eram** of the indicative passive.

### EXERCISES

**612.** Inflect the complete subjunctive, active and passive, of **pācō, moveō, rapiō, mittō, mūniō**.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Washington. Compare the following verse in the Latin Bible: "Dixitque Deus: Fiat lūx. Et facta est lūx."

HĒRŌ ET LĒANDER

The story of Hero and Leander has been the subject of many poems, both ancient and modern. See Leigh Hunt, Tom Hood, Moore, Tennyson.

First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

613. Iūdicīō multōrum poētārum nēmō apud puellās Graecās<sup>1</sup> erat pulchrior quam Hērō, sacerdos<sup>2</sup> templi<sup>3</sup> quod Sēsti<sup>4</sup> positum est. Eam Lēander, adulēscēns<sup>5</sup> nōbilissimus, tōtō animō amāvit et in mātīmōnium dūcere cupivit, sed lēgēs vetuērunt. Lēander autem nec lēgēs sacrās nec deōs<sup>6</sup> iniquōs veritus est. Tamen ut amor<sup>7</sup> eius cēlārētur,<sup>8</sup> Lēander numquam diē sed tantum<sup>9</sup> nocte vēnit ut eam vidēret. Nec sine summā difficultāte erat hoc iter, nam mare angustum,<sup>10</sup> Hellēspontus nōmine,<sup>11</sup> inter Sēstum et Abūdum, urbem Lēandri, interfluit.<sup>12</sup> Sed nē mare quidem eum interclūdere<sup>13</sup> poterat. Omni<sup>14</sup> nocte Lēander Hellēspontum trānābat<sup>15</sup>; omni nocte Hērō in summā turri diligenter locābat lucernam<sup>16</sup> quae adulēscēntem per aquās perdūceret.

1. *Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.* 2. *sacerdos, -ōtis, M. and F., priest or priestess.* 3. *templum, -ī, N., temple.* 4. *Sēstus, -ī, F., Sestos, a city on the Hellespont at its narrowest point, opposite Abydos. The form Sēsti is locative; see § 485.* 5. *adulēscēns, -entis, M., youth.* 6. *amor, -ōris, M., love.* 7. *cēlō, -āre, conceal.* 8. *Only.* 9. *angustus, -a, -um, narrow.* 10. *Ab-lative of respect, § 552.* 11. *interfluō, -ere, flow between.* 12. *omnis in the singular often means every.* 13. *trānō, -āre, swim across.* The Hellespont at this point is about a mile wide, but there is a dangerous current. Byron's successful attempt to swim across is well known. 14. *lucerna, -ae, F., lamp.*

614. 1. Many reasons urged Leander not to expose<sup>1</sup> himself to death. 2. Not even Hero could persuade him<sup>2</sup> not to attempt<sup>3</sup> that journey. 3. He asked her to put<sup>3</sup> a lamp on top of the tower. 4. She listened<sup>4</sup> attentively that she might save his life. 5. She ought to advise him to remain<sup>5</sup> at home.

1. *committō.* Not infinitive. 2. *Dative.* 3. *Not infinitive.* 4. *audiō.*

## LESSON XCV

Vēritās vōs liberābit — The truth will set you free<sup>1</sup>

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

615. Observe the following sentence :

*The danger was so great that all fled, periculum erat tantum ut omnēs fugerent*

The principal clause names a cause, and the dependent clause states the result of this cause. In English the verb *fled* in the dependent clause is indicative, but in Latin this clause is introduced by **ut** (*so that*), and **fugerent** is subjunctive. This construction is called the *subjunctive of result*.

**616. Rule for Subjunctive of Result.** *Clauses of result are introduced by ut (negative ut nōn) and have the verb in the subjunctive.*

617. Result is sometimes expressed by a noun clause used as object : as,

*Periculum fēcit ut omnēs fugerent, the danger caused all to flee (literally, made so that all fled)*

**618. Rule for Object Clauses of Result.** *Object clauses of result introduced by ut (negative ut nōn) are used after verbs of effecting or bringing about.*

619. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared. Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are similar ; but a negative purpose clause is introduced by **nē**, while a negative result clause has **ut nōn**.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of Johns Hopkins University. From the Latin Bible.



HERO AND LEANDER

Leander! Leander! Speak to me!  
Speak to me! Leander! Leander!

MARTIN SCHÜTZE — Hero and Leander



a. When **tam**, **ita**, **sic** (all meaning *so*), **tālis** (*such*), or **tantus** (*so great*) appears in the main clause, the dependent clause denotes result.

b. Do the following sentences denote purpose or result?

**Celeriter fūgit nē caperētur**, *he fled swiftly that he might not be taken*

**Tam celeriter fūgit ut servārētur**, *he fled so swiftly that he was saved*

**Celeriter fūgit ut servārētur**, *he fled swiftly that he might be saved*

**Tam celeriter fūgit ut nōn caperētur**, *he fled so swiftly that he was not taken*

### HĒRŌ ET LĒANDER (CONCLUDED)

First learn the special vocabulary, page 380

**620.** Hāc in condiōne rēs diū permanēbant. Sed nihil est certum hominī,<sup>1</sup> nec ūlla fortūna semper aequa. Ōlim tanta tempestās<sup>2</sup> coōrta est<sup>3</sup> ut etiam maximae nāves impetum maris sustinēre nōn possent ac summā celeritāte ad ōrās finitimās fugerent. Tamen Lēander suā cōnsuetūdine<sup>4</sup> ad 5 ōram primā nocte pervēnit ut iter faceret. Mare quidem erat turbidum,<sup>5</sup> sed is lūcem turris trāns mare vidēre poterat ibique<sup>6</sup> erat Hērō ipsa. Itaque omnī timōre dēpositō adulēscēns<sup>7</sup> nōbilis vitam suam aquis commisit. Statim autem summis difficultātibus ita premēbātur ut vī ipsā maris 10 superārētur.

Interim Hērō eum multās hōrās exspectābat. Tāli timōre commōta est ut mēns cōsistere nōn posset. Primā lūce vērō ad ōram contendit ut eum quaereret. Dēnique diligenter quaerēns corpus eius invēnit. Eō visō<sup>8</sup> sēsē in mare coniēcit. 15 Nam dolor ipse fēcerat<sup>9</sup> ut puella miserrima mentem suam amitteret.

1. *Man is sure of nothing.* 2. **tempestās, -ātis**, F., *storm*. 3. **coōrior, -iri**, deponent verb, *rise*. 4. *According to his custom.* 5. **turbidus, -a, -um**, *stormy*. 6. Two words, **ibi + que**. 7. **adulēscēns, -entis**, M., *youth*. 8. Ablative absolute. Translate, *on seeing this*. 9. *Had caused*.

621. 1. So great was the violence of the sea that no one dared to sail. 2. The timid sailors stood on the shore. 3. They warned him not to throw<sup>1</sup> himself into such a sea. 4. Leander was so hard pressed that he abandoned all hope of safety. 5. Hero, according to her custom, was waiting for him. 6. What caused<sup>2</sup> her to lose her mind?

1. Not infinitive. 2. Latin idiom, *made that she lost*.

## LESSON XCVI

Commune vinculum omnibus artibus—The common bond for all the arts<sup>1</sup>

### THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

622. The dative is the case of the indirect object (§ 58). Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object (§ 222), and some transitive verbs take both a direct object and an indirect object: as, *Mārcus puerō tēlum dedit*, *Marcus gave a spear to the boy*. Whether or not a verb will have an indirect object depends on its meaning. A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form do not take an indirect object, have a meaning, when compounded with certain prepositions, that calls for one. This indirect object is called the *dative with compounds*.

623. Rule for Dative with Compounds. *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, de, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, and super take the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Minnesota.



**Potestās rēgi nōn deērat, *power was not lacking to the king***  
**Caesar equitātui lēgātum praefēcit, *Cæsar placed the lieutenant in***  
*command of the cavalry*

**a.** Many verbs compounded with these prepositions *do not take the dative*, because their meaning forbids: as,

**Caesar cōpiās ad montem prōdūxit, *Cæsar led forth the troops to***  
*the mountain*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 381

**624.** 1. Cōsul optimōs civēs ēvocāre incēpit ut eis praemia ampla prōpōneret. 2. Magna multitudō convēnerat nē amplus exercitus imperātōri deēsset. 3. Quem nāvibus senātus praeficiet? Senātus virum summae virtūtis dēliget. 4. Barbari ita premēbantur ut oppida reliqua incenderent. 5. Aciē instrūctā, imperātor iussit Mārcum dextrō cornū praeesse. 6. Peditēs tantum numerum tēlōrum coniēcērunt ut pauci in mūrō cōnsistere possent. 7. Cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmāni et iūre belli senātus dēbet illi imperātōri imperāre ut civitātēs inimicās pācet. 8. Altitudō vālli fēcit ut pauci vulnerārentur.

**625.** 1. The senate ordered that the remaining captives be led away into slavery. 2. Heretofore, according to the law of war, the towns had been set on fire. 3. The senate assembled to place<sup>1</sup> someone in command of the infantry forces. 4. These things he set forth that money might not be lacking to the commonwealth. 5. Is not<sup>2</sup> your mind in command of your body<sup>3</sup>? Yes.

1. Express *place in command* by one word. 2. See § 251. 3. Not genitive.



**Twelfth Review. Lessons LXXXIX-XCVI, §§ 793-797**

## LESSON XCVII

Civium in mōribus reī pūblicae salūs—In the character of its citizens lies the safety of the commonwealth<sup>1</sup>

### WORD FORMATION

626. Many abstract nouns are formed from adjectives by the suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūdō*.

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| memor-ia, <i>memory</i>      | memor, <i>mindful</i>   |
| inop-ia, <i>want</i>         | inops, <i>poor</i>      |
| sapient-ia, <i>wisdom</i>    | sapiēns, <i>wise</i>    |
| amici-tia, <i>friendship</i> | amicus, <i>friendly</i> |
| celeri-tās, <i>swiftness</i> | celer, <i>swift</i>     |
| liber-tās, <i>freedom</i>    | liber, <i>free</i>      |
| magni-tūdō, <i>greatness</i> | magnus, <i>great</i>    |
| alti-tūdō, <i>height</i>     | altus, <i>high</i>      |

627. Adjectives denoting *quality* or *state* are formed from verbs by the suffix *-idus*.

|                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| cup-idus, <i>desirous</i> | cupere, <i>desire</i> |
| tim-idus, <i>fearful</i>  | timēre, <i>fear</i>   |

628. Adjectives denoting *fullness* are formed from nouns by the suffix *-ōsus* (the English suffix *-ous*).

|                                |                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| pericul-ōsus, <i>dangerous</i> | periculum, <i>danger</i> |
| studi-ōsus, <i>zealous</i>     | studium, <i>zeal</i>     |

629. Adjectives denoting *capability* in a passive sense are formed from verbs by the suffixes *-ilis* and *-ibilis*.

|                                                     |                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| fac-ilis, <i>easy</i> (able to be done)             | facere, <i>do</i>       |
| crēdi-ibilis, <i>credible</i> (able to be believed) | crēdere, <i>believe</i> |
| amā-ibilis, <i>lovable</i>                          | amāre, <i>love</i>      |

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Florida.

**630. Hints on Spelling.** When in doubt as to whether an English word should end in *-able* or *-ible*, remember that derivatives from Latin verbs of the first conjugation end in *-able*, those from other conjugations end in *-ible*.

|                   |                  |                  |                 |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>portable</i>   | <i>portāre</i>   | <i>visible</i>   | <i>vidēre</i>   |
| <i>vulnerable</i> | <i>vulnerāre</i> | <i>reducible</i> | <i>reducere</i> |
| <i>comparable</i> | <i>comparāre</i> | <i>audible</i>   | <i>audire</i>   |
| <i>habitable</i>  | <i>habitāre</i>  | <i>possible</i>  | <i>posse</i>    |

A few common words are exceptions: as, *tenable*, *movable*, *capable*, *dependable*.

**631.** Most English words ending in *-tion* or *-sion* are derived from Latin verbs. If the Latin past participle ends in *-tus*, use the suffix *-tion*; if in *-sus*, use *-sion*.

| ENGLISH WORD      | LATIN PARTICIPLE |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>exception</i>  | <i>exceptus</i>  |
| <i>contention</i> | <i>contentus</i> |
| <i>monition</i>   | <i>monitus</i>   |
| <i>ascension</i>  | <i>ascensus</i>  |
| <i>admission</i>  | <i>admissus</i>  |
| <i>session</i>    | <i>sessus</i>    |

### EXERCISES

**632. Derivation.** From your knowledge of prefixes what should you judge to be the meaning of the following compounds of *iaciō*, *throw*?

|                |               |               |                |                |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>adiciō</i>  | <i>dēiciō</i> | <i>iniciō</i> | <i>prōiciō</i> | <i>subiciō</i> |
| <i>coniciō</i> | <i>ēiciō</i>  | <i>obiciō</i> | <i>reiciō</i>  | <i>trāiciō</i> |

**633.** See how many English derivatives you can write from *iaciō* and its compounds.

## LESSON XCVIII

Litteris dēdicāta et omnibus artibus — Dedicated to letters and  
all the arts<sup>1</sup>

### THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOĻŌ*, *NŌĻŌ*, AND *MĀĻŌ*

**634.** Learn the inflection of *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *be unwilling*; and *mālō*, *prefer* (§ 840), and note that the indicative and subjunctive are inflected like *regō* except in the present indicative and the present and past subjunctive. These verbs have no passive voice.

**635. Constructions with *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*.** In English we say *I wish to write* or *I wish him to write*. In the first sentence *I wish* is followed by the complementary infinitive *to write*, and the subject of the two verbs is the same. In the second, *I wish* is followed by the object clause *him to write*, and the subjects are different.

Similarly, in Latin, *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* are used with the complementary infinitive when the subject remains the same; and with the infinitive with subject accusative when the subjects are different (§§ 367–369).

*Volō scribere, I wish to write*

*Volō eum scribere, I wish him to write*

### EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, page 381

**636.** 1. Potestās Caesarī nōn deērat et mālebat rē<sup>1</sup> esse rēx quam nōmine. 2. Hostēs, cum primī ōrdinēs sē ostendunt, nē cōnsistunt quidem, sed in finēs suōs sē recipiunt. 3. Cōpiaie enim quae praemissae erant ut impetum nostrum prohibērent

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Nebraska.

*satis* firmæ nōn erant. 4. Hās rēs lēgātī prōposuerant ut hae cīvitatēs in fidem<sup>2</sup> ac potestātem populi Rōmāni venīre vellent. 5. Oportuit Rōmānōs urbem vāllō fossāque circummūnīre ut fidēs<sup>3</sup> pūblica servārētur. 6. Illa silva, quae ab flūmine ad mare pertinet, multa genera animālium habet quae in aliīs locīs nōn videntur. 7. Nōne illa legiō cui filius tuus praeerat parāvit omnia quae ad salūtem cīvium pertinent? Parāvit. 8. Tanta multitūdō convēnerat ut cōpia frūmentī satis<sup>4</sup> nōn esset.

1. *rē*, in reality, ablative of respect, § 552. 2. in *fidem*, under the protection. 3. *fidēs pūblica*, the promise given by the state. 4. The word *satis* may be an adverb, as in 3; or an adjective, as in 8; or a noun, as, *satis supplī'ci*, enough (of) punishment; *satis facere*, to give satisfaction; etc.

637. 1. The senate is not willing to give satisfaction<sup>1</sup> to our enemies. 2. We wish war rather than that kind of peace. 3. For it is necessary to keep the faith which we received from our fathers. 4. Display hope, citizens, and not fear. 5. Fortify<sup>2</sup> the city all about with walls and ditches. 6. For the senate does not wish us to withdraw without a battle. 7. But it wishes us to prepare all things that pertain to war.

1. See § 636, note 4. 2. *Fortify all about* is expressed by one word.



A ROMAN STOVE WITH HOT-WATER BOILER

## LESSON XCIX

Vita hominum lūx—Light, the life of men<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · CONSTRUCTIONS WITH CUM

**638.** Review the word lists in §§ 732, 733, 737, 738.

**639. Constructions with cum.** The conjunction **cum** has three meanings: *when*, *since*, and *although*.

**640.** Clauses introduced by **cum** are of four kinds: *temporal*, *descriptive*, *causal*, and *concessive*.

**641. Cum** meaning *when* is temporal or descriptive,<sup>2</sup> and is usually followed by the indicative if the tense is present or future, otherwise by the subjunctive.

Veniam cum poterō, *I will come when I can*

Cum Rōmānī sē ostenderent, hostēs fūgerunt, *when the Romans appeared (showed themselves), the enemy fled*

**642. Cum** causal (*since*) and **cum** concessive (*although*) are followed by the subjunctive.

Cum pācem peterent, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcit, *since they were seeking peace, Caesar did not make an attack on them*

Cum primī ordinēs fūgissent, tamen reliquī fortiter cōsistēbant, *though the first ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood their ground*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of New Mexico.

<sup>2</sup> A descriptive clause describes the circumstances under which the main action took place: as, *The farmer found the money when he was plowing*. It is, furthermore, implied that but for the circumstances stated, the action expressed in the main clause would not have taken place. Thus, in the sentence above, if the farmer had not been plowing, he would not have found the money.

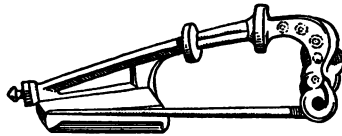
**643.** Rule for Constructions with *cum*. *Cum* means *when*, *since*, or *although*, and takes the subjunctive except in a temporal or descriptive clause of present or future time.

#### EXERCISES

**644.** 1. Cum rēgina novās grātāsque condiōnēs pācis prōposuisset, nē socii quidem, quī inimici antea fuerant, arma ac frumentum dare nōlēbant. 2. Cum<sup>1</sup> via tam longa sit, tamen oportet puerōs puellāsque iter facere. 3. Cum<sup>2</sup> aqua satis alta esset, nautae sine ullā difficultāte ad insulam parvam nāvīgāvērunt. 4. Cum nāvēs omnī genere convocātae essent, rēgina iussit servōs cōpiam frumentī ex agrīs proximis ad ōram maris portāre. 5. Cum ōrdinēs nostrī sē ostenderent, hostēs in oppidum sē recipiebant. 6. Cum Rōmānī in finēs Gallōrum venirent, Galli magnopere commōti sunt. 7. Cum imperātor lēgātōs videt, rogat, "Cūr, lēgāti, vēnistis? Quid quaeritis?" 8. Lēgāti respondent, "Volumus in fidem et potestātem populi Rōmāni venire."

1. *cum* = *though*. The concessive use of *cum* is often indicated by the presence of *tamen* in the main clause. 2. *cum* = *since*.

**645.** 1. Since the money is not sufficient, why do you not demand more? 2. Though you prepare all kinds of arms, you cannot overcome my allies. 3. When I was living at Rome, I often heard and saw famous Romans. 4. When you call me, I will hasten. 5. When the enemy appeared, we withdrew.



GOLDEN FIBULA, OR BROOCH

The Romans were familiar with the principle of the modern safety pin

## LESSON C

Mediō tūtissimū ibis — In the middle course you will go safest<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *eō*

646. Review the word lists in §§ 743, 744.

647. **Irregular Verb *eō*.** Learn the inflection of the irregular verb *eō*, *go* (§ 842), and the declension of the present participle *iēns*, *going* (§ 817).

### EXERCISES

648. **Derivation.** The irregular verb *eō* has a large number of compounds. Using your knowledge of prefixes, give the meaning of the following common words: *adeō*, *exeō*, *ineō*, *redeō*, *trāseō*.

649. 1. Cum<sup>1</sup> exercitus rē frūmentāriā premerētur, dux ad oppidum ire contendit. 2. Castris positis, nostrī equitēs crēbra proelia cum barbaris fēcērunt, sed legiōnēs sēsē in castris continēbant. 3. Germānī cum magnis cōpiis ex finibus suis ierant ut agrōs meliōrēs occupārent. 4. Multi Germānōs ita timēbant ut cum eis pugnāre nōllent et domum ire vellent. 5. Imperātor, cum hanc fāmam audivisset, dixit, “ Ite domum, sī vultis, atque ego sōlus in hostēs ibō.” 6. Tum tanta virtūs animōs omnium occupāvit ut manēre quam ire mālrent. 7. Cum ad Galliam irēmus, ōram insulae Britanniae vidēre poterāmus. 8. Sine ūllā spē praemī aut victōriae et cum summō periculō pugnāvi, nē amicitiam tuam āmitterem. 9. Puerī miserī, qui per silvam euntēs rapti erant, numquam postea visī sunt.

1. cum causal.

<sup>1</sup> From Ovid, a famous poet of the Augustan age. The words are often quoted to urge the value of moderation in all things.

**650.** 1. The senate persuaded the general<sup>1</sup> not to go<sup>3</sup> to Britain. 2. Though we have toiled many days, yet you wish us to go home without any reward. 3. When you have<sup>2</sup> plenty of money, I advise you to go<sup>3</sup> to Rome. 4. Since you fear frequent wars, why do you not make peace? 5. Go into battle with good arms if you wish to conquer.

1. Not accusative. 2. Use the future. 3. Not infinitive.

## LESSON CI

*Lūx* et *lēx*—Light and law<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

**651.** Review the word lists in §§ 749, 750.

**652. Indirect Statements in English.** Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements :

|                     |   |                                                 |
|---------------------|---|-------------------------------------------------|
| Direct statements   | { | 1. <i>The Gauls are brave</i>                   |
|                     |   | 2. <i>The Gauls were brave</i>                  |
|                     |   | 3. <i>The Gauls will be brave</i>               |
| Indirect statements | { | 1. <i>He says that the Gauls are brave</i>      |
| after a verb in     |   | 2. <i>He says that the Gauls were brave</i>     |
| the present tense   |   | 3. <i>He says that the Gauls will be brave</i>  |
| Indirect statements | { | 1. <i>He said that the Gauls were brave</i>     |
| after a verb in     |   | 2. <i>He said that the Gauls had been brave</i> |
| a past tense        |   | 3. <i>He said that the Gauls would be brave</i> |

When an English direct statement becomes indirect,

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of North Dakota.

**a.** The indirect statement becomes a dependent clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.

**b.** The verb remains finite and its subject is in the nominative.

**c.** The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

**653. Indirect Statements in Latin.** In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be expressed as follows :

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Direct statements   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Galli sunt fortēs, the Gauls are brave} \\ 2. \text{ Galli erant fortēs, the Gauls were brave} \\ 3. \text{ Galli erunt fortēs, the Gauls will be brave} \end{array} \right.$                                                                                                                                               |
| Indirect statements | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Dicit or Dixit Gallōs esse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to be brave)}^1 \\ 2. \text{ Dicit or Dixit Gallōs fuisse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to have been brave)}^1 \\ 3. \text{ Dicit or Dixit Gallōs futūrōs esse fortis (he says or he said the Gauls to be about to be brave)}^1 \end{array} \right.$ |

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences :

**a.** There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.

**b.** The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.

**c.** The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.

**654. Rule for Indirect Statements.** *When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.*

**655. Tenses of Infinitive.** When the sentences in §653 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, **sunt** became **esse**, **erant** became **fuisse**, and **erunt** became **futūrōs esse**.

<sup>1</sup> These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.

**656. Rule for Tenses of Infinitive in Indirect Statements.**

*A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

**657. Rule for Verbs followed by Indirect Statements.**

*The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving.*

**658.** Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are

**a.** Verbs of saying and telling :

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, *say, tell*  
 negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus, *deny, say not*  
 nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, *announce*  
 respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus, *reply*

**b.** Verbs of knowing :

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, *learn, (in the perfect) know*  
 sciō, scire, scīvī, scitus, *know*

**c.** Verbs of thinking :

existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, *think, believe*  
 iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus, *judge, decide*  
 putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, *reckon, think*  
 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, *hope*

**d.** Verbs of perceiving :

audiō, audire, audīvī, auditus, *hear*  
 sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, perceive*  
 videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, *see*  
 intellegō, intellegere, intellēxi, intellēctus, *understand, perceive*

Most of these verbs you know. Learn the new ones, and use the list for reference.

## EXERCISES

**659.** 1. Caesar per explorātōrēs cognōverat hostēs inopiā frūmentī premi. 2. Rōmāni audivērunt Helvētiōs proximā aestāte ex finibus suis excessūrōs esse. 3. Lēgātī cum pervēnissent, respondērunt frātrei rēgis exercitui praefutūrum esse. 4. Principēs Gallōrum negābant sē oppida sua incendisse. 5. Rēx respondit pecūniam esse rēginae.<sup>1</sup> 6. Poētae existimābant potestātem deōrum esse maiōrem quam deārum. 7. His rēbus<sup>2</sup> cognitīs, spērāvimus aliquem missūrum esse nāvigium quod nōs servāret.<sup>3</sup> 8. Cum urbī appropinquārēmus, intellēximus mediam partem altis et lātis mūrīs mūnitam esse. 9. Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>2</sup> habitā, sēnsimus animum finitimōrum esse nōbis inimicum.

1. *rēginae*, predicate genitive of possessor (§ 150). 2. Ablative absolute (§ 400). 3. Subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose (§ 589).

**660.** Using five of the verbs in § 658, write five Latin sentences, each one containing an indirect statement.



A STREET IN POMPEII

The street is paved with blocks of lava. Note the stepping-stones for crossing the street in wet weather. Vesuvius looms in the distance

## LESSON CII

Quī trānstulit sustinet—He who transplanted sustains<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERŌ*

661. Review the word lists in §§ 755, 756.

662. Irregular Verb *ferō*. Learn the inflection of *ferō*, *bear* (§ 841). Its principal parts are very irregular, but the different tenses are formed on the three stems as usual.

a. The verb *ferō* has many compounds. One of these is *inferō* in the idiom *bellum inferō*, *I make war on*, with the dative. Learn also the idiom *graviter* or *molestē ferō*, *I am annoyed*, followed by the accusative and infinitive.

### EXERCISES

663. Derivation. Note the prefixes and give the meanings of the following compounds: *ad'ferō*, *cōn'ferō*, *dē'ferō*, *in'ferō*, *trāns'ferō*. Name ten English derivatives from these words.

664. I. 1. *Māvis, nōn vultis, vīs, nōlumus.* 2. *Ut nōlit, nē vellēmus, nōlite, māvultis.* 3. *It, imus, ut eant, eunt.* 4. *Fer,<sup>1</sup> tulisse, ferent, tulerant.* 5. *Ut ferrent, lātus esse, nē ferant.*

1. *Dīc, dūc, fac,* and *fer* are the four short imperatives. Cf. p. 100, footnote.

II. 1. *Rōmānī molestē ferēbant illam civitātem sociīs bellum inferre.* 2. *Explorātōrēs nūtiāvērunt summum montem circummunitum esse et firmō praesidiō tenēri.* 3. *Caesar respondit senātum graviter ferre magnam multitudinem Germānōrum in optimis partibus Galliae sedere.* 4. *Nōs iūdicāmus vōs nōbis bellum inferre nōn oportere.* 5. *Rēx dixit memoriā patrum*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of Connecticut.

Helvētiōs proelium cum Rōmānīs commisisse et eōs<sup>1</sup> magnā caede in fugam dedisse. 6. Cum impedimenta rapta essent barbari impetum nostrōrum diūtius ferre nōn poterant.

1. eōs refers to the Romans and is the object of *dedisse*.

665. 1. We are annoyed that the Gauls are making war on our allies. 2. The king denied that his son had gone. 3. The captives hastened to go that they might observe<sup>1</sup> the battle. 4. When the towers had been moved<sup>2</sup> to the walls, all who bore arms were led out.

1. spectō, -āre. 2. agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.

## LESSON CIII

Virtūs omnibus rēbus anteit—Virtue surpasses all things<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

666. Review the word lists in §§ 762, 763.

667. **Indirect Question Defined.** When we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

DIRECT QUESTION

INDIRECT QUESTION

*Who conquered the Gauls?*    *He asked who conquered the Gauls*

An indirect question is a noun clause and is usually the object of a verb of *asking, saying, knowing, or feeling*.

668. **Moods in Questions.** In English, as the example shows, the indicative is used in both direct and indirect questions.

<sup>1</sup> From Plautus, a dramatic poet.

**669.** In Latin, verbs in direct questions are in the indicative; verbs in indirect questions are in the subjunctive.

| DIRECT QUESTION                                                | INDIRECT QUESTION                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Quis Gallōs vicit ?</b><br><i>Who conquered the Gauls ?</i> | <b>Rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret</b><br><i>He asked who conquered the Gauls</i> |
| <b>Ubi est Rōma ?</b><br><i>Where is Rome ?</i>                | <b>Rogat ubi sit Rōma</b><br><i>He asks where Rome is</i>                      |

**a.** Compare indirect *questions* and indirect *statements*. An indirect question is interrogative in form and has its verb in the subjunctive, as shown above. An indirect statement is introduced in English by the conjunction *that*, and its verb in Latin is in the infinitive: as, *He says that Cæsar conquered the Gauls*, *dicit Caesarem Gallōs viciſſe*.

**670.** Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as direct questions. *Whether* is usually rendered by *num*.

**671. Rule for Indirect Questions.** *In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive, and its tense is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 595).*

**672.****IDIOMS**

*memoriā tenēre*, to remember (literally, to hold by memory)

*novis rēbus studēre*, to be eager for a revolution (literally, new things)

*in reliquum tempus*, for the future

**EXERCISES**

**673. 1.** Rēx rogāvit cūr lēgātī excessissent atque cūr ad sē nōn vēnissent. **2.** Imperātor, vir ēgregiæ virtūtis, amplās et integrās cōpiās misit quæ oppidum dēfenderent et cognōscerent quæ esset nātūra loci. **3.** Galli, quī semper novis rēbus<sup>1</sup> studēbant, quæsiērunt quid Rōmānī armis facere possent. **4.** Moneō tē nē in reliquum tempus petās quid agam. **5.** Tenētisne memoriā

quae sint pūblica officia cōsulis? 6. Omnibus rēbus comparātis, dux expectāvit<sup>2</sup> quid hostēs facerent. 7. Hī milītēs erant tam timidī ut imperiō<sup>1</sup> ducis pārēre nōn audērent.<sup>3</sup>

1. Why dative? See § 224. 2. *Waited to see*. 3. Why subjunctive? See § 616.

674. 1. How far distant is the villa? 2. He asks how far distant the villa is. 3. Do you remember the story about Brutus? 4. They asked whether he remembered the story about Brutus. 5. Whither do you wish to go? 6. Do you know whither you wish to go?



**Thirteenth Review. Lessons XCVII-CIII, §§ 798-803**



A MUSICAL RECITAL

The woman at the left is reciting a poem to the accompaniment of a lyre and two pipes. The pipes are fitted into a band across the piper's mouth, enabling him to blow on both pipes at the same time

## LESSON CIV

Mēns agitat mōlem — Mind moves the mass<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE IRREGULAR VERB *fiō*

675. Review the word lists in §§ 768, 769.

676. **Irregular Verb *fiō*.** Learn the inflection of *fiō*, *be made, happen* (§ 843). In the present system this verb serves as the passive of *faciō*. The rest of the passive of *faciō* is regular.

677.

#### IDIOMS

**Aliquem certiōrem faciō**, *I inform someone* (literally, *I make someone more certain*), followed by an infinitive with subject accusative or by an indirect question.

**Certior fiō**, *I am informed* (literally, *I am made more certain*), followed by the same construction as above.

**Helvētiis in animō est**, *the Helvetii intend* (literally, *it is in mind to the Helvetii*), followed by the complementary infinitive.

#### EXERCISES

678. 1. Tuā linguā intellegō tē esse Gallum, et certior factus sum tibi in animō esse ratiōnem nostram bellī hostibus nūntiāre. 2. Quā dē causā tē rapī iubēbō ut supplicium pūblicum dē tē sūmam. 3. Multa beneficia ā populō Rōmānō antē accēpisti, itaque tē rogō cūr tē gravissimam poenam dare nōn oporteat. 4. Iūre<sup>1</sup> bellī tē ad mortem dūcī statim oportet. 5. Magnā parte impedimentōrum relictā, hostēs alii aliam in partem fugērunt. 6. Sciēbant nec quō īrent nec quid facerent. 7. Explōrātor lēgātum certiōrem fēcīt quae<sup>2</sup> cōpiae castra obtinērent.

1. *In accordance with the law.* 2. *What forces*, introducing an indirect question.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Oregon.

**679.** 1. Don't you know why I am unwilling to undertake this business? 2. He asked why they were terrified. 3. He perceived why the camp had been moved. 4. Someone informed the senate that the town could not be taken. 5. We think that you will receive this state under<sup>1</sup> your protection. 6. He had been informed that the army had been led forward. 7. Do you know what the Helvetii intend to do?

1. *in* with the accusative.

## LESSON CV

*Litterae sine mōribus vānae* — Letters without morals are vain<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW • PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

**680.** Review the word lists in §§ 774, 775.

**681. Predicate Accusative.** In English, verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *naming*, and the like may take two objects referring to the same person or thing. The first of these is the direct object, and the second completes the sense of the predicate, and is called the predicate objective or the objective attribute.

*The Romans made him consul*

*The senate called the king friend*

**682.** Similarly, in Latin, *faciō*, *make*; *dēligō*, *choose*; *vocō* and *appellō*, *call*, and the like may take two accusatives: the first, the direct object; the second, referring to the same person or thing, known as the predicate accusative.

*Rōmānī eum cōnsulem fēcērunt*, *the Romans made him consul*

*Senātus rēgem amicum appellāvit*, *the senate called the king friend*

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Pennsylvania.

**683.** When the verb is changed to the passive, both the accusatives become nominatives; the direct object becoming the subject, and the predicate accusative the predicate nominative.

*Rēx amicus ā senātū appellātus est, the king was called friend by the senate*

a. Note that *senātus*, the subject of the active verb, becomes *ā senātū*, ablative of agent, when the verb is changed to the passive.

**684. Rule for Predicate Accusative.** *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, and the like may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.*

**685. Dative of Purpose.** Observe the following sentence:

*Explōrātōrēs locum castris dēlēgērunt, the scouts chose a place for a camp*

Note that the dative *castris* expresses the purpose for which the place was intended. Such a dative is called the *dative of purpose* or *end for which*. It is often followed by a second dative denoting the person or thing affected: as,

*Hoc erat magnō impedimentō Gallis, this was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls*

**686. Rule for Dative of Purpose.** *The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected.*

## 687.

## IDIOMS

*iniūriās alicui inferre, to inflict injuries upon someone*  
*nihil posse, to have no power*  
*praesidiō civitāti esse, to be a defense to the state*

**688.** 1. Omnibus temporibus exercitus erat firmissimō praesidiō civitatī. 2. Lēgātus nōs certiōrēs fēcit tē cōsulem appellātum esse. 3. Rogāvi cūr senātus mihi iniūriās intulisset. 4. Rēx voluit vōbīs auxiliō esse, sed nihil poterat. 5. Certior factus eram tibi in animō esse domum sine mē contendere. 6. Magnō impedimentō hostibus erit si hunc locum castris dēligēmus. 7. Scisne cūr Rōmāni urbem Rōmam appellāverint?

## EXERCISE

**689.** 1. Men like you are a great defense to the commonwealth. 2. The consul called the woman's sister queen of the island. 3. The new city was called Rome by Romulus. 4. It will be a great hindrance<sup>1</sup> to your safety if the citizens make<sup>2</sup> you king. 5. The chiefs dared to inflict injuries upon the king because he had no power. 6. He asked where the horseman had left his spurs.

1. Latin, *for a great hindrance*. 2. Use the future perfect.

## LESSON CVI

Crēscit eundō — She grows as she goes<sup>1</sup>

## VOCABULARY REVIEW • THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

**690.** Review the word lists in §§ 778, 779.

**691. Gerund.** A verbal noun is the name of an action: as, *Talking is useless.*

**692.** English has many verbal nouns ending in *-ing*. When these are in the nominative case, they are expressed in Latin by the infinitive: as,

*Seeing is believing, vidēre est crēdere*

**693.** When the English verbal noun is not a nominative, it is expressed in Latin by a verbal noun called a *gerund*.

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the state of New Mexico. Literally, *She grows by going*.

**694.** The Latin gerund is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, and is formed by adding **-ndī**, **-ndō**, **-ndum**, **-ndō** to the present stem : as,

|      |                             |
|------|-----------------------------|
| GEN. | vocandī, <i>of calling</i>  |
| DAT. | vocandō, <i>for calling</i> |
| ACC. | vocandum, <i>calling</i>    |
| ABL. | vocandō, <i>by calling</i>  |

Learn the gerunds of the other model verbs, **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō** (§§ 833-836). Deponent verbs have the gerund of the active voice.

**695. Uses of Gerund.** The gerund has the construction of a noun ; but, being verbal in character, it may have an object : as,

**gerendō bellum**, *by waging war*

Here **gerendō** is ablative of means and **bellum** is its direct object.

**696. Gerund denoting Purpose.** The accusative of the gerund with **ad**, or the genitive of the gerund followed by **causā** (*for the sake of*), is often used to express purpose.

**Hominēs ad videndum vēnērunt**, *the men came for the purpose of seeing, to see* (literally, *for seeing*)

**Hominēs videndī causā vēnērunt**, *the men came for the sake of seeing, to see*

**697. Gerundive.** The future passive participle (§ 565) is called the *gerundive* when it takes the place of the gerund. The gerund, being a noun, may be used either alone or with an object ; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun. Observe the following sentences :

1. **Urbem videndī causā vēnērunt**, *they came to see the town*

2. **Urbis videndae causā vēnērunt**, *they came to see the town* (literally, *they came for the sake of the town to be seen*)

In sentence 1, we have the gerund **videndī** and its direct object **urbem**. In 2, we have the gerundive **videndae** in agreement with **urbis**.

Note that the sentences are translated alike. *The gerund with a direct object must not be used except in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.* Even then the gerundive construction is more common.

## SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT POINTS

1. The gerund is a noun. The gerundive is an adjective.
2. The gerund may stand alone or with an object.
3. The gerundive construction is more frequently used than the gerund with an object.
4. The gerund with an object may be used only in the genitive or in the ablative without a preposition.
5. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive after *ad*, or the genitive preceding *causā*, may be used to denote purpose.

## EXERCISES

**698.** 1. *Omnēs mulierēs ōrātiōnem audiendī<sup>1</sup> causā mānsērunt.* 2. *Omnēs mulierēs ad ōrātiōnem audiendam<sup>1</sup> mānsērunt.* 3. *Fuga erat tam celeris ut nūllum spatium ad novās cōpiās cōgendās darētur.* 4. *Multis vulnerātis, reliquī adventum ducis exspectāvērunt, minimē diūtius resistendī causā sed pācis petendae causā.* 5. *Spatium neque arma capiendī neque auxili petendī datum est.* 6. *Haec civitās, auctōritāte et grātiā rēgis adducta, cōpiās pedestrēs ad iter nostrum prohibendum mīserat.* 7. *Maximae rēs nōn exspectandō sed agendō cōficiuntur.*

1. Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?

**699.** 1. *You will make your death more certain by remaining among the Gauls.* 2. *He made the journey much<sup>1</sup> shorter by building<sup>2</sup> a bridge.* 3. *They sent ambassadors to seek<sup>3</sup> peace.* 4. *The cavalry battle was very severe, since<sup>4</sup> the place was unfavorable for fighting.* 5. *Cæsar learned, by inquiring, what<sup>5</sup> the nature of the island was.*

1. Latin, *by much*, ablative of measure of difference, § 452. 2. Use both the gerund and the gerundive construction. 3. Use the genitive with *causā*.
4. *cum* causal, § 642. 5. What kind of question? See § 671.

## LESSON CVII

Disciplina praesidium civitātis — Training, the defense of the state<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW • REVIEW OF AGREEMENT AND OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

**700.** Review the word lists in §§ 783, 784.

#### **701. The Four Agreements.**

1. Agreement of the predicate noun and appositive (§§ 61, 104).
2. Agreement of the adjective, adjective pronoun, and participle (§§ 91, 134).
3. Agreement of the verb with its subject (§ 48).
4. Agreement of the relative pronoun with its antecedent (§ 390).

#### **702. The Genitive Case.**

1. Genitive of the Possessor { *a.* As attributive (§ 34).  
                                          *b.* As predicate (§ 150).
2. Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive (§ 541).
3. Genitive with Adjectives (§ 554).
4. Genitive of Description (§ 562).

#### **703. The Dative Case.**

1. The Indirect Object { *a.* With intransitive verbs, and with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object in the accusative (§ 58).  
                                  *b.* With special intransitive verbs (§ 224).  
                                  *c.* With verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** (§ 623).
2. Dative with Adjectives (§ 130).
3. Dative of Purpose (§ 686).

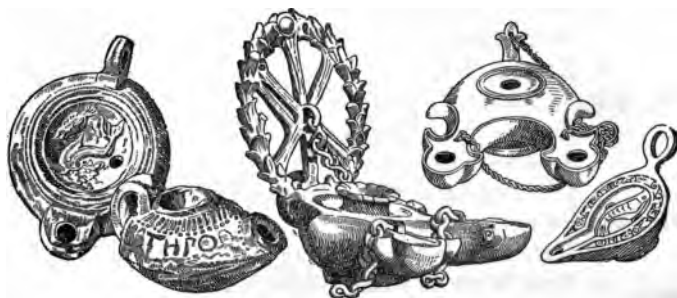
<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Texas.

## EXERCISES

**704.** 1. Fortissimi militum quōs vidimus existimāverunt imperium belli esse Caesaris imperātōris. 2. Socii, timōre commōti, quendam rei militāris peritissimum exercitui praefecerant. 3. Num senātus memoriam iniuriarum quās nōbīs intulisti dēponere dēbet? 4. Nōn virtūs sed sapientia rēgi deērat. 5. Militēs cum diūtius impetum sustinēre nōn possent, aliī aliam in partem fugērunt. 6. Aciē instrūctā, imperātor proelium ā dextrō cornū commisit. 7. Cum Rōmae essem, aliquis dēmōstrāvit domum ubi ille incolēbat. 8. Magna pars equitātūs, hostēs sequendi cupida, summā celeritāte contendit. 9. Decima legiō erat maximae virtūtis. Quā dē causā Caesar huic legiōni maximē favēbat.

**705.** 1. Marcus is not desirous of living<sup>1</sup> in the city. 2. Which of you is a Roman citizen? Neither of us. 3. You alone could persuade me to hold<sup>2</sup> back the army. 4. Whom did the general place in command of the left wing? 5. A wall of great height was a strong defense<sup>3</sup> to the town. 6. A certain man inflicted these injuries on me. 7. He was desirous of your friendship.

1. Genitive of the gerund. 2. Not infinitive. 3. Dative of purpose.



ROMAN LAMPS

## LESSON CVIII

Studiis et rebus honestis — To pursuits and deeds that are honorable<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

**706.** Review the word lists in §§ 788, 789.

#### **707. The Accusative Case.**

1. The Accusative as Direct Object (§ 35).
2. The Predicate Accusative (§ 684).
3. The Accusative as Subject of an Infinitive (§ 368).
4. The Accusative of Duration or Extent (§ 547).
5. The Accusative denoting the Place to Which (§ 481).

#### **708. The Ablative Case.**

##### **I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):**

1. Cause (§ 165).
2. Means (§ 166).
3. Accompaniment (§ 167).
4. Manner (§ 168).
5. Measure of Difference (§ 452).
6. Ablative Absolute (§ 400).
7. Description (§ 562).
8. Respect (§ 552).

##### **II. Ablative rendered *from* (or *by*):**

1. Place from Which (§§ 295, 482).
2. Separation (§ 296).
3. Personal Agent with a Passive Verb (§ 261).

##### **III. Ablative rendered *in* (or *at*):**

1. Place at or in Which (§ 483).
2. Time When or within Which (§ 493).

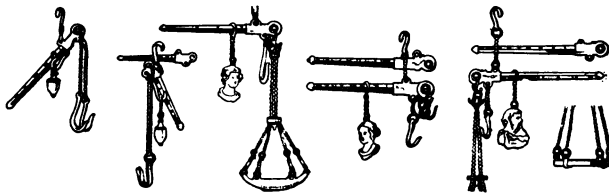
<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of Vermont.

## EXERCISES

709. 1. Dux trēs cohortēs praemisit quae vāllum fossamque duo milia passuum per eōrum finis perducerent. 2. Aliquae civitatēs scripsērunt sē malle in fidē populi Rōmāni permanēre. 3. Paucis praesidiō castris relictis, barbari tertiā hōrā aciem instruere incēpērunt. 4. Plūrēs diēs iter intermissum est ut militēs oppida hostium expugnārent. 5. Plūrimum vērō apud Gallōs haec civitās et virtūte et hominum numerō poterat. 6. Illa victōria nōbis erat grātor quam omnēs aliae. 7. Imperātor captivum rogāvit quā dē causā salutem fugā petisset. 8. Hōc proeliō cōfectō, lēgātus suis laudem idōneam dedit quod summā virtūte pugnāverant. 9. Rēx cum ā senātū amicus appellātus esset, tamen erat animō inimicō.

710. 1. The Gauls, meanwhile, seize the bridge that they may prevent<sup>1</sup> our march. 2. On hearing this,<sup>2</sup> Cæsar hastened from Rome into Gaul with three legions. 3. The citizens informed<sup>3</sup> me that a certain man had called Cæsar king. 4. Because of the greatness of the crowd no one could hear the oration. 5. Some towns are much larger than others. 6. The next day he went home to see<sup>4</sup> his son.

1. Latin, *keep us from the march*. 2. Latin, *these things having been heard*, ablative absolute. 3. Latin, *made more certain*. 4. Why not infinitive?



STEELYARDS FROM POMPEII

These seem to have been a Roman invention. Nearly all the scales found at Pompeii are of this pattern

## LESSON CIX

*Ecce quam bonum*—Behold how good<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW · REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**711.** Review the word lists in §§ 793, 794.

**712. The Gerund and Gerundive.**

1. The Gerund and its Construction (§§ 691–696).
2. The Gerundive and its Construction (§ 697).

**713. Constructions of the Infinitive.**

I. The Infinitive used as in English :

1. As Subject or Predicate Nominative (§ 370).
2. As Object with Subject Accusative (§ 367).
3. Complementary Infinitive (§ 369).

II. The Infinitive in Indirect Statements (§§ 654, 656, 657).

**714. Constructions of the Subjunctive.**

1. The Subjunctive of Purpose (§§ 588, 602).
2. The Subjunctive of Result (§§ 616, 618).
3. The Subjunctive with *cum* (§ 643).
4. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions (§ 671).

### EXERCISES

**715.** 1. Caesar ab exploratōribus certior factus est Gallōs novis rēbus studēre. 2. Lēgātī cum pervēnissent, petēbant nē Rōmānī oppidum suum incenderent. 3. Dux mihi imperāvit ut cognōscerem quae ratiō belli esset. 4. Nōs quidem molestē ferimus sociōs nostrōs dē rē frūmentāriā nōn prōvidisse. 5. Propter multitudinem tēlōrum erat difficillimum in vāllō cōsistere. 6. Tam ācriter ab utrāque parte pugnābātur ut

<sup>1</sup> Motto of the University of the South.

multa milia hominum vulnerarentur. 7. Nōne cōpiās integrās praemittēmus ad Rōmānōs itinere interclūdendōs? 8. Cum oppidō<sup>1</sup> mediā nocte appropinquārēmus, tamen omnēs civēs nōs exspectābant. 9. Cum pācem iam petātis, hās condiciōnēs prōpōnam. 10. Inopia aquae fēcit ut nōs omnēs premerēmur.

1. Dative with **appropinquārēmus**.

**716.** 1. Such fear seized the hearts of all that not even the bravest were willing to remain. 2. He asked who was in command of the ships.<sup>1</sup> 3. He demanded that<sup>2</sup> for the future the army should not be led through our territory. 4. Cæsar built a bridge for the purpose<sup>3</sup> of terrifying the Germans. 5. Someone said that you had been placed in command of the army.<sup>1</sup>

1. Not genitive. See § 623. 2. *That . . . not*, **nē**. 3. Use **causā** with the genitive of the gerund or gerundive. See § 696.

## LESSON CX

Iamque opus exēgī — And now I have finished my work<sup>1</sup>

### VOCABULARY REVIEW • REVIEW OF WORD FORMATION

**717.** Review the word lists in §§ 798, 799.

#### **718. Review of Prefixes.**

1. Illustrate the force of each of the following prefixes by a Latin word (§§ 341, 497):

|                         |               |              |            |              |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| <b>ā</b> (ab)           | <b>dē</b>     | <b>inter</b> | <b>prō</b> | <b>sub</b>   |
| <b>ad</b>               | <b>ē</b> (ex) | <b>per</b>   | <b>re-</b> | <b>trāns</b> |
| <b>con-</b> (com-, co-) | <b>in</b>     | <b>prae</b>  |            |              |

2. What is meant by assimilation? (§ 375.)

3. What changes in spelling occur in compounds of words like **capiō**, **faciō**, etc.? (§ 376.)

<sup>1</sup> From the closing lines of Ovid's great poem, the "Metamorphoses."

4. What is the force of **in-** (**im-**) when prefixed to an adjective or adverb? Illustrate. (§ 374.)

**719. Review of Suffixes.**

1. What can you say in general about the use of suffixes in Latin and in English? (§§ 425, 426.)

2. How are Latin nouns like **rēctor**, **victor**, etc. formed, and how are the corresponding English words derived? (§ 574.)

3. By means of what suffixes are abstract nouns formed from adjectives? Illustrate. (§ 626.)

4. Explain the force of the suffix in the following adjectives: **cupidus**, **periculōsus**, **facilis**, **crēdibilis**. (§§ 627-629.)

**720. Hints on Spelling.**

1. What generally determines whether an English word should end in **-ant** or **-ent**? Illustrate. (§ 573.)

2. What is the rule for the spelling of English words in **-able** or **-ible**? in **-tion** or **-sion**? Illustrate. (§§ 630, 631.)



THE GAULS IN SIGHT OF ROME

## OPTIONAL LESSONS

### OPTIONAL LESSON A

Ēmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs — She refines character and does not allow it to be untrained<sup>1</sup>

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION

**721.** A relative clause with its verb in the indicative states a fact concerning the antecedent: as,

**Caesar erat imperātor qui Gallōs superāvit, Cæsar was the general who overcame the Gauls**

**722.** A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is often used to *describe* an antecedent. Such a clause is called a relative clause of characteristic or description: as,

**Quondam erat imperātor qui Gallōs superāret, once there was a general who overcame the Gauls**

**a.** A relative clause is descriptive when the antecedent is indefinite or general and the relative may be translated by the words *of such a character that*, as in the following expressions:

**sunt qui sciāt, there are some who know** (i. e. of such a character that they know)

**quis est qui sciāt, who is there who knows?**

**nēmō est qui sciāt, there is no one who knows**

**ūnus est qui sciāt, he is the only one who knows**

**723. Rule for Subjunctive of Characteristic.** *A relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an antecedent. This is called the subjunctive of characteristic or description.*

<sup>1</sup> From Ovid. Motto of the University of South Carolina.

## EXERCISES

**724.** 1. Erant duo itinera quibus Helvētī domō discēdere possent. 2. Erat nūllum oppidum quod sē armis dēfendere vellet. 3. Quis est quī viam meliōrem nōbis ostendere possit? 4. Ille est ūnus quī sciat nātūrā illius locī. 5. Cum Rōmāni oppidum rē frūmentāriā interclūserint, nihil habēmus quō diūtius sustinēre possimus. 6. Alii Gallōrum pācis petendae cupidī erant. 7. Erant alii quī novīs rēbus studērent. 8. Erant quī molestē ferrent novās legiōnēs in nostris finibus cōscribi. 9. Nēmō est quī neget rem pūblicā cōservārī dēbere. 10. Dentātus cum imperium summum tenēret, tamen rūri vivere mālēbat. 11. Quis est quī nōn audiverit Rōmulum urbem suam Rōmam appellāvisse?

**725.** 1. Once there was a consul who inflicted the severest punishment on his own sons. 2. Who is there that does not remember that man's name? 3. There were some who said that the consul's sons had made war upon their country. 4. It is the business<sup>1</sup> of the consul to look out for the safety<sup>2</sup> of the commonwealth. 5. He is the only one who has sufficient authority.<sup>3</sup>

1. Omit. 2. Not dative. 3. Latin, *sufficient of authority*, partitive genitive.



ROMAN CAESTUS, OR BOXING GLOVE

This consisted of thongs of leather bound around the hand and forearm. It was often loaded with lead and was a terrible weapon

OPTIONAL LESSON B

Dē gustibus nōn est disputandum — There is no disputing  
about tastes<sup>1</sup>

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS AND THE  
DATIVE OF AGENT

726. The future active participle in -ūrus is often combined with the forms of **sum** to denote future or intended action : as,

**vocātūrus sum**, *I am about to call, I intend to call*  
**audītūrus eram**, *I was about to hear, I intended to hear*

This is known as the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

727. The future passive participle (gerundive) in -ndus is similarly combined with the forms of **sum** to denote obligation or necessity in the passive voice : as,

**vocandus sum**, *I ought to be called, I must be called*  
**audiendus sum**, *I ought to be heard, I must be heard*

This is known as the *passive periphrastic conjugation*.

728. The personal agent is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (§ 261) : as, **castra ā militibus mūnita sunt**, *the camp was fortified by the soldiers* ; but with a passive periphrastic form the person by whom something ought to be done or must be done is expressed by the *dative*. This is called the *dative of agent* : as,

**Castra militibus mūnienda sunt**, *the camp must be fortified by the soldiers*

**729. Rule for Dative of Agent.** *With the passive periphrastic conjugation agency is expressed by the dative.*

<sup>1</sup> Or *Everyone to his own taste*. Both of these translations are free. Literally, *It ought not to be disputed about tastes*, **disputandum est** being an impersonal passive periphrastic form.

## EXERCISES

**730.** 1. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 2. Signum proeli imperātōri dandum erat. 3. Militēs quī aberant ducibus convocandī erant. 4. Legiōnēs quae pugnātūrae erant Caesarī hortandae erant. 5. His omnibus rēbus cōfectis, aciēs erat instruenda. 6. Sed tam breve erat tempus et tantus erat impetus hostium ut magna pars hārum rērum eis intermittenda esset. 7. Eō diē erant quī putārent Rōmānōs nōn victūrōs esse. 8. Quis est quī crēdat illud proelium nōn faciendum fuisse? 9. Mox auditūri sumus dē aliis bellis quae ā Rōmānīs gesta sunt. 10. Longa itinera magnō impedimentō Rōmānīs futūra sunt.

**731.** 1. Many things had to be done by Theseus to save<sup>1</sup> the boys and girls of Greece. 2. That famous man intended to kill the Minotaur. 3. First a long journey to Crete had to be made by him. 4. Then help had to be given by someone. 5. When he had arrived at<sup>2</sup> Crete, he told the king's daughter what<sup>3</sup> he intended to do. 6. Without any difficulty he persuaded her to give<sup>4</sup> him<sup>5</sup> aid.

1. Not infinitive (§ 588). 2. ad. 3. An indirect question (§ 671). 4. Not infinitive (§ 602). 5. sibi.



THE ROMANS STORM THE ENEMY'S STRONGHOLD

## ORIGINAL STORIES

Study each of the following pictures. Where is the scene laid? What objects do you see? What characters are present? What are they doing? Attention to these details will give you the material for writing a short Latin story or, at least, for composing some disconnected sentences. The vocabulary below each picture will help you.



I. In times ancient as well as modern, women by their patriotic service have saved the state when men were ready to despair.

**argentum**, -i, *n.*, silver  
**aurum**, -i, *n.*, gold  
**computō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, compute  
**dēsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be  
 lacking, *w. dat.*  
**dōnum**, -i, *n.*, gift  
**mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, matron, lady  
**mēsa**, -ae, *f.*, table  
**ōrnāmentum**, -i, *n.*, jewel

**patria**, -ae, *f.*, country, native land  
**pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money  
**periculum**, -i, *n.*, danger  
**scriba**, -ae, *m.*, clerk  
**sedeō**, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit; *ante*  
*mēsam sedēre*, sit before a table  
*sine*, *prep. w. abl.*, without  
**summa**, -ae, *f.*, sum total  
**tabula**, -ae, *f.*, writing tablet



II. Roman women were famous for their devotion to their children, whom they valued far above beauty or personal adornment.

**ancilla**, -ae, *f.*, maidservant

**ānulus**, -ī, *m.*, ring

**arcula**, -ae, *f.*, jewel casket

**armilla**, -ae, *f.*, bracelet

**aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold

**Cornēlia**, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, *the woman on the left*

**ēducō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, train, bring up

**fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, beauty

**Gāius**, Gāi, *m.*, Gaius, *the younger son of Cornelia*

**gemma**, -ae, *f.*, gem, jewel

**laudō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, praise

**liberī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children

**margarita**, -ae, *f.*, pearl

**mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, matron

**maximē**, *adv.*, most of all, especially

**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table

**optimus**, -a, -um, best

**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, *n.*, ornament, jewel

**ostentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, display, show off

**pretiōsus**, -a, -um, expensive, fine

**rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ask

**splendidus**, -a, -um, glittering

**superbus**, -a, -um, proud

**Tiberius**, Tiberī, *m.*, Tiberius, *the older son of Cornelia*

**vicīna**, -ae, *f.*, neighbor

**visitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call on, go to see

III. This picture is clearly of a religious character. The Romans were very faithful in their worship. The household gods comprised the Lares (the spirits of the ancestors), the Penates (the gods guarding the family stores), and the Genius (the guardian spirit of the master of the house). The family shrine was often a niche, containing images of the gods, with an altar before it. In the picture the niche is closed by a metal screen. The serpents painted on the wall are a symbol of the protecting divinities. Incense was burned to the gods; and wine, oil, and food were offered. Family worship was usually conducted by the father. He is not present in this case. Perhaps he is fighting with the Gauls, and is in danger of his life.



**absum**, **abesse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, be away, be absent  
**adōrō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, worship  
**ampulla**, **-ae**, *f.*, bottle  
**ante**, *prep. w. acc.*, before  
**āra**, **-ae**, *f.*, altar  
**cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily  
**cremō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, burn  
**dōnum**, **-i**, *n.*, gift, offering  
**ēducō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, train, educate  
**fūmō**, **-āre**, —, —, smoke  
**invocō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, invoke, call upon  
**larārium**, **-i**, *n.*, household shrine

**Larēs**, **-um**, *m. pl.*, the Lares  
**mātrōna**, **-ae**, *f.*, matron, wife  
**oleum**, **-i**, *n.*, oil  
**optō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, wish for, pray for  
**pavimentum**, **-i**, *n.*, pavement, floor  
**Penātēs**, **-ium**, *m. pl.*, the Penates  
**peristylum**, **-i**, *n.*, the peristyle, the inner court of a Roman house  
**sacrificō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, offer sacrifice  
**sellula**, **-ae**, *f.*, low stool  
**stō**, **-āre**, **steti**, **stātūrus**, stand  
**trochus**, **-i**, *m.*, hoop  
**tūs**, **tūris**, *n.*, incense



IV. Among the Greek heroes none was more famous than Hercules. He went about destroying the huge and fierce monsters that laid waste the land. One of the most dangerous of these was an immense hydra, or water serpent, with seven heads.

**cauda**, -ae, *f.*, tail

**clāva**, -ae, *f.*, club

**cupīō**, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, desire, wish

**exspirō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, breathe out

**feriō**, -īre, —, —, strike, hit

**flamma**, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire

**fortissimus**, -a, -um, bravest

**fūmus**, -i, *m.*, smoke

**Herculēs**, -is, *m.*, Hercules

**hērōs**, -ōis, *acc.* hērōa (*a Greek noun*), *m.*, hero, demigod

**hydra**, -ae, *f.*, hydra, water serpent

**mōnstrum**, -ī, *n.*, monster

**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, kill

**petō**, -ere, -ii, -ītus, seek, attack

**rapiō**, -ere, -ui, -tus, seize

**saevus**, -a, -um, savage

**timeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, fear

**validissimus**, -a, -um, strongest

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste, destroy

**vāstus**, -a, -um, huge, immense

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wound



V. Among the most beautiful surviving works of ancient art are the Greek vases. Besides their grace of form, they are adorned with artistic designs and pictures drawn from legends of gods and heroes. Often, too, there are scenes from the classic drama. The colors used are chiefly black, red, and white. How absorbed the young Greek is in his painting! Does the girl seem interested? What do you think the artist will do with the vase after he has finished it?

**admiror, -āri, -ātus sum**, admire  
**adulēscēns, -entis, m.**, youth  
**albus, -a, -um**, white  
**artificium, artif'ci, n.**, work of art  
**āter, ātra, ātrum**, black  
**color, -ōris, m.**, color  
**ērudītus, -a, -um**, skillful  
**iānua, -ae, f.**, door, doorway  
**lapis, -idis, m.**, stone  
**laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, praise  
**mūrus, -i, m.**, wall

**patella, -ae, f.**, saucer  
**pēnicillus, -i, m.**, paint brush  
**pictor, -ōris, m.**, artist, painter  
**pictūra, -ae, f.**, picture  
**pingō, -ere, pīnxi, pictus**, paint  
**pōcillum, -i, n.**, little cup  
**ruber, -bra, -brum**, red  
**spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, look at  
**teneō, -ēre, -uī, —**, hold the atten-  
tion of, interest  
**vās, vāsis, n., pl. vāsa, -ōrum**, vase



VI. Many stories are told about Dædalus (*ded'a-lus*), the Athenian, famed for his skill as an inventor, artist, and builder. Once, accompanied by his son Icarus (*ik'a-rus*), he visited the island of Crete and by his marvelous works won the king's favor. Later the king became angry with him and refused to let him leave the island. All the ships were seized and all the ports guarded. Longing for home, Dædalus and his son seemed without means of escape. But Dædalus had genius and a courage equal to any deed of daring. What did he do?

*āla*, -ae, *f.*, wing  
*audāx*, -ācis, bold  
*avis*, -is, *f.*, bird  
*cēra*, -ae, *f.*, wax  
*dēcidō*, -ere, *dēcidi*, —, fall down  
*dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for  
*doceō*, -ēre, -ui, -tus, teach  
*fuga*, -ae, *f.*, flight  
*fugiō*, -ere, *fūgi*, *fugitūrus*, flee  
*incipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, begin  
*interclūdō*, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, shut  
 off, cut off  
*irātus*, -a, -um, angry  
*ligō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bind, tie  
*liquefaciō*, -ere, —, -factus, melt

*mare*, -is, *n.*, sea  
*monitum*, -i, *n.*, advice  
*opus*, *operis*, *n.*, work  
*pāreō*, -ēre, -ui, —, obey, *w. dat.*  
*penna*, -ae, *f.*, feather  
*pōnō*, -ere, *posui*, *positus*, put  
*recūsō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refuse  
*reditus*, -ūs, *m.*, return  
*reperiō*, -ire, *repperi*, *repertus*, in-  
 vent  
*sōl*, *sōlis*, *m.*, sun  
*submergō*, -ere, -mersi, -mersus,  
 drown  
*umerus*, -i, *m.*, shoulder  
*volō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, fly



VII. The Romans were devoted to their children and trained them very carefully. They taught them to be obedient and respectful, to have reverence for all things sacred, to be truthful and honorable, and to be courageous and self-reliant. Every Roman boy was destined to be a soldier, and so from earliest childhood he learned to despise danger and to regard cowardice as worse than death.

**ancilla**, -ae, *f.*, maidservant  
**collum**, -ī, *n.*, neck  
**columna**, -ae, *f.*, column  
**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house  
**fortis**, forte, brave  
**ignāvia**, -ae, *f.*, cowardice  
**ignāvus**, -a, -um, cowardly  
**leō**, -ōnis, *m.*, lion  
**ligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bind, tie  
**lūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, play  
**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand  
**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother

**pavimentum**, -ī, *n.*, pavement  
**quod**, *conj.*, because  
**restis**, -is, *f.*, rope  
**rideō**, -ēre, -sī, -sus, laugh  
**saevus**, -a, -um, savage  
**scutica**, -ae, *f.*, whip  
**sedeō**, -ēre, **sēdī**, **sessus**, sit  
**stō**, -āre, **stetī**, **stātūrus**, stand  
**timeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, fear  
**timor**, -ōris, *m.*, fear  
**verberō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, beat, whip  
**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, courage



VIII. This picture might be called "What happened at Lucia's Party." Lucia is having a party on the porch. Refreshments are being served by two maids. But the children in the adjoining room, drawn from their play by the tempting sights and smells, are getting nothing. What do you suppose they did about it?

**ancilla**, -ae, *f.*, maidservant  
**bibō**, -ere, *bibī*, —, drink  
**callidus**, -a, -um, crafty, sly  
**cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hide, conceal  
**cibus**, -i, *m.*, food  
**conclāve**, -is, *n.*, room  
**conviva**, -ae, *m. and f.*, guest  
**convivium**, -i, *n.*, party  
**convivor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, give a party  
**crūstulum**, -i, *n.*, confectionery  
**dēsiderō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, long for  
**edō**, -ere, *ēdi*, *ēsus*, eat  
**ēripiō**, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, snatch away

**ēsuriēns**, -entis, hungry  
**frūctus**, -ūs, *m.*, fruit  
**lateō**, -ēre, *latui*, —, lie hid  
**liberī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children  
**libum**, -i, *n.*, cake  
**mel**, *mellis*, *n.*, honey  
**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table  
**occultus**, -a, -um, hidden, secret  
**pānis**, -is, *m.*, bread  
**pōculum**, -i, *n.*, cup  
**porticus**, -ūs, *f.*, porch  
**post**, *prep. w. acc.*, behind  
**sella**, -ae, *f.*, chair  
**vinum**, -i, *n.*, wine  
**virgō**, -inis, *f.*, young girl



IX. Roman towns had many shops. These resembled our stalls or booths. They were open in front with the exception of a low wall forming the counter, and were closed at night by wooden shutters. The wares stood or hung about the shop or were placed on shelves within easy reach of the shopkeeper as he stood behind the counter. This is a provision shop. There are eatables of different kinds, and jars of wine. Do you see the sign? What does it advertise? Give Latin names to the characters, and tell what they are doing or make up a story about them. Do not forget the donkey.

altilēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, poultry  
 alveus, -ī, *m.*, trough  
 amphora, -ae, *f.*, wine jar  
 asinus, -ī, *m.*, donkey  
 bibō, -ere, bibi, —, drink  
 cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese  
 cibāria, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, provisions  
 dēfessus, -a, -um, weary  
 edō, -ere, ēdi, ēsus, eat  
 emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus, buy  
 farcimen, -inis, *n.*, sausage  
 fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour  
 holus, -eris, *n.*, vegetables

insigne, -is, *n.*, sign  
 mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table, counter  
 oleum, -ī, *n.*, oil  
 pendeō, -ēre, pependi, —, hang,  
     be suspended  
 pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup  
 quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest  
 recreō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, refresh  
 sitiō, -īre, -ivi, —, be thirsty  
 taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop  
 tabernārius, -ī, *m.*, shopkeeper  
 vēndō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, sell  
 vinum, -ī, *n.*, wine



**THE RETURN OF PERSEPHONE**

From the painting by Sir Frederick Leighton. Used by permission of the Art Gallery Committee of the Corporation of Leeds. (See story of Ceres and Proserpina, page 275)

## SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

### A BRITISH CHIEF URGES RESISTANCE TO THE ROMAN INVASION

(AFTER LESSON XXIII)

Est fāma bellī, Britannī, novī et magnī. Iam Rōmānī agrōs miserōrum Gallōrum tenent. Iam ōrās Galliae proximās nostrae insulae tenent. Nunc Britannia est in periculō. Iam Rōmānī cōpiās suās convocant. Mox ad insulam nostram nāvigābunt et oppida nostra occupābunt. Sed sumus Britannī; Britannī nihil ; (*nothing*) timent. Numquam Rōmānīs oppida nostra, filiās nostrās, filiōs nostrōs dabimus. Ad arma! Ad arma! Pugnābimus, pugnābimus. Numquam liberī virī erunt servī. Superābimus Rōmānōs et magna erunt praemia nostra.

### A FATHER'S LETTER TO HIS SON

(AFTER LESSON XLIII)

Quam grāta mihi (*to me*), Mārce, erat epistula magistrī tui! Nam magister diligentiam tuam laudat (*praise*) et dicit: "Filius tuus est bonus et industrius. Numquam officium suum negligit (*neglect*) et semper ēgregium exemplum tardis dat." Māter ad tē (*you*) librum pulchrum, praemium diligentiae tuae, mox mittet. 5 Soror (*sister*) tua hodiē (*today*) sex annōs habet. Saepe rogat (*ask*): "Ubi est frāter Mārcus? Diū āfuit. Quandō (*when*) revertet (*return*)?" Valē.

### FABLE — THE LION'S SHARE

(AFTER LESSON LXI)

Animālia leō, equus, capra (*goat*), ovis (*sheep*), societātem faciunt. Multam praedam capiunt et in ūnum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partēs praedam dividunt. Praedā divīsā, leō dixit: "Prima

pars mea est, nam leō est rēx animāliū. Et mea est secunda pars  
meis labōribus. Tertiam partem vindicō (*claim*), nam magnam 5  
famem habeo. Dēnique quārtam partem rapiam et si quis (*anyone*)  
prohibēbit, eum interficiam."

### ARI'ON'S GOOD FORTUNE

(AFTER LESSON LXXX)



ARI'ON SAVED BY A DOLPHIN

*Ari'On, the noted singer, after an enthusiastic reception in foreign  
lands, embarks for home laden with treasures*

Ōlim Ariōn,<sup>1</sup> vātēs<sup>2</sup> nōtissimus, domō longissimē aberat ac  
patriam petēbat. Ei rēgēs multārum terrārum praemia amplissima  
dederant. Ariōn omnēs rēs quās accēperat in nāve posuerat et  
domum sēcum portābat. Iam nāvis in mediō marī erat, neque ūlla  
terra vidērī poterat.

5

1. In English, *A-ri-on*. 2. vātēs, -is, m. and f.. *bard, singer*.

*The crew conspire to drown him and seize his wealth*

Tum nautae, hominēs pessimī, barbarum cōsilium cēperunt atque inter sē<sup>1</sup> dixērunt: "Certē hic vir ex manibus nostris numquam dimittētur.<sup>2</sup> Eum interficiēmus et omnia quae habet nostra erunt." Deinde vātem corripunt<sup>3</sup> et in mare dēiciunt.

*He is miraculously saved by a huge dolphin*

Arīōn tōtam spem salūtis dēposuerat et mortem certam exspectāvit. Sed deī ipsī vitam eius cōservāvērunt. Nam subitō<sup>4</sup> Arīōn in tergō<sup>5</sup> magnī delphinī<sup>6</sup> sedēre visus est, qui ad ōram proximam eum celeriter vexit.<sup>7</sup>

## CERES AND PROSERPINA

## (AFTER LESSON LXXXVIII)

This is one of the most beautiful of the Greek myths. Proserpina's abduction signifies the disappearance of vegetation in the autumn, when the vital forces of nature are drawn deep into the earth. Thus Pluto steals Proserpina. When vegetation reappears in the spring, Proserpina is restored to her mother. Read Tennyson's "Demeter and Persephone."

*Pluto, king of the lower world, falls in love with Proserpina and carries her down to his gloomy realm*

Vērō, Venus,<sup>8</sup> tua potestās est maxima. Nam tū docuisti etiam Plūtōnem,<sup>9</sup> deum inferōrum,<sup>10</sup> amāre. Ōlim deus per insulam Siciliam<sup>11</sup> currum<sup>12</sup> agēbat. Ibi Prōserpinam,<sup>13</sup> filiam pulcherrimam Cereris,<sup>14</sup> deae agricultūrae,<sup>15</sup> vidit et adamāvit.<sup>16</sup> Eam statim rapuit et equōs hortātus ē cōspectū<sup>17</sup> fūgit. 5

1. inter sē, to each other (literally, between themselves). 2. Allowed to escape. 3. corripio, -ere, seize. 4. Suddenly. 5. tergum, -i, n., back. 6. delphinus, -i, m., dolphin. 7. vehō, -ere, carry. 8. Venus, -eris, f., Venus, the goddess of love and beauty. 9. Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto, king of the lower world. 10. inferī, -ōrum, m., the shades, the lower world. 11. Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily. 12. currus, -ūs, m., chariot. 13. Prōserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres. 14. Cerēs, -eris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture. 15. agricultūra, -ae, f., agriculture. 16. adamō, -āre, fall in love with. 17. cōspectus, -ūs, m., sight.

## SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

*After a long search, discovers where her daughter is. Then she goes to Jupiter and demands that her daughter be returned*

Tam verō Cerēs, gravī dolōre ac timōre commōta, filiam diem  
noctemque sine fine petēbat. Interim Plūtō Prōserpinam in mātri-  
monium dūxerat. Iam dea erat rēgīna inferōrum.<sup>1</sup> Dēnique  
Cerēs omnia cognōverat, et iniquō animō apud Iovem<sup>2</sup> causam<sup>3</sup>  
dixit: "Filiam meam, quam per omnēs terrās mariaque petē- 10  
bam invēni. Eam Plūtō rapuit. Etiam nunc ea in manū eius est.  
Plūtō mihi magnam iniūriam fēcit. Iubē eum filiam meam reddere.  
Nunc dē eō gravissimum supplicium."

*Jupiter compromises the matter so that Proserpina spends six months with her mother and six months with her husband*

Iuppiter respondit: "Ita, Cerēs, dicere nōn dēbēs. Hoc factum  
iūdiō nōn est iniūria, sed certus (*true*) amor.<sup>4</sup> Sed tibi petentī 15  
hanc veniam<sup>5</sup> dabō. Sex mēnsēs cuiusque annī Prōserpina in  
rēgnō Plūtōnis manēbit atque sex mēnsēs tēcum erit." Itaque  
hieme Prōserpina est apud inferōs,<sup>1</sup> et aestāte, inferis relictis, cum  
matre terram incolit.

## CINCINNATUS CALLED FROM THE PLOW

(AFTER LESSON CV)

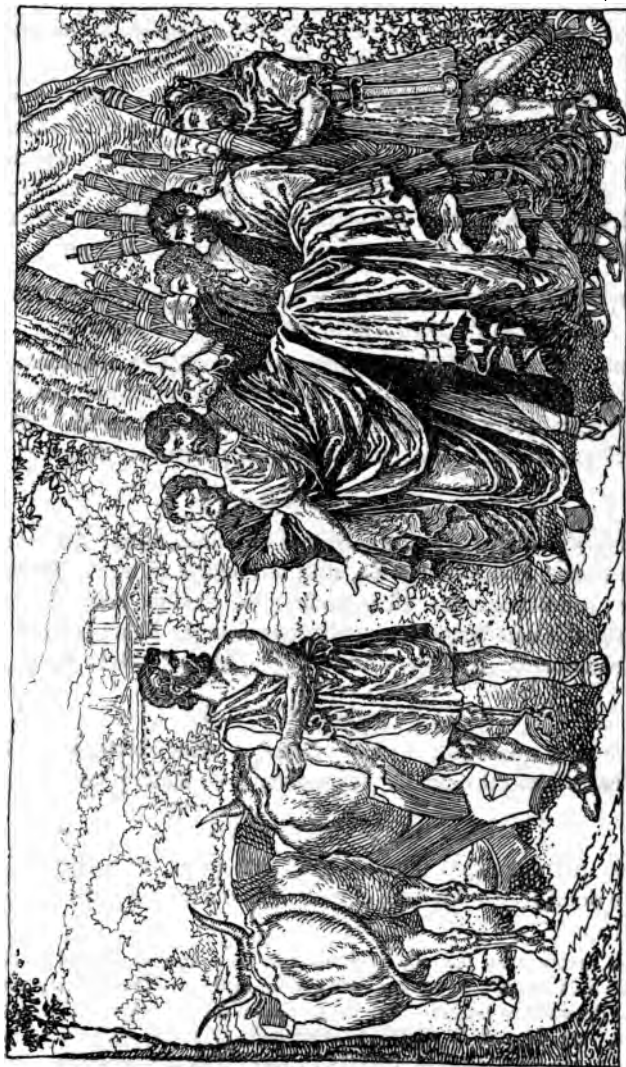
*The early Romans were devoted to agriculture*

Omnibus temporibus vīta rūstica<sup>6</sup> summō auxiliō virtūtī ac fir-  
missimō praesidiō civitatī fuit.<sup>7</sup> Hanc rem etiam Rōmānī crēdebant,  
et multī eōrum villās habēbant et agrōs suis manibus colēbant.<sup>8</sup>

*Cincinnatus was an example of this fine old type*

Apud hōs erat Cincinnātus, vir bellō ēgregius et agricola minimē  
tardus. Ōlim cum quidam hostēs urbī appropinquārent et iam multī 5  
timidī salūtem patriae dēspērāre inciperent, mentēs omnium ad  
Cincinnātum versae<sup>9</sup> sunt. Ille autem nōn in urbe sed rūri erat.

1. See p. 275, n. 10. 2. Iovem, accusative of Iuppiter, Iovis, M., Jupiter, king of the gods. 3. causam dicere, plead a cause. 4. amor, -ōris, M., love. 5. venia, -ae, F., favor. 6. rūsticus, -a, -um, of the country, rustic. 7. A present perfect, § 312. 8. colō, -ere, till. 9. vertō, -ere, turn.



CINCINNATUS CALLED FROM THE FLOW

*On one occasion the senate, having appointed Cincinnatus dictator, sent lictors to escort him from his farm to the city*

Tum senātus Cincinnātum dictatōrem fēcit et misit lictōrēs<sup>1</sup> qui eum in urbem dēdūcerent. Lictōrēs rūs contendērunt et ad villam parvam Cincinnātī celeriter pervēnērunt. Ille tunicātus<sup>2</sup> agrum<sup>10</sup> arābat<sup>3</sup> et, cum lictōrēs vidēret, rogāvit quid vellent. Lictōrēs respondērunt senātum eum dictatōrem fēcisse ut patriam ex summō periculō liberāret, et sē vēnisse ut eum in urbem dēdūcerent.

*Cincinnatus, though reluctant to leave his work, went with them, but as soon as possible returned to finish his plowing*

Agrum relinquere Cincinnātō nōn grātum erat, tamen senātui pārere oportēbat. Itaque pulvere<sup>4</sup> ac sūdore abstersō, optimus vir<sup>15</sup> induit<sup>5</sup> togam quam lictōrēs ferēbant et Rōmam prōcessit. Bello paucis diēbus cōfectō, Cincinnātus domum prōperāvit ut arāret.

#### THE LORD'S PRAYER

Pater noster, quī es in caelis, sāctificētur nōmen tuum. Adveniat rēgnum tuum. Fiat voluntās tua, sicut in caelō, et in terrā. Pānem nostrum cotidiānum dā nōbis hodiē. Et dimitte nōbis dēbita nostra, sicut et nōs dimittimus dēbitōribus nostris. Et nē nōs indūcās in tentātiōnem : sed liberā nōs ā malō. Āmēn.—Matt. 6. 9-13 5

#### THE GOLDEN RULE

Omnia ergō quaecumque vultis ut faciant vōbis hominēs, et vōs facite illis. Haec est enim lēx et prophētae. — Matt. 7. 12

#### THE STRAIT GATE

Intrāte per angustam portam : quia lāta porta, et spatiōsa via est quae dūcit ad perditīōnem, et multi sunt quī intrant per eam. — Matt. 7. 13

1. The lictors were the official attendants of a magistrate and carried a bundle of rods (*fascēs*), sometimes with an ax in the middle standing for the power of the state to punish. Note the fascēs on the American dime. 2. *tunicātus, -a, -um, dressed in his tunic*. Compare *in his shirtsleeves* or *in his overalls*. 3. *arō, -āre, plow*. 4. *pulvere . . . abstersō, wiping off the dust and sweat*. 5. *induo, -ere, put on*.

# A LATIN PLAY

## PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA

This may be used at any time after Lesson LXXX is finished

### CHARACTERS

|                                                  |                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| CEPHEUS, king of Ethiopia                        | SACERDOS, priestess of the oracle             |
| CASSIOPEIA, queen of Ethiopia                    | Three citizens of Ethiopia                    |
| ANDROMEDA, daughter of Cepheus<br>and Cassiopeia | Friends of the royal family and<br>attendants |
| PERSEUS, the Greek hero                          |                                               |

### SCENE I

A room in the palace. CEPHEUS and CASSIOPEIA are sitting at a table. An ATTENDANT stands at the right near the stage entrance

CEPHEUS. Cūr, Cassiopeia mea, faciem tuam sine fine laudās? Audācia tua mē terret. Nōne deōrum invidiam verēris?

CASSIOPEIA. Nōn magis dicō quam vērū est. Spectā mē. Nōne sum pulchrior quam ūlla dea? Nē nymphae maris quidem sunt pulchriōrēs.

CEPHEUS (*raising his hand in solemn protest*). Tacē, mulier, tacē! Etiam nunc deī supplicium fortasse parant.

CASSIOPEIA. Minimē tacēbō. Supplicia deōrum nōn timeō. Nōn crēdō . . . (*She is interrupted by a loud rapping on the door.*)

ATTENDANT. Aliquis pulsāt, rēgīna.

CASSIOPEIA. Aperī ōstium.

ATTENDANT (*after opening the door*). Trēs civēs rēgī dicere cupiunt

CEPHEUS. Iubē eōs intrāre.

*Enter three men in great excitement*

CITIZENS (*all speaking at once*). Perimus, rēx! Quid faciēmus? Quid faciēmus?

CEPHEUS. Quid est, civēs? Quis dolor vōs permovet?

FIRST CITIZEN. Ingēns mōnstrum ex marī vēnit atque agrōs meōs vāstāvit.

SECOND CITIZEN. Idem mōnstrum omne pecus meum dēvorāvit.

THIRD CITIZEN. Heu mē miserum! Saevum mōnstrum coniugem liberōsque meōs interfēcit.

CASSIOPEIA (*rising and raising both arms to heaven*). Quid dicitis? Quid audiō? Mea est culpa. Ō verba stultissima! Ō mala superbia!

CEPHEUS. Ūna salūs relicta est. Ad ōrāculum properābō et auxilium petam.

## SCENE II

At the seat of the oracle. A veiled PRIESTESS is seated on a high stool

ATTENDANT. Cēpheus, rēx Aethiopiae, sacerdos, aditum petit.

SACERDOS. Dūc eum ante mē. Eum audiam. (*The attendant leads in CEPHEUS, who kneels before the priestess.*) Cūr, rēx, ad mē vēnisti?

CEPHEUS. Tē cōsulere, sacerdos, cupiō. Saevum mōnstrum agrōs nostrōs vāstat et populum meum perterret. Quis hoc mōnstrum mīsit? Cūr missum est?

SACERDOS. Neptūnus, deus maris, mōnstrum mīsit. Deus est inimicus propter superbiam rēginae tuae. Illa ausa est sē ante nymphās ipsās pōnere.

CEPHEUS. Obsecrō, sacerdos, quō modō mōnstrum ex patriā agere possum?

SACERDOS. Expiāre culpam rēginae oportet. Dā Andromedam, filiam tuam, mōnstrō et patria tua cōservābitur. Discēde et pārē.

CEPHEUS *risks and with bowed head leaves the stage*

## SCENE III

Room in the palace, as in Scene I. CASSIOPEIA and ANDROMEDA are seated at a table

ANDROMEDA. Quae mōra patrem tenet?

CASSIOPEIA. Iam diū eum expectō. In diēs pericula nostra crēscunt. Pectus meum est plēnum sollicitūdinis et timōris. (*CEPHEUS enters with slow step and sad countenance. The queen and ANDROMEDA rise to greet him.*) Salvē, coniūnx. Vultus tuus mē terret. Quid ōrāculum dixit?

CEPHEUS. Gravissima est fortuna nostra. Neptūnus, inimicus propter superbiam tuam, hoc supplicium dē populō nostrō sūmit. Si patriam cōservāre cupimus, Andromedam mōnstrō dare oportet.

CASSIOPEIA. Quid! Andromedam dare! (*Clasps ANDROMEDA in her arms.*) Numquam, numquam hoc faciam. (*Buries her face on ANDROMEDA'S shoulder and weeps.*)

ANDROMEDA. Audī, māter cārissima, melius est mē perire quam omnēs dare poenās. Parāta sum, pater, pārere ōrāculō.

## SCENE IV

On the seashore. ANDROMEDA stands bound to a rock<sup>1</sup> in the center of the background. CEPHEUS and CASSIOPEIA, dressed in black robes, are seated on the ground at the right. Friends of the royal family appear at the left, some sitting and some standing. All exhibit signs of grief

CASSIOPEIA. Perii; hunc dolōrem tolerāre nōn possum. Cūr illa stultissima verba dixi? Ego, nōn Andromeda, mōnstrō darī dēbeō.

CEPHEUS. Vērūm dicis, coniūnx; sed verba ōrāculi scīs. (*A distant roaring is heard.*) Audisne illum sonitum terribilem? Sine dubiō mōnstrum appropinquat.

FIRST FRIEND. Heu! Heu! Iam mors imminet.

SECOND FRIEND. Etiam Andromeda sonitum audit. Ecce, quam pallidus est vultus eius!

PERSEUS, *wearing helmet and breastplate and grasping a sword, makes a sudden entrance. All look at him in amazement*

CEPHEUS. Quis es, hospes? Quō modō in finēs nostrōs pervēnistī?

PERSEUS. Perseus sum, filius Iovis. Ālis per aurās iter faciō. Unde istae lacrimae? Cūr illa virgō vincula gerit?

CEPHEUS. Illa virgō est filia mea. Imperiō ōrāculi dabitur mōnstrō saevō quod Neptūnus ex mari cotidie ēmittit. Hōc modō pācātum mōnstrum nōbis parcet. Prō patriā Andromeda vitā suā dat.

PERSEUS. Per deōs, rēx, ego ipse hoc mōnstrum interficiam sī mihi filiam tuam in mātīmōnium dabis.

<sup>1</sup> A large box, four or five feet high, covered with gray cloth, will serve as a rock.

CEPHEUS (*with great eagerness*). Libenter, hospes, hanc condiçiōnem accipiō. Sed brevissimum est tempus. Etiam nunc mōnstrum adest. (*A loud roaring is heard.*)

PERSEUS (*calling loudly*). Pelle timōrem ex animō tuō, Andromeda. Tē servābō. (*Rushes from the stage.*)

THIRD FRIEND. Magna spēs mē iam tenet.

FOURTH FRIEND (*pointing to the sky*). Ecce, hospes per aurās altē volat.

FIFTH FRIEND. Iam dēscendit et mōnstrum petit.

*All stand gazing toward the scene of combat. The sound of blows is heard mingled with roars of rage and pain. Then PERSEUS reënters and all greet him with shouts of "Iō triumphe." He goes to ANDROMEDA, frees her from her bonds, and, taking her by the hand, leads her to her father*

PERSEUS. Ecce, rēx, filia tua. Meā virtūte eam servāvī. Praemium meum postulō.

CEPHEUS. Tua est Andromeda, hospes. Tū es servātor domūs meae.  
*Curtain falls while all shout "Fēliciter"*



PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT

## BACULUS THE CENTURION

(Use after completing the Lessons)

Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion, served in Cæsar's army and won his general's highest praise for his courage and fidelity. The incidents here related are partly based on Cæsar's narrative<sup>1</sup> and are partly fiction. They make no claim to historic accuracy.

### *Baculus on the march*

"Venī, māter, celeriter venī! Multitūdō militum appropinquat. Iam primum agmen vidēre possum." Ita magnā vōce clamāvit iuvenis quī ante casam stābat et intentis oculis milites prōcēdentēs spectābat. Verbis auditis, māter ex casā properāvit ac prope filium cōstitit. 5

Iuvenis erat Mārcus Caecilius Metellus,<sup>2</sup> filius imperātōris nōtissimī quī plūribus ante annis<sup>3</sup> vitam prō rē publicā dederat. Iam Mārcus et Livia māter in villā patris habitābant. Illa villa posita erat in viā Flāminiā quae ad Galliam dūcit.

Iam cōpiae multō propius vēnerant. Primum equitēs procēdē- 10 bant, tum peditēs, multa milia hominum, sequēbantur; dēnique magnus numerus equōrum et carrōrum, quī impedimenta ferēbant, agmen claudēbat. Apud centuriōnēs erat quidam corpore magnō, humeris lātis, speciē ēgregiā, quī sē inūsitatā auctoritatē gerēbat. Eum<sup>4</sup> simul atque Livia cōspēxit, vehementer permōta 15 clamāvit, "Obsecrō, quem vidēō? Ecce, mī fili, Baculus centuriō, amicus patrī tuō amicissimus, quem iam post multōs annōs vidēō. Quam gaudeō! Sine dubiō in Galliam ad castra Caesaris cōpiās dūcit." "Crēdō, māter cārissima," inquit<sup>5</sup> Mārcus, "deōs

1. See Cæsar's Gallic War, II. 25; III. 5; VI. 38. 2. A Roman regularly had three names: the first, his given name; the second the name of his clan (*gēns*); and the third the name of his family. 3. See § 452. 4. *As soon as Livia perceived him.* **Eum** is placed first as the connecting word. See § 198. a. n. 5. **inquit Mārcus**, said Marcus. The verb **inquit** is used with a direct quotation and is followed by its subject.

Baculum ad nōs misisse. Scīs mē<sup>1</sup> iam diū cupere nōmen dare et vestigia patris sequī. Quis melius quam Baculus prīma<sup>2</sup> castrōrum rudimenta docēre potest?" "Bene dicis," inquit Livia. "Castra Baculi nōn longē aberunt. Adi ad eum et dā ei epistulam quam statim scribam."

5

*Marcus goes to the Roman camp and is kindly received by Baculus*

Plūribus<sup>3</sup> post hōris Mārcus ad castra Rōmāna pervēnit. Prō portis castrōrum armāti stābant. Ex his ūnus Mārcum rogāvit quid vellet<sup>4</sup> et quem peteret.<sup>4</sup> Tum Mārcus, cum respondisset<sup>5</sup> sē Baculum centuriōnem petere, ad praetōrium<sup>6</sup> dēductus est.

Baculus, vir rei<sup>7</sup> militāris peritissimus, propter ēgregiam virtūtem<sup>10</sup> ā Caesare saepe laudātus erat et primus pilus creātus erat. Hōc tempore, imperātore et reliquis ducibus superiōribus absentibus, tōtī legiōnī<sup>8</sup> praeerat. Is, cum Mārcum nōn nōvisset,<sup>9</sup> tamen eum benignē accēpit. Ei tum Mārcus dedit epistulam mātis. Baculus, epistolā acceptā et apertā, haec verba lēgit.

15

*Livia's letter to Baculus*

Livia Baculō salūtem<sup>10</sup> dicit. Si<sup>11</sup> valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Haec epistula sine dubiō tibi<sup>12</sup> admiratiōnem movēbit; nam post mortem coniugis mei ad tē non scripsi. Sed sciō tē memoriam amicitiae nostrae adhūc tenēre. Iuvenis quī ad tē hanc epistulam adfert est filius meus. Is tibi omnēs fortunās nostrās nārrābit.<sup>20</sup> Pectus eius studiō rei militāris flagrat. Iam aetātem militārem habet. Tibi eum commendō. Nōmen<sup>18</sup> dare vult. Valē.

*Baculus makes Marcus his aide-de-camp*

"Hercle," inquit Baculus, "esne tū filius Mārci Metelli? Certē fuit nēmō nōbilior aut generōsior umquam. Amantissimē tē accipiō.

1. mē . . . dare, that I have long been desiring to enlist (literally, to give my name). 2. prīma castrōrum rudimenta, the first principles of military service. 3. plūribus post hōris, several hours later; literally, afterwards by several hours. See § 452. 4. See § 671. 5. For the mood see § 643. 6. See § 221. 7. See § 554. 8. See § 623. 9. In a cum clause of concession. See § 613. 10. salūtem dicit, sends greetings. 11. Roman letters often begin with this sentence. 12. tibi . . . movēbit, will cause you surprise. 13. Cf. note 1 above.

Tū es patri simillimus et corpore et animō. Māter tua, optima Livia, dicit tē velle cursum militārem sequī." "Vērūm dicis," inquit Mārcus, "et sub tuis signis militāre<sup>1</sup> maximē cupiō." Baculus risit et respondit, "Nihil mihi grātius erit et tē optiōnem<sup>2</sup> cōstituam."

*Baculus resumes the march to Gaul*

Proximō diē sonitus tubae Mārcum ex somnō primā lūce susci- 5  
tāvit. Baculus iam surrēxerat et iusserat castra sine morā movērī. Celeriter cōpiāe profectae sunt, nec tōtō diē iter intermissum est. Sub occāsum sōlis milites dēfessi castra posuērunt. Ita quat-  
tuor diēs magnis itineribus contendērunt. Quīntō diē intrā finēs 10  
Gallōrum ingressi sunt.

*Gaul and its people<sup>3</sup>*

Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam ei qui ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā<sup>4</sup> institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, quod proximī sunt Germānis qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter 15  
bellum gerunt.<sup>5</sup> Quā<sup>6</sup> dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod fere cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt.

*The Helvetian migration*

Hōc ipsō tempore Helvētīi, hominēs vagandi<sup>7</sup> et bellandi<sup>7</sup> cupidī, dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exire volēbant ut lātiōrēs 20  
agrōs peterent. Molestē ferēbant sē nātūrā loci undique continērī. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō exire possent,<sup>8</sup> ūnum angustum et difficile per finēs Sēquanōrum, alterum multō facilius per Prōvinciam Rōmānam. Hōc itinere ēgredi cōstituērunt.

1. The infin. of *militō*. 2. An *optiō* had duties resembling those of an aide-de-camp. The office involved little responsibility or military skill. 3. See map, p. 49. 4. *linguā* and the next two words are ablatives of respect. See § 552. 5. That is, the Belgae have developed their courage by their constant warfare with the Germans. 6. *quā dē causā*, for this reason. 7. Gen. of the gerund with *cupidi*. See § 554. 8. See § 723.

*Caesar resolves to stop them*

His rēbus auditis, Caesar, prōcōsul Galliae, Genāvam, oppidum Helvētiis proximum, contendit ut eōs prohibēret. Simul Baculō imperāvit ut cōpiās cōgeret et quam<sup>1</sup> celerrimē in Galliam iter faceret. Quā dē causā, ut dictum est, Baculus cursū incitātō prōcesserat. Iam celerius<sup>2</sup> omni opīniōne castris Caesaris appropinquābat. Interim Helvētīi convēnerant ad rīpam Rhodanī, quod flūmen inter prōvinciam et finēs Helvētiōrum fluit. Nē Helvētīi Rhodanum trānsirent, Caesar rīpam mūrō fossāque mūnivit et praesidia disposuit. Tum exspectāvit<sup>3</sup> sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur.

*The Helvetii try to cross the Rhone. Baculus brings needed help*

Brevi tempore postquam Caesar hās mūnitiōnēs perfēcit, Helvētīi perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Primum impetum Caesar facile sustinuit, sed Helvētīi nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, cōnātū<sup>4</sup> nōn dēstitērunt. Rōmānī, cum<sup>5</sup> numerō hominum multō inferiōrēs essent, dēfessī proeliis vigiliisque paene cōnfecti sunt. In hōc discrimine rērum Baculus cum cōpiis suis ad castra pervēnit et maximō gaudiō acceptus est. Quem<sup>6</sup> cum imperātor vidēret, "Peropportūnē," inquit, "Bacule, ades. Sine tuō subsidiō diūtius sustinēre vix poterāmus. Quis tandem est iuvenis qui propter<sup>7</sup> tē adstat?" "Hic iuvenis," inquit Baculus, "est Mārcus Mārci filius Metellus. Ego et pater eius ā pueris amici erāmus. Illum mors abstulit, sed reliquit filium quem in rē militārī exerceō." Caesar manum Mārcō porrigēns, "Salvē," inquit, "Mārce. Dē rēbus gestis patris tuī, virī clārissimī, saepe audivī. Laetus tē accipiō. Postea noster eris."

1. *quam celerrimē*, as quickly as possible. 2. *celerius omni opīniōne*, quicker than any one would suppose. 3. *exspectāvit sī* etc., he waited to see whether they would try to cross against his will. *sē invitō* is ablative absolute. On *cōnārentur* see § 671. 4. Abl. of Separation. See § 296. 5. *cum*, since. See § 643. 6. *quem* . . . *vidēret*, when the general saw him. *quem* is the object of *vidēret*; literally, whom when the general saw. This use of the relative is very common in Latin. 7. *propter tē adstat*, stands near you.

*The Helvetii, unable to break through Caesar's lines, follow the other route through the country of the Sequani*

Illā ipsā nocte Helvētīi, alīi nāvibus alīi vadis Rhodanī, cum omnibus cōpiis flūmen trānsiērunt et summā vī mūnitiōnēs Rōmānās perrumpere cōnāti sunt. Sed tanta commūtātiō adventū Baculī et novārum cōpiārum facta est ut hostēs facile repellerentur et plūrīmī tēlis occiderentur aut in flūmine perīrent. Post hanc calamitātem Helvētīi adversā fortūnā superāti illō itinere sē āvertērunt et cōstituērunt alteram viam per finēs Sēquanōrum sequi.

*Caesar follows them*

Caesar, cum certior factus esset Helvētiōs ab illō locō profectōs esse et iam cōpiās suās per finēs Sēquanōrum trādūxisse, eos cum omnibus cōpiis secūtus est. Interim Helvētīi agrōs vāstābant et oppida expugnābant. Multae gentēs, socii populi Rōmānī, sē ad Caesarem recipiēbant ut auxilium rogārent. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, mātūrāvit.

*The end of the pursuit*

Dēnique propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Caesar iter ā Helvētīis āvertit et Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum maximum et cōpiō-  
sissimum, quod nōn longē aberat, ire contendit. Quod<sup>1</sup> cum hostibus nūntiātum esset, Helvētīi exīstimābant Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs discēdere. Itaque itinere<sup>2</sup> conversō Rōmānōs ā novissimō agmine lacescere incipiēbant. Baculus, quī cum suis agmen<sup>3</sup> claudēbat, misit Mārcum quī Caesarī novam hostium ratiō-  
nem nūntiāret. His rēbus cognitis Caesar in proximō colle aciem instrūxit et cōpiam<sup>4</sup> pugnandī hostibus fēcit.

*The Helvetii are defeated in a great battle*

Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī confertissimā aciē sub<sup>5</sup> primam aciem

1. quod cum, when this. See p. 286, l. 16, and note. 2. itinere conversō, changing their course. 3. agmen claudēbat, was bringing up the rear. 4. cōpiam . . . fēcit, gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting. 5. sub . . . successērunt, advanced close to the Roman battle front.

Rōmānōrum successērunt. Caesar hortātus suōs proelium com-  
misit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre tēlis missis, facile aciem hostium  
perfrēgerunt. Tum gladiū dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Ab  
septimā hōrā ad vesperum ācriter pugnātum est, et nēmō āversum <sup>1</sup>  
hostem vidēre potuit. Tandem vulneribus dēfessi pedem rettulē- 5  
runt. Hostibus superātis, Rōmānī et impedimenta et castra Helv-  
etiōrum cēpērunt. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adducti lēgātōs  
ad Caesarem misērunt, et, omnibus armīs trādītis et obsidibus datis,  
in dēditionem accepti sunt. Praetereā Caesar iussit eōs in finēs  
suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti. Dē numerō hōrum Caesar ipse 10  
dicit milia CCCLXVIII hominum domō exisse et milia CX revertisse.

*Baculus seriously wounded*

Hōc proeliō Baculus grave vulnus accēpit. Nam cum iam plūrēs  
hōrās pugnātum esset et rēs <sup>2</sup> esset in periculō, Baculus magnā  
vōce clāmāns "Quis sequētur?" in mediōs hostēs sē iniēcit. In-  
felix autem iniquo locō vestigia <sup>3</sup> nōn tenuit et graviter in terram 15  
concidit. Eum hostēs statim circumsistunt. Tum vērō cum gemitū  
Rōmānī ad eum servandum prōcurrunt. Dēnique, plūribus utrimque  
interfectis, Baculus graviter vulnerātus ē manibus hostium ēripitur.

*Baculus and Marcus return to Italy*

Post proelium, cum Mārcus vulnerātō amicō <sup>4</sup> adsidēret, imperā-  
tor ipse vēnit ut virum fortissimum vidēret. Postquam virtutem 20  
eius amplissimis verbis laudāvit, "Brevi tempore," inquit, "mihi est in  
animō bellum cum Ariovistō, saevissimō rēge Germānōrum, gerere.  
Ille multa milia Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum trādūxit et sociis populi  
Rōmānī gravēs iniuriās intulit. Sed sine tē, Bacule, hoc bellum  
gerendum erit.<sup>5</sup> Moneō ut in Italiam revertāris, et operam valē- 25  
tūdini dēs. Post paucōs mēnsēs, ut spērō, in armīs rursus eris."  
"Mēcum itūrus est,<sup>6</sup> Caesar," inquit Mārcus. "Quis enim melius  
quam māter mea, Livia, eum cūrāre potest?" Itaque āsque ad  
proximum annum Baculus cum Mārcō et Liviā erat.

1. in flight; literally, turned away. 2. rēs . . . periculō, the situation was critical. 3. vestigia nōn tenuit, did not keep his footing. 4. Dative with adsidēret. See § 623. 5. gerendum erit, will have to be waged, passive periphrastic. See § 727. 6. itūrus est, he intends to go, active periphrastic. See § 726.

*Baculus receives a letter from Cæsar*

Initā aestāte Baculus, iam optimā valētūdine, hanc epistulam a Caesare accēpit. "Caesar Baculō salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Spērō tē integris viribus parātum esse arma sūmere. Certior factus sum omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre. Veni ad castra et dūc tēcum Mārcum. Valē." 5

*War with the Belgæ*

Cum Baculus et Mārcus in Galliam pervenirent, Caesar cum exercitū iam profectus erat, et, multis gentibus superātis, per Nerviorum finēs iter faciēbat. Omnium Belgārum fortissimī Nervii erant. Incūsābant reliquōs Belgās qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderant, et dicēbant sē neque lēgātōs missūrōs<sup>1</sup> neque ūllam condiōnem pācis 10 acceptūrōs.<sup>1</sup> Iam cum multis sociis adventum Rōmānōrum expectābant.

*The Nervii plan their attack*

Cum Baculus et Mārcus exercitum Caesaris cōsequerentur, castra Nerviorum nōn longē aberant. Quidam inimicī Gallī, cōsuētūdine itineris exercitū Rōmānī perspectā, Nervios certiorēs 15 fēcērant inter<sup>2</sup> singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, et facile futūrum esse, cum primā<sup>3</sup> legiō castra pōneret reliquæque legiōnēs longē abessent, in hanc impetum facere. Hoc<sup>4</sup> cōsiliū Nervii exīstimāvērunt sibi nōn omittendum esse.

*A desperate battle is fought*

Locus, quem Rōmānī castris dēlēgerant, erat in summō colle 20 quī ā quōdam flūmine nāscēbātur. Trāns flūmen hostēs in silvās sē abdiderant. Peropportūnē<sup>5</sup> accidit quod Caesar ratiōnem agminis mūtāverat, nec ūnam sed sex legiōnēs dūcēbat. Post eas tōtius

1. Future infinitive with *esse* omitted as it often is. 2. *inter . . . intercēdere*, between every two legions a very long baggage train intervened. 3. The first legion that reached the camp site began at once to lay it out and fortify it. 4. *Hoc . . . esse*, this plan the Nervii thought ought not to be left untried by them. See §§ 727, 729. 5. *peropportūnē accidit quod*, etc., very opportunely it happened that, etc.; the change in the order of march gave Cæsar six legions with which to meet the attack instead of only one. That fact alone saved the day for Cæsar.

exercitūs impedimenta conlocāverat. Nervii, cum prima impedimenta Rōmānōrum vidērent, putābant tempus exspectātum adesse. Subitō incrēdibili celeritāte cum omnibus cōpiis ē silvā prōvolāvērunt, et, flūmen trāsgressi, eādē celeritāte adversō<sup>1</sup> colle ad castra Rōmāna contendērunt. Caesari<sup>2</sup> omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum<sup>3</sup> prōpōnendum, signum tubā<sup>4</sup> dandum, ab opere<sup>5</sup> revocandi militēs, aciēs instruenda, militēs hortandi, signum<sup>6</sup> dandum ; quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitas et hostium celeritas impediēbant. Diversae legiōnēs aliae<sup>7</sup> aliā in parte hostibus resistēbant. Undique ācerrimē pugnābātur, praesertim ā dextrō 10 cornū. Ibi duodecima legiō, in quā Baculus ascriptus est, ab hostibus urgēbātur. Iam omnēs ferē centuriōnēs aut vulnerāti aut occisi erant, in hīs Baculus ipse quī tot et tam gravibus vulneribus est cōfectus ut sē sustinēre nōn posset.

*Cæsar to the rescue*

In hōc discriminē rērum Caesar, scūtō militi<sup>8</sup> detrāctō, quod ipse 15 sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit. Imperātōris cōspectus militibus spem inferēbat et paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. Interim reliquae legiōnēs, quae aliis in partibus vicerant, cum cognōvissent quō<sup>9</sup> in locō rēs esset, subsidium ferēbant. Dēnique Nervii magnā caede superāti sunt. Post prōelium Mārcus inveniri nōn 20 poterat. Multā autem nocte incolumis ad castra revertit ; captus ab hostibus effūgit. Nec Baculus vulneribus mortuus est, sed post breve tempus arma sūmere poterat.

*The twelfth legion in the Alps*

Belgīs superātis, legiō duodecima in Alpēs in oppidum quod appellābātur Octodūrus<sup>10</sup> hiemandi causā dūcēbātur. Hoc oppidum 25

1. *adversō colle*, *up the opposite hill*. 2. Dat. of agent with the passive periphrastic *agenda erant*. See § 729. A number of periphrastics follow with omitted auxiliary. 3. This was red in color and the signal for arming. 4. This was the signal to take their places in the ranks. 5. The work of fortifying the camp. 6. The battle signal. 7. *aliae aliā in parte*, *some in one place, others in another*. See § 505. 8. *militi*, dat. with *detrāctō*. See § 623. *militibus*, in the next line but one, is in the same construction. 9. *quō . . . esset*, *in what a state the situation was*. See § 671. 10. See p. 49.

altissimis montibus undique continēbātur. Galba lēgātus, qui legiōnī praeerat, Baculō<sup>1</sup> negōtium dedit ut hiberna mūnīret. Itaque Baculus negōtium suscipit et iubet<sup>2</sup> locum mūrō altō mūnīrī. Hōc opere nōndum perfectō, maxima multitudō barbarōrum ex omnibus partibus impetum facit. Cum iam multās hōrās pugnārē- 5 tur ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla Rōmānōs dēficerent, Baculus et quidam tribūnus militum, vir magnae virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt. "Rēs est in periculō, lēgāte," inquiunt.<sup>3</sup> "Eruptiō est ūna spēs salutis." Hōc cōnsiliō captō, militēs ex castris subitō ērupērunt. Hāc ēruptiōne imprōvisā hostēs ita commōti sunt ut tertiā parte 10 interfectā reliquī fugerent. Quō proeliō factō Galba, alterum impetum timēns, incolumem legiōnem in finēs Allobrogum dūxit ibique hiemāvit.

*A letter from Britain*

Illō tempore Britannia erat Rōmānīs terra incognita. Nē Gallis quidem erat insula nōta praeter eam partem quae est contrā Galliam. Multis dē causis Caesar insulam adire cupiebat, et quārtō 15 annō prōcōnsulātus profectus est. Et Baculus et Mārcus hoc iter fēcērunt. Dē his rēbus Mārcus hanc epistulam ad Liviā mātrem scripsit: "Mārcus Liviae mātī suae salutem plūrimam dicit. In Britannia Caesar castra nunc pōnit. Haec insula ā Galliā nōn longē abest. Nacti idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā 20 ferē vigiliā<sup>4</sup> solvimus, et quārtā<sup>4</sup> hōrā diēi Britanniam attigimus. Ibi in omnibus collibus armātās hostium cōpiās cōspēximus. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra ut<sup>5</sup> mare montibus angustē continērētur. Cum locus ad ēgrediendum idōneus nōn esset, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus imperātor contrā<sup>6</sup> apertum et 25 plānum litus nāvēs cōstituit. Sed barbari secūtī nostrōs<sup>7</sup> nāvibus ēgredi prohibēre cōnābantur. Nostrī autem, altitudīne maris

1. Baculō . . . mūnīret, *commissioned Baculus to fortify the winter quarters.*  
 ut . . . mūnīret is a clause of purpose. 2. See frontispiece. 3. inquiunt, *they say.* 4. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and the day from sunrise to sunset into twelve hours. 5. ut . . . continērētur, *that the sea was closely bounded by mountains, the cliffs of Dover.* See picture, p. 61. 6. contrā . . . cōstituit, *brought the ships to anchor opposite to an open and level beach.*  
 7. nostrōs . . . cōnābantur, *attempted to keep our men from disembarking.*

perterriti et illius generis pugnandi imperiti, erant tardiōrēs,<sup>1</sup> cum simul dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus pugnandum esset. Tum aquilifer decimae legiōnis, vir fortissimus, sē ex nāve prōicit. 'Dēsilite,' inquit, 'commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere,' et in hostēs aquilam ferre 5 incipit. Simul Baculus dēsilit clamāns, 'Venite! Venite, Rōmāni!' Tum vērō nostrī ūniversī ex nāvibus dēsiluērunt. Pugnātum est utrimque ācriter. Dēnique, barbaris in fugam datis, ōram occupāmus et castra pōnimus. Haec īnsula, remōtissima terrārum, est saevissima et asperrima. Omnia sunt terribilia et perīculi plēna. 10 Dēsiderō tē, māter cārissima. Ō quandō ego tē aspiciam! Valē."

*Caesar's sixth campaign*

Sextō annō belli Gallicī Caesar per primam partem aestātis in Germāniā rem gerēbat. Tum suōs in Galliam redūxit et castra in mediis Eburōnum finibus posuit. Ibi impedimenta omnium legiōnum contulit et praesidiō<sup>2</sup> impedimentis ūnam legiōnem reliquit. Ipse 15 et reliquae legiones alii<sup>3</sup> aliās in partēs profecti sunt. Discēdēns monuit lēgātum ut militēs in castris continēret.

*The commanding officer, moved by the murmurs of his men who complain of being confined in camp without good cause, disregards Caesar's advice*

Plūrēs diēs post profectiōnem Caesaris lēgātus praeceptis imperatōris summā diligentīā pāruit ac nē cālōnem quidem ex vāllō ēgredi passus est. Sed septimō diē, permōtus vōcibus<sup>4</sup> militum 20 quī molestē ferēbant sē, omnibus Gallis superātis, tam diū continēri, quinque cohortēs et magnam multitudinem cālōnum in agrōs proximōs frūmentandi<sup>5</sup> causā misit.

1. *more backward than usual.* 2. *praesidiō impedimentis, two datives. See § 686.* 3. *alii . . . partēs, some in one direction and others in another. alii is masculine because it agrees not only with legiōnēs but also with ipso. An adjective agreeing with two or more nouns denoting persons of different genders is regularly masculine.* 4. *murmurs.* 5. *frūmentandi causā, to gather grain.*



"VENĪTE! VENĪTE, RŌMANĪ!" CLĀMĀVIT BACULUS



*A German force unexpectedly attacks the camp. A panic ensues*

His<sup>1</sup> absentibus et castris paene sine praesidiō relictis, duo milia Germānōrum imprōvisō perveniunt et castra capere cōnantur. Ex<sup>2</sup> omnibus partibus hostēs castra circumveniunt. Vix Rōmānī primum impetum sustinent et portās dēfendunt. Omnēs perterriti sciunt neque quam in partem auxilium ferre neque quid facere dēbeant. 5 Nullis dēfēnsōribus in vāllō visis, barbari crēdunt nūllum praesidium intus esse. Quā dē causā ācrius perrumpere cōnantur.

*Baculus to the rescue*

Baculus centuriō, cum aeger esset, cum exercitū nōn profectus est, sed in praesidiō relictus erat. Iam<sup>3</sup> diem quintum cibō caruerat. Clamōre auditō, surgit et ex tabernāculō prōdit. Videt hostēs 10 imminēre atque rem<sup>4</sup> esse summō in discrīmine. Caput arma a proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statīōne erat. Paulisper proelium sustinent. Relinquit<sup>5</sup> animus Baculum, gravibus acceptis vulneribus; vix per<sup>6</sup> manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō, reliquī animis 15 cōfirmātis in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audent speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant. Mox militēs qui ex castris ēgressi erant revertērunt et Germānī trāns Rhēnum sē recēpērunt. Ita virtūte Baculi castra et impedimenta conservāta sunt.

Dē rēbus gestis Baculi hāctenus.

20

1. **his absentibus**, while these were absent. **Absentibus** is the ablative plural of **absēns**, the present participle of **absum**. It is declined like **vocāns**, § 817. 2. **ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides. 3. **iam . . . caruerat**, already for five days he had gone without food; on **cibō** see § 296. 4. **rem . . . discrīmine**, that the situation is extremely critical. 5. **relinquit . . . Baculum**, consciousness fails Baculus or Baculus faints. 6. **per manūs trāditus**, passed along from hand to hand.

## LATIN SONGS

### INTEGER VITAE

The words are the first two stanzas of the twenty-second ode in Book I of the "Odes" of Horace (65-8 B.C.). The music is by Dr. F. F. Flemming (about 1811).

First system of musical notation for the song "Integer Vitae". It consists of a treble and a bass staff, both in C major (one sharp) and common time (C). The melody is in the treble staff, and the accompaniment is in the bass staff. The lyrics are written below the treble staff.

In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que  
Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter aes - tu-

Second system of musical notation for the song "Integer Vitae". It consists of a treble and a bass staff, both in C major (one sharp) and common time (C). The melody is in the treble staff, and the accompaniment is in the bass staff. The lyrics are written below the treble staff.

pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ia - cu - lis, nec  
o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi -

Third system of musical notation for the song "Integer Vitae". It consists of a treble and a bass staff, both in C major (one sharp) and common time (C). The melody is in the treble staff, and the accompaniment is in the bass staff. The lyrics are written below the treble staff.

ar - cu, Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa -  
ta - lem Cau - ca - sum, vel quae lo - ca fa - bu -

git - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra,  
lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.

Fuscus, the man of life upright and pure  
Needeth nor javelin nor bow of Moor,  
Nor arrows tipped with venom deadly sure,  
Loading his quiver;

Whether o'er Afric's burning sands he rides,  
Or frosty Caucasus' bleak mountain sides,  
Or wanders lonely, where Hydaspes glides,  
That storied river.

THEODORE MARTIN

### ADESTE FIDELES

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

The words are by an unknown author of the seventeenth century. The tune, which is found in most of our hymnals, is generally ascribed to John Reading, who died in 1692. The name "Portuguese Hymn" comes from the melody's having been first used in the chapel of the Portuguese embassy in London. A translation under the title "O come, all ye Faithful" was made by F. Oakeley (1841).

Ad - es - te, fi - de - les, Lac - ti tri - um - phan - tes; Ve -  
Can - tet nunc I - o! Cho - rus an - ge - lo - rum;  
Er - go qui na - tus Di - e ho - di - er - na,

ni - te, ve - ni - te in Beth - le - hem;  
Can - tet nunc au - la cae - les - ti - um,  
Ie - su, ti - bi sit glo - ri - a;

Na - tum vi - de - te Re - gem an - ge - lo - rum: Ve -  
Glo - ri - a, glo - ria In ex - cel - sis De - o! Ve -  
Pa - tris ae - ter - ni Ver - bum ca - ro fac - tum! Ve -

ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve - ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve -

ni - te a - do - re - mus Do - mi - num.

## GAUDEAMUS

The second and third stanzas of this famous student song were known as early as 1267. The melody in its present form dates back to about the middle of the eighteenth century.



Gau-de-a-mus i-gi-tur, Iu-ve-nes dum su-mus;  
 U-bisunt, qui an-te nos In mun-do fu-e-re?  
 Vi-ta nos-tra bre-vis est, Bre-vi fi-ni-e-tur;

Post iu-cun-dam iu-ven-tu-tem, Post mo-les-tam se-nec-tu-tem,  
 Tran-se-as ad su-pe-ros, A-be-as ad in-fe-ros,  
 Ve-nit mors ve-lo-ci-ter, Ra-pit nos a-tro-ci-ter,

Nos ha-be-bit hu-mus, Nos ha-be-bit hu-mus.  
 Quos si vis vi-de-re, Quos si vis vi-de-re.  
 Ne-mi-ni par-ce-tur, Ne-mi-ni par-ce-tur.

Let us now in youth rejoice,  
None can justly blame us;  
For when golden youth has fled,  
And in age our joys are dead,  
Then the dust doth claim us,  
Then the dust doth claim us.

Where have all our fathers gone?  
Here we'll see them never;  
Seek the gods' serene abode—  
Cross the dolorous Stygian flood—  
There they dwell forever,  
There they dwell forever.

Brief is this our life on earth,  
Brief—nor will it tarry—  
Swiftly death runs to and fro,  
All must feel his cruel blow,  
None the dart can parry,  
None the dart can parry.

### A ROUND FOR THREE PARTS

I II

A - mor vin - cit om - ni - a, A - mor vin - cit

III

om - ni - a, A - mor vin - cit om - ni - a, om - ni - a.

### A ROUND FOR FOUR PARTS

From Professor R. C. Flickinger's "Carmina Latina" and used by permission of the University of Chicago Press. The English words and music are by F. O. Lyte. The Latin version is by Professor Flickinger.

I II

Duc, duc, re - mos duc Flu - mi - ne se - cun - do;

III IV

Vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur, vi - vi - tur Ve - lut in som - ni - o.

Row, row, row your boat, gently down the stream.  
Merrily, merrily, merrily, merrily, life is but a dream.

## REVIEWS<sup>1</sup>

### I. REVIEW OF LESSONS I-VII

**732. Give the English of the following words :**

#### NOUNS

|          |        |         |        |       |
|----------|--------|---------|--------|-------|
| agricola | fābula | nauta   | puella | terra |
| aqua     | filia  | pecūnia | rēgīna |       |

#### VERBS

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| amat   | properat |
| dat    | sunt     |
| est    | vocat    |
| nārrat |          |

#### PREPOSITIONS

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| ā or ab | in <i>with acc.</i> |
| ad      | in <i>with abl.</i> |
| cum     | per                 |

**733. Give the Latin of the following words.** Go through the entire list, checking the words you do not remember. Then drill on the words you have checked.

|        |       |          |          |       |         |
|--------|-------|----------|----------|-------|---------|
| from   | water | daughter | money    | are   | through |
| loves  | gives | tells    | hastens  | calls | land    |
| farmer | story | sailor   | in or on | is    | queen   |
| to     | with  | into     | girl     |       |         |

**734. Review Questions.** What English letters does the Latin alphabet lack? When is *i* a consonant? What is the sound of *c* and of *g*? How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? When is a syllable long? Give the rules of Latin accent. Name the parts of speech and give an English example of each. Define the subject, the predicate. What is a transitive verb? an intransitive verb? the copula? Define the direct object. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the possessor? the indirect object? the direct

<sup>1</sup> It is suggested that each of the reviews be assigned for a written test.

object? Translate **filia rēginae pecūniam Lesbiae dat.** What is the ending of the verb in the third person, singular and plural? Give the rule for the agreement of the verb. What relations are expressed by the dative case? by the ablative case? Where does the verb generally stand? the subject? the possessive genitive? the direct object? the indirect object? What is a predicate noun? How many declensions are there? How is the declension to which a noun belongs determined? Decline **rēgina, fābula, filia.** What cases are always alike? How is the ablative singular distinguished from the nominative? What Latin cases may be used with prepositions?

**735. Derivation.** Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 732. Define these and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**736. Fill out the following summary of the first declension :**

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Case terminations : *a.* Singular  
                                                         *b.* Plural
3. Irregular nouns

## II. REVIEW OF LESSONS VIII-XV

**737. Give the English of the following words :**

### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

|             |             |               |            |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| <b>casa</b> | <b>fāma</b> | <b>īnsula</b> | <b>via</b> |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|------------|

### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

|               |                 |                  |                |               |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| <b>ager</b>   | <b>auxilium</b> | <b>filius</b>    | <b>populus</b> | <b>socius</b> |
| <b>amicus</b> | <b>bellum</b>   | <b>frūmentum</b> | <b>puer</b>    | <b>tēlum</b>  |
| <b>arma</b>   | <b>equus</b>    | <b>oppidum</b>   | <b>servus</b>  | <b>vir</b>    |

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

|                          |                               |                                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>altus, -a, -um</b>    | <b>liber, libera, liberum</b> | <b>novus, -a, -um</b>             |
| <b>amicus, -a, -um</b>   | <b>longus, -a, -um</b>        | <b>parvus, -a, -um</b>            |
| <b>bonus, -a, -um</b>    | <b>magnus, -a, -um</b>        | <b>proximus, -a, -um</b>          |
| <b>grātus, -a, -um</b>   | <b>multus, -a, -um</b>        | <b>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</b> |
| <b>inimicus, -a, -um</b> | <b>nōtus, -a, -um</b>         |                                   |

| VERBS        |         | INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS | ADVERBS |       |
|--------------|---------|------------------------|---------|-------|
| convocat     | parat   | quid                   | cūr     | saepe |
| habitat      | portat  | quis                   | nōn     | ubi   |
| labōrat      | nāvigat |                        | quō     |       |
| CONJUNCTIONS |         |                        |         |       |
|              |         | et                     | sed     |       |

**738. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                      |                      |               |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| where                | rumor                | war           | free ( <i>adj.</i> ) |
| but                  | friend               | horse         | well-known           |
| who                  | nearest              | small         | why                  |
| sail ( <i>verb</i> ) | whither              | call together | much, many           |
| toil ( <i>verb</i> ) | prepare              | not           | slave                |
| cottage              | road                 | pleasing      | man                  |
| field                | aid ( <i>noun</i> )  | son           | spear, missile       |
| high <i>or</i> deep  | friendly             | people        | great                |
| often                | live ( <i>verb</i> ) | ally          | long                 |
| and                  | island               | new           | grain                |
| what                 | good                 | hostile       | town                 |
| carry                | pretty               | boy           | arms                 |

**739. Review Questions.** What is meant by grammatical gender? Give the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Decline **terra, filia**. What nouns belong to the second declension? Give the rule for gender in the second declension. Decline **amicus, puer, ager, vir, oppidum**. Decline **socius** and **auxilium**, and explain the peculiarity in the genitive of nouns like these. When is the vocative not like the nominative? Give the general rules of declension. What is an adjective? Decline **magnus, -a, -um**; **liber, libera, liberum**; **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**. Decline **agricola bonus**. Why is it not correct to say **agricola bona**? What is the position of adjectives? What is the position of vocatives? What are adverbs? Where do they stand? How are questions introduced in Latin? How are questions answered in the affirmative? How are questions answered in the negative? Name the possessive adjectives. What is the vocative singular masculine of **meus**? Why is **suus** called a reflexive possessive? Where are possessive adjectives placed when they are unemphatic? when they are emphatic?

**740.** Give the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence :

- |                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Agreement of adjectives | 3. Dative with adjectives   |
| 2. Apposition              | 4. Agreement of possessives |

**741. Derivation.** Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 737. Define these and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**742. Fill out the following summary of the second declension :**

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns in **-us**

|   |                                                                       |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| { | <i>a.</i> Singular<br><i>b.</i> Plural<br><i>c.</i> Vocative singular |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
4. Case terminations of nouns in **-um**

|   |                                        |
|---|----------------------------------------|
| { | <i>a.</i> Singular<br><i>b.</i> Plural |
|---|----------------------------------------|
5. Peculiarities of nouns in **-er**
6. Peculiarity of the genitive of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**

### III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVI-XXIII

**743. Give the English of the following words :**

#### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

|           |            |          |          |
|-----------|------------|----------|----------|
| amīcitia  | dīligentia | Germānia | silva    |
| Britannia | Gallia     | ōra      | victōria |
| cōpia     |            |          |          |

#### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

|          |         |           |          |
|----------|---------|-----------|----------|
| barbarus | castrum | Germānus  | praemium |
| Britannī | Gallus  | periculum | proelium |

#### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

|                         |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| barbarus, -a, -um       | miser, misera, miserum  | suus, -a, -um           |
| crēber, crēbra, crēbrum | noster, nostra, nostrum | tuus, -a, -um           |
| meus, -a, -um           | Rōmānus, -a, -um        | vester, vestra, vestrum |

## VERBS

*First Conjugation*

occupō, -ā're  
pugnō, -ā're  
superō, -ā're

*Second Conjugation*

habeō, -ē're      timeō, -ē're  
moneō, -ē're      videō, -ē're  
teneō, -ē're

## ADVERBS

iam      nunquam      semper  
mox      nunc      tum

## PREPOSITIONS

ē or ex  
sine

## CONJUNCTION

itaque

**744. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                |                        |                       |                      |
|----------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| therefore      | danger                 | seize                 | conquer, overcome    |
| Gaul           | my, mine               | our, ours             | then                 |
| out of         | thick, frequent        | already               | reward, prize        |
| plenty, forces | Roman                  | a savage              | have                 |
| without        | friendship             | always                | presently            |
| a Gaul         | never                  | fight ( <i>verb</i> ) | fear ( <i>verb</i> ) |
| his, her, its  | thy, thine             | forest                | shore                |
| industry       | savage ( <i>adj.</i> ) | Britons               | advise, warn         |
| fort, camp     | Britain                | your, yours           | a German             |
| now            | wretched               | battle                | victory              |
| Germany        | see                    | hold                  |                      |

**745. Review Questions.** Define the active voice and the passive voice, and illustrate each by an English sentence. Name the moods. Name the English tenses and give an example of each. Define the three persons. Give the personal endings. What is their office? Define the indicative mood. Inflect the present, past, and future of **sum**. How many regular conjugations has Latin? What are the four distinguishing, or characteristic, vowels? What is the present stem and how may it be found? What is the tense sign of the past tense? of the future? What verbs belong to the first conjugation? to the second conjugation? Inflect **nārrō** and **nāvigō** in the present, past, and future. In what respect is the verb **dō** irregular? Inflect **habeō** and **videō** in the present, past, and future. What are the three meanings of the Latin present? What are the two uses of the Latin past tense? How does the meaning of **ē** (**ex**) differ from that of **ā** (**ab**)? Give the rules for the shortening of vowels. What are the general principles of Latin order?

## REVIEWS

Write the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence:

- |                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Predicate Genitive of Possession | 3. Ablative of Means  |
| 2. Ablative of Cause                | 4. Ablative of Manner |
| 5. Ablative of Accompaniment        |                       |

**747. Derivation.** Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 743. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**748.** Make a blank scheme, as shown here, of the first three tenses of the indicative, and, pointing rapidly with your pencil to the different spaces and using a variety of verbs, give the form required for each space. Drill until you can give the forms instantly. You do not know these three tenses well enough until you can give them complete, of any verb, in less than fifteen seconds.

| INDICATIVE               | INFINITIVE |
|--------------------------|------------|
| Verb .....               | .....      |
| Present stem .....       |            |
| PRESENT                  |            |
| 1. ....                  | .....      |
| 2. ....                  | .....      |
| 3. ....                  | .....      |
| PAST (TENSE SIGN -bā-)   |            |
| 1. ....                  | .....      |
| 2. ....                  | .....      |
| 3. ....                  | .....      |
| FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-) |            |
| 1. ....                  | .....      |
| 2. ....                  | .....      |
| 3. ....                  | .....      |

## IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXIV-XXXII

749. Give the English of the following words :

## NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

|       |         |       |           |
|-------|---------|-------|-----------|
| dea   | iniūria | poena | sapientia |
| fossa | patria  | poēta | vīta      |

## NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

|           |          |       |          |        |
|-----------|----------|-------|----------|--------|
| animus    | deus     | liber | nāvigium | vāllum |
| cōnsilium | finitimī | mūrus | numerus  |        |

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

|                    |                |                 |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| clārus, -a, -um    | lātus, -a, -um | medius, -a, -um |
| finitimus, -a, -um | malus, -a, -um |                 |

## VERBS

| <i>First Conj.</i> | <i>Second Conj.</i> | <i>Third Conj.</i> | <i>Fourth Conj.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| nūntiō, -ā're      | pateō, -ē're        | capiō, -ere        | audiō, -ī're        |
| servō, -ā're       | respondeō, -ē're    | dīcō, -ere         | mūniō, -ī're        |
|                    |                     | dūcō, -ere         | veniō, -ī're        |
|                    |                     | faciō, -ere        |                     |
|                    |                     | regō, -ere         |                     |
|                    |                     | gerō, -ere         |                     |
|                    |                     | vincō, -ere        |                     |

| RELATIVE PRONOUN | PREPOSITION | CONJUNCTION | ADVERBS             |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|
| quī              | dē          | cum         | celeriter<br>postea |

750. Give the Latin of the following words :

|            |                        |                      |                        |
|------------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| afterwards | conquer                | lead into            | take, seize            |
| quickly    | number ( <i>noun</i> ) | announce             | say, speak             |
| come       | boat                   | goddess              | adjoining, neighboring |
| fortify    | life                   | plan ( <i>noun</i> ) | lead ( <i>verb</i> )   |
| answer     | wide                   | famous               | god                    |
| middle of  | evil                   | wall                 | neighbors              |

|              |                      |                  |                               |
|--------------|----------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| rampart wall | rule ( <i>verb</i> ) | make, do         | down from, concerning         |
| wisdom       | seek                 | who              | wrong, insult ( <i>noun</i> ) |
| hear         | book                 | lie open, extend | wage, carry on                |
| mind heart   | poet                 | save             | send                          |
| when         | punishment           | ditch            | country, native land          |

**751. Review Questions.** Define demonstrative pronouns and adjectives. *Quid est, ea, id.* Where do demonstrative adjectives stand? Explain the use of *is* in the sentence *videō eum*. Explain the difference in meaning between *Mārcus filium suum vocat* and *Mārcus filium eius vocat*. What verbs belong to the third conjugation? Inflect *dūcō*, *mittō*, and *gerō* in the present, past, and future. What is the tense sign in the future of the first and second conjugations? of the third and fourth conjugations? What verbs belong to the fourth conjugation? Inflect *faciō*, *veniō*, and *mūniō* in the present, past, and future. What are verbs like *faciō* called? What are the tenses of the imperative? How is the present imperative formed? Give the present imperative of *servō*, *respondeō*, *vincō*, *mittō*, *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *veniō*.

**752.** Give the rules for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence:

1. Agreement of a demonstrative with its noun
2. Dative with special intransitive verbs

**753. Derivation.** What is the force of the Latin prefix *re-*? Illustrate by English or Latin words. What is the meaning of the Latin prepositions *ā* (ab), *ad*, *dē*, *ē* (ex), *in*, when used as prefixes? Illustrate by English or Latin words. Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 749. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**754.** Continue to use the scheme of § 748, and drill with verbs of all four conjugations.

## V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXIII-XL

**755. Give the English of the following words :**

NOUNS OF THE FIRST  
DECLENSION

Graecia memoria

NOUNS OF THE SECOND  
DECLENSION

captivus factum praesidium

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

firmus, -a, -um

tardus, -a, -um

VERBS

*First Conjugation*    *Second Conjugation*    *Third Conjugation*

oppugnō spectō    sedeō    agō    ēdūcō    rapiō

CONJUNCTIONS

nam neque (nec)

ADVERBS

certē dēnique diū fortiter ibi

**756. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                        |                  |                |          |
|------------------------|------------------|----------------|----------|
| attack ( <i>verb</i> ) | bravely          | a long time    | memory   |
| for                    | and not, neither | slow           | lead out |
| certainly              | finally, at last | Greece         | deed     |
| garrison               | seize            | strong, trusty | drive    |
| there                  | look at          | sit            | captive  |

**757. Review Questions.** Define the active voice and the passive voice. Illustrate each by a Latin sentence. Name the personal endings of the passive. Do the tense signs differ from those used in the active? What are the tense signs of the past and future? Define the infinitive. Explain the formation of the present infinitive, active and passive. Explain the formation of the present imperative, active and passive. Inflect the verb **sum** through the first three tenses of the indicative, the present infinitive, and the imperative. Give the complete inflection, active and passive, as far as we have gone, of **portō**, **habeō**, **vincō**, **rapiō**, and **mūniō**. Give the synopsis of the active of **spectō**, **sedeō**, **agō**, **faciō**, and **veniō**, and also the synopsis of the passive of **servō**, **teneō**, **petō**, and **audiō**.

**758.** Give the rules for the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence.

**759. Derivation.** Define the following English words, giving the Latin root word and the force of the prefix in each case :

|          |        |         |         |         |
|----------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| conserve | remit  | convoke | comport | abduct  |
| detain   | evoke  | deport  | report  | deduce  |
| emit     | invoke | export  | adduce  | reduce  |
| admit    | revoke | import  | induce  | conduce |

**760.** Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 755. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**761.** Extend the scheme of § 748 so as to include all the verb inflection you have had, and use it as suggested with verbs of all four conjugations.

## VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLI-XLVIII

**762.** Give the English of the following words :

### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

nātūra  
villa

### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

annus          imperium          locus  
exemplum      lēgātus          officiū

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

amplus, -a, -um          integer, -gra, -grum          timidus, -a, -um  
ēgregius, -a, -um          pūblicus, -a, -um          vērus, -a, -um

### VERBS

| <i>First Conj.</i> |      | <i>Second Conj.</i> |         | <i>Third Conj.</i> |  | <i>Fourth Conj.</i> |
|--------------------|------|---------------------|---------|--------------------|--|---------------------|
| comparō            | locō | prohibeō            | abdūcō  | discēdō            |  | inveniō             |
| cōfirmō            | pācō |                     | dēfendō | dīmittō            |  |                     |
| liberō             |      |                     |         |                    |  |                     |

### *Irregular*

absum

### ADVERBS

longē          minimē          quam

### PREPOSITION

ante

**763. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|              |                       |            |            |           |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| far away     | farm                  | set free   | hinder     | how       |
| nature       | place ( <i>noun</i> ) | ambassador | defend     | send away |
| year         | put                   | lead away  | find       | ample     |
| get together | subdue                | cowardly   | depart     | public    |
| remarkable   | before                | power      | not at all | whole     |
| example      | duty                  | strengthen | be away    | true      |

**764. Review Questions.** What are the principal parts of an English verb? of a Latin verb? What are the three verb stems? How is the present stem formed? the perfect stem? the participial stem? What tenses are formed from the perfect stem? Give the endings of the perfect. What is the tense sign of the past perfect? of the future perfect? Give the principal parts of *sum* and inflect it in all the moods and tenses you have learned. How is the perfect translated as perfect definite? as past absolute? How are the Latin past and Latin perfect used? Give the principal parts and the inflection in full of the indicative of *dō*, *nūntiō*, *habēō*, *gerō*, *rapīō*, *mūniō*. Give also the present imperative active and the present and perfect infinitives of these verbs.

**765.** Give the rules for the ablative of the personal agent, the place from which, and separation, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence.

**766. Derivation.** Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 762. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**767.** Extend the scheme of §§ 748 and 761, and continue its use.

## VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLIX-LVI

**768. Give the English of the following words :**

### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

fortūna  
inopia

### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

impedimentum  
iūdicium

negotium  
rēgnum

Rhēnus

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

iniquus, -a, -um

pauci, -ae, -a

reliquus, -a, -um

## VERBS

| <i>First Conj.</i> |       | <i>Second Conj.</i> |         | <i>Third Conj.</i> |          |
|--------------------|-------|---------------------|---------|--------------------|----------|
| appellō            | putō  | iubeō               | ascendō | incipiō            | prōdūcō  |
| cōservō            | vāstō | moveō               | cupiō   | interficiō         | remittō  |
| ēvocō              | vetō  | obtimeō             | fugiō   | prōcēdō            | suscipiō |
| expugnō            |       | perterreō           | iaciō   |                    |          |

*Irregular*

possum

## ADVERBS

|       |           |
|-------|-----------|
| anteā | magnopere |
| ita   | statim    |

## PREPOSITIONS

|       |
|-------|
| post  |
| prō   |
| trāns |

## CONJUNCTIONS

|    |       |
|----|-------|
| ac | atque |
| sī |       |

**769. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|              |                       |                  |                   |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| across       | desire, wish          | kingdom          | preserve          |
| and          | baggage               | Rhine            | advance           |
| hindrance    | storm ( <i>verb</i> ) | want, lack       | kill              |
| greatly      | climb up              | business, affair | lead forward      |
| unfavorable  | hurl                  | judgment         | call, name        |
| fortune      | command               | send back        | possess, gain     |
| be able, can | after, behind         | undertake        | forbid            |
| move         | at once               | flee             | for, in behalf of |
| think        | thus, so              | terrify          | few, only a few   |
| begin        | remaining, rest       | lay waste        | heretofore        |
| power        | if                    | call out         |                   |

**770. Review Questions.** Give the principal parts of the verbs of the second and third conjugations used in § 768. Define a participle. What participles are lacking in Latin? What Latin forms are made from the participial stem? Why is **vir vocātae sunt** incorrect? Give the complete inflection in the passive indicative, imperative, and infinitive of the following verbs: **moveō, iaciō, iubeō, dūcō**. Give the complete inflection of **possum**. Give the list of prepositions that take the ablative. Decline the relative **qui** and the interrogative **quis**.

**771.** Define an infinitive. Give an example in Latin of an infinitive object clause, of a complementary infinitive, of the infinitive used as a noun. Define a simple sentence, a complex sentence, a compound sentence. What are the different kinds of clauses? Give the rule for the agreement of the relative pronoun, and illustrate by a Latin sentence. Give the rule for the ablative absolute, and illustrate by a Latin sentence. How is an ablative absolute best translated?

**772. Derivation.** Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 768. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. Give the force of the prefixes **ab**, **ad**, **con-**, **dē**, **ē**, **in**, **prō**, **re-**, **trāns**. What is the force of **in-** prefixed to an adjective or adverb? What is meant by assimilation? What changes of spelling occur in words like **capiō** when compounded with a prefix?

**773.** Extend the scheme of §§ 748 and 761, so as to include all you have had of the passive, and continue to use it for drill.

### VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LVII-LXIV

**774. Give the English of the following words :**

NOUN OF THE FIRST DECL.

lingua

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECL.

mātrimōnium

signum

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

|         |        |       |        |          |        |
|---------|--------|-------|--------|----------|--------|
| animal  | cohors | homō  | mīles  | pāx      | soror  |
| caedēs  | cōnsul | iter  | mors   | prīnceps | urbs   |
| calcar  | eques  | legiō | mulier | rēx      | virtūs |
| caput   | flūmen | mare  | nōmen  | salūs    | vis    |
| civitās | frāter | māter | pater  |          |        |

ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

aequus, -a, -um

VERBS

*Second Conjugation*

audeō  
contineō

*Third Conjugation*

|          |        |       |          |
|----------|--------|-------|----------|
| accipiō  | dēiciō | pōnō  | redūcō   |
| committō | pellō  | reddō | relinquō |

## CONJUNCTIONS

|       |             |       |       |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------|
| autem | et . . . et | etiam | tamen |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------|

**775. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                |                |                      |                        |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| equal, fair    | drive, banish  | father               | cohort                 |
| even, also     | put            | peace                | enemy                  |
| dare           | return         | chief                | bound, restrain        |
| tongue         | nevertheless   | king                 | city                   |
| man            | however        | head                 | woman                  |
| journey, march | both . . . and | river                | spur ( <i>noun</i> )   |
| valor          | intrust        | brother              | state ( <i>noun</i> )  |
| strength       | consul         | leave                | animal                 |
| death          | legion         | time                 | horseman               |
| safety         | mother         | sister               | sea                    |
| receive        | soldier        | name ( <i>noun</i> ) | marriage               |
| throw down     | lead back      | slaughter            | signal ( <i>noun</i> ) |

**776. Review Questions.** Define base and stem. Into what two classes are nouns of the third declension divided? Decline **caput, civitās, eques, flūmen, legiō, pater, tempus**. What masculine and feminine nouns have i-stems? In what cases do i-stems differ from consonant stems? What neuter nouns have i-stems? Decline **caedēs, hostis, cohors, mors, mare, animal**. Decline the irregular nouns **homō, iter, vis**.

**777. Derivation.** Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 774. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How many Latin prefixes can you name? What is the force of each? Write all the English derivatives you can from the verb **mittō, -ere, misi, missus**, using both prefixes and suffixes.

## IX. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXV-LXXII

**778. Give the English of the following words :**

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECL.

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECL.

fuga

grātia

beneficium

spatium

supplicium

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECL.

INDECLINABLE NOUN

auctōritās dux ignis lēx libertās pēs servitūs

nihil

## ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

certus, -a, -um

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

|                        |                      |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| ācer, ācris, ācre      | equester, equestris, | omnis, omne          |
| brevis, breve          | equestre             | pār                  |
| celer, celeris, celere | facilis, facile      | pedester, pedestris, |
| communis, commūne      | fortis, forte        | pedestre             |
| difficilis, difficile  | gravis, grave        | similis, simile      |
| dissimilis, dissimile  | levis, leve          |                      |

## VERBS

*First Conjugation*

exspectō  
vulnerō

*Second Conjugation*

maneō

*Third Conjugation*

addūcō  
cognōscō  
cōgō

## ADVERBS

bene      plūrimum  
deinde    primō  
facile     primum  
maximē

## PREPOSITION

inter

## CONJUNCTIONS

aut  
quod

**779. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                |                       |                 |             |
|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| because        | fire                  | brave           | favor       |
| between, among | slavery               | easy            | authority   |
| certain        | wound ( <i>verb</i> ) | short           | easily      |
| sharp          | lead to               | difficult       | most of all |
| very much      | nothing               | well            | equal       |
| or             | swift                 | next            | common      |
| flight         | unlike                | leader          | all, every  |
| kindness       | on foot               | foot            | heavy       |
| wait for       | light                 | compel, collect | similar     |
| remain         | first                 | liberty         | of cavalry  |
| learn, know    | at first              | law             | space       |
| body           | punishment            |                 |             |

**780. Review Questions.** Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? How can you tell to which class an adjective belongs? Decline **equester**, **gravis**, and **pār**. What is meant by comparison of adjectives? Compare the adjectives **longus**, **fortis**, **celer**, **crēber**, **bonus**, **magnus**, **malus**, **multus**, **parvus**, **facilis**, **similis**. Decline **melior** and **plūs**. Define an adverb. Give an English sentence containing an adjective and an adverb. How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? of the third declension? Form adverbs from **altus**, **integer**, **celer**, **levis**, and compare them. What case forms are sometimes used adverbially? Illustrate. Compare **bene**, **diū**, **magnopere**, **saepe**.

**781.** Give an example in Latin of a comparative followed by **quam**; of the ablative of measure of difference.

**782. Derivation.** Give fifteen English derivatives from the words in § 778.

## X. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXIII-LXXXI

**783. Give the English of the following words :**

### NOUNS

| <i>Second Declension</i> | <i>Third Declension</i> |           | <i>Fourth Declension</i> |           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|
| modus                    | aestās                  | hiems     | nox                      | adventus  |
|                          | Caesar                  | imperātor | pars                     | exercitus |
|                          | celeritās               | lūx       | pedes                    | cornū     |
|                          | civis                   | mōns      | rūs                      | impetus   |
|                          | finis                   | nāvis     | timor                    | domus     |
|                          |                         |           |                          | manus     |
|                          |                         |           |                          | equitātus |
| <i>Fifth Declension</i>  |                         |           |                          |           |
| diēs                     |                         | rēs       |                          | spēs      |

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

|                     |                       |                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| alius, -a, -ud      | nūllus, -a, -um       | ūllus, -a, -um    |
| alter, -a, -um      | sinister, -tra, -trum | ūnus, -a, -um     |
| dexter, -tra, -trum | sōlus, -a, -um        | uter, -tra, -trum |
| neuter, -tra, -trum | tōtus, -a, -um        |                   |

## VERBS

*First Conjugation*

dēmōnstrō  
existimō

*Second Conjugation*

commoveō retineō  
dēbeō sustineō

*Third Conjugation*

contendō incolō  
dēpōnō

## PRONOUNS

aliquis  
ego  
hic

idem  
ille  
ipse

iste  
quidam  
quisque

suī  
tū

**784. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                         |                      |                          |                        |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| I                       | hope ( <i>noun</i> ) | a certain                | home, house            |
| inhabit                 | no                   | that ( <i>of yours</i> ) | right                  |
| someone                 | light                | alarm ( <i>verb</i> )    | point out              |
| this ( <i>of mine</i> ) | general              | hold up                  | army                   |
| hasten, strive          | thou, you            | self                     | that ( <i>yonder</i> ) |
| any                     | each                 | whole, all               | attack ( <i>noun</i> ) |
| one                     | lay down             | another                  | think, regard          |
| which ( <i>of two</i> ) | left                 | the other                | end, territory         |
| fear ( <i>noun</i> )    | alone                | ship                     | hand                   |
| country                 | thing                | night                    | citizen                |
| foot soldier            | hold back            | neither                  | same                   |
| part ( <i>noun</i> )    | mountain             | owe, ought               | of himself             |
| summer                  | manner               | speed                    | day                    |
| winter                  | arrival              | horn                     | Cæsar                  |

**785. Review Questions.** What nouns belong to the fourth declension? What is their gender? Decline **manus** and **cornū**. What nouns belong to the fifth declension? What is their gender? Decline **diēs** and **rēs**. Give the ending of the genitive singular in each of the five declensions. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Name the nine irregular adjectives and decline **nūllus**. Name the classes of pronouns. Decline **ego**, **tū**, and **suī**. Explain the use of **ipse** and decline it. How do **hic**, **iste**, and **ille** differ in meaning? Decline them. Define an indefinite pronoun. What general rule can you give for the declension of indefinites?

**786.** Give the rules for the expression of the place to which, in which, and from which. What important exception do these rules have? Give the

Latin for *at Rome, at home, in the country*. What are these forms called? Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of time. Translate **alii terram alii mare amant** and **alii aliam in partem faciunt**.

**787. Derivation.** Give fifteen English derivatives from the words in § 783. What is the force of the prefixes **inter**, **per**, **prae**, and **sub**? Give Latin and English words having these prefixes.

## XI. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXXII-LXXXVIII

**788. Give the English of the following words :**

### NOUNS

| <i>First Decl.</i> |            | <i>Third Decl.</i> |           | <i>Fourth Decl.</i> | <i>Fifth Decl.</i> |
|--------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------|---------------------|--------------------|
| causa              | altitūdō   | laus               | multitūdō | passus              | aciēs              |
| hōra               | dolor      | magnitūdō          | pōns      |                     |                    |
|                    | explōrātōr | mīlia              | potestās  |                     |                    |

### ADJECTIVES

| <i>First and Second Declensions</i> |           |          |           | <i>Third Declension</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-------------------------|
| cupidus                             | idōneus   | prīmus   | sextus    | militāris               |
| decimus                             | imperītus | quārtus  | tertius   | trēs                    |
| ducentī                             | nōnus     | quīntus  | ūndecimus |                         |
| duo                                 | octāvus   | secundus | ūnus      |                         |
| duodecim                            | perītus   | septimus |           |                         |
| <i>Indeclinable</i>                 |           |          |           |                         |
| centum                              | mīlle     | octō     | quīnque   | sex                     |
| decem                               | novem     | quattuor | septem    | ūndecim                 |
| duodecim                            |           |          |           |                         |

### VERBS

| <i>First Conj.</i> | <i>Second Conj.</i> |         | <i>Third Conj.</i> |           |         |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|---------|
| hortor             | doceō               | cōficiō | expellō            | patior    | sequor  |
|                    | permaneō            | dēligō  | īnstruō            | praemittō | sūmō    |
|                    | vereor              | excēdō  | intermittō         | scribō    | trādūcō |

### PREPOSITION

apud

### ADVERBS

interim vērō

**789. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                 |                        |                      |                       |
|-----------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| pace            | eleventh               | draw up              | cause ( <i>noun</i> ) |
| line of battle  | third                  | leave off            | hour                  |
| military        | sixth                  | suffer               | desirous              |
| three           | power                  | send ahead           | tenth                 |
| seven           | bridge                 | drive out            | two hundred           |
| six             | crowd                  | go out from          | two                   |
| eleven          | praise ( <i>noun</i> ) | choose               | twelfth               |
| meanwhile       | size                   | complete             | hundred               |
| truly           | thousand               | twelve               | ten                   |
| take up, assume | first                  | skilled              | height                |
| lead across     | fourth                 | eighth               | among                 |
| follow          | fifth                  | ninth                | urge                  |
| write           | second                 | unskilled            | teach                 |
| five            | seventh                | suitable             | last ( <i>verb</i> )  |
| four            | nine                   | scout                | fear ( <i>verb</i> )  |
| one             | eight                  | pain ( <i>noun</i> ) |                       |

**790. Review Questions.** Give the first twelve cardinals and decline the first three. Give the first twelve ordinals. How are ordinals declined? Decline *milia*. Define a deponent verb. Give the synopsis of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *sequor* in the indicative and imperative. Give the four participles of *veniō* and explain the formation of each. What participles that are found in English are lacking in Latin? Decline *portāns*, present participle of *portō*. Give the four participles of *hortor*. What important fact can you state concerning the meaning of the past participle of deponent verbs?

**791.** Give the rule for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence :

|                                                    |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Genitive of the whole                              | Genitive with adjectives            |
| Ablative of respect                                | Genitive or ablative of description |
| Accusative of duration of time and extent of space |                                     |

Give the Latin for *a thousand soldiers, ten thousand soldiers, five of the soldiers*. Translate "While the Helvetii were going forth from their boundaries, Cæsar was hastening from Rome," using the ablative absolute for the first clause.

**792. Derivation.** Give fifteen English words related to the Latin words in § 788. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How can you generally tell whether a word should end in *-ant* or *-ent*? What can you say about the formation and meaning of Latin nouns like **victor**, **rēctor**, etc., and their appearance in English?

## XII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXXXIX-XCVI

**793. Give the English of the following words :**

### NOUNS

#### *Third Declension*

|            |             |      |        |        |
|------------|-------------|------|--------|--------|
| condiciō   | difficultās | mēns | ōrātiō | turris |
| cōnsuētūdō | iūs         | nēmō | ratīō  | vulnus |

#### *Fourth Declension*

senātus

#### *Fifth Declension*

rēs pūblica

### ADJECTIVES

#### *First and Second Declensions*

frūmentārius    summus    tantus

#### *Third Declension*

nōbilis    tālis

### VERBS

| <i>First Conj.</i> | <i>Second Conj.</i> | <i>Third Conj.</i> | <i>Fourth Conj.</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| appropinquō        | permoveō            | āmittō             | intercludō          |
| imperō             | prōvideō            | coniciō            | perducō             |
| postulō            |                     | cōnscribō          | praefficiō          |
| rogō               |                     | cōnsistō           | premō               |
| temptō             |                     | cōsulō             | prōpōnō             |
|                    |                     | incendō            | quaerō              |

#### *Irregular*

dēsum    praesum

### PREPOSITION

propter

### ADVERBS

diligenter    quidem

**794. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|               |                          |                      |                        |
|---------------|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| draw near     | condition                | mind ( <i>noun</i> ) | hurl                   |
| command       | custom                   | no one               | wound ( <i>noun</i> )  |
| move deeply   | of grain                 | consult              | seek                   |
| look out for  | highest                  | set on fire          | senate                 |
| enroll        | so great                 | cut off              | commonwealth           |
| stand still   | well-known               | lead through         | assemble               |
| press hard    | such                     | set over             | hinder                 |
| set forth     | difficulty               | speech               | arrive                 |
| be lacking    | right ( <i>noun</i> )    | method               | demand ( <i>verb</i> ) |
| on account of | be before <i>or</i> over | tower                | ask                    |
| carefully     | indeed                   | lose                 | try                    |

**795. Review Questions.** Name the three moods and the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive. Inflect in full the indicative and subjunctive of **vāstō**, **moveō**, **agō**, **rapiō**, and **mūniō**. Inflect the indicative and subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**. How may the past and past perfect active subjunctive of any verb be formed?

**796.** Name the primary and secondary tenses, and give the rule for the sequence of tenses. In what expressions is the indicative used? In what the subjunctive? How is purpose often expressed in English? How is it usually expressed in Latin? Give an example of each. What is a noun clause? Give the rule for noun clauses of purpose, and illustrate by an example. Name five verbs that are regularly followed by **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive. Give the rule for the subjunctive of result, and illustrate by an example. Translate "Many things caused the slave to fear," and explain the construction of the dependent clause. Give the rule for the dative with compounds, and illustrate by an example.

**797. Derivation.** Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 793. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence.

## XIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS XCVII-CIII

**798. Give the English of the following words :**

|             |           |         |          |        |
|-------------|-----------|---------|----------|--------|
| circummūniō | genus     | negō    | ostendō  | sciō   |
| enim        | intellegō | nōlō    | pertineō | sentīō |
| eō          | iūdicō    | oportet | recipiō  | spērō  |
| ferō        | mālō      | ōrdō    | satis    | volō   |
| fidēs       |           |         |          |        |

**799. Give the Latin of the following words :**

|                      |              |                      |                |
|----------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|
| kind ( <i>noun</i> ) | perceive     | for                  | faith          |
| be unwilling         | be necessary | deny                 | reach, pertain |
| sufficient           | know         | prefer               | take back      |
| wish ( <i>verb</i> ) | feel         | bear                 | judge          |
| fortify around       | rank         | hope ( <i>verb</i> ) | go             |

**800. Give the Latin of the following idioms :**

|                  |                |                              |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| To make war upon | To remember    | To be eager for a revolution |
| To be annoyed    | For the future | To give satisfaction         |

**801. Inflect the verbs eō, ferō, mālō, nōlō, volō.**

**802. Review Questions.** What constructions are used after **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**? Give the rule for the constructions with **cum**. Write sentences illustrating (a) **cum** = *when*, (b) **cum** = *since*, (c) **cum** = *although*. What is an indirect statement? How are indirect statements introduced in English? What can you say about the mood and tense of the English verb in an indirect statement? What are the three marked differences between an English and a Latin indirect statement? What kind of verbs are followed by indirect statements? Give an English indirect statement and translate it into Latin. What is an indirect question? Give an example of an English indirect question and translate it into Latin.

**803. Derivation.** Give ten English words related to the Latin words in § 798. Define them and illustrate each by an English sentence. How are abstract nouns formed from adjectives? Illustrate. Explain the meaning and formation of **cupīdus**. What is the force of the suffix **-ōsus**? of the suffixes **-ilis**, **-bilis**? What rule can you give for the spelling of English words ending in *-able* or *-ible*? in *-tion* or *-sion*?

# SUMMARY OF RULES OF SYNTAX

## FIRST HALF YEAR

### *Agreement*

1. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number (§ 48).
2. A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case (§ 61).
3. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (§ 104).
4. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (§ 91).
5. The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause (§ 390).

### *Nominative Case*

6. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative (§ 33).

### *Genitive Case*

7. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive (§ 34).
8. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate and is connected with its noun by a form of the verb *sum* (§ 150).

### *Dative Case*

9. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative (§ 58).
10. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs *crēdō*, *faveō*, *noceō*, *pāreō*, *persuādeō*, *resistō*, *studeō*, and others of like meaning (§ 224).
11. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites (§ 130).

### *Accusative Case*

12. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative (§ 35).
13. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (§ 368).

**Ablative Case**

14. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative, usually without a preposition (§ 165).
15. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition (§ 166).
16. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with **cum** (§ 167).
17. *Manner* is denoted by the ablative with **cum**. **Cum** may be omitted if an adjective is used with the ablative (§ 168).
18. The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (§ 295).
19. Words expressing separation or taking away are followed by the ablative, often with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (§ 296).
20. The ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used with passive verbs to indicate the person by whom the act is performed (§ 261).
21. The ablative of a noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be used in the absolute construction to denote attendant circumstances (§ 400).

**Infinitive used as in English**

22. The verbs **iubeō**, *command*; **cupiō**, *wish*; **vetō**, *forbid*, and the like are often followed by an infinitive clause as object (§ 367).
23. Verbs of incomplete predication are often followed by an infinitive (§ 369).

## SECOND HALF YEAR

**Genitive Case**

1. A genitive denoting the whole is used with words denoting a part, and is known as the genitive of the whole, or the partitive genitive (§ 541).
2. The adjectives **cupidus**, *desirous*; **peritus**, *skilled*; **imperitus**, *ignorant*, and others of similar character are followed by the objective genitive (§ 554).
3. The genitive or the ablative, with a modifying adjective, is used in expressions of quality or description (§ 562).

**Dative Case**

4. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super** take the dative of the indirect object (§ 623).
5. The dative is used to denote the purpose or end for which, often with another dative denoting the person or thing affected (§ 686).

***Accusative Case***

6. The place to which is expressed by **ad** or **in** with the accusative (§ 481).
7. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative (§ 547).
8. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling*, and the like may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives (§ 684).

***Ablative Case***

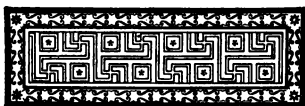
9. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference (§ 452).
10. The place from which is expressed by **ā** or **ab**, **dē**, **ē** or **ex**, with the ablative (§ 482; cf. § 295).
11. The place at or in which is expressed by the ablative with **in** (§ 483).
12. The time when or within which anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 493).
13. The ablative is used to denote in what respect something is true (§ 552).

***Moods and Tenses of Verbs***

14. In a complex sentence a primary tense of the indicative in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and a secondary by a secondary (§ 595).
15. A clause expressing purpose takes the subjunctive (§ 588).
16. Verbs denoting a purpose or desire that something be done are followed by a subjunctive clause as object, introduced by **ut** or **nē** (§ 602).
17. Clauses of result are introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) and have the verb in the subjunctive (§ 616).
18. Object clauses of result introduced by **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about (§ 618).
19. **Cum** means *when, since, or although*, and takes the subjunctive except in a temporal or descriptive clause of present or future time (§ 643).

***Moods and Tenses of Verbs (Continued)***

20. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive (§ 654).
21. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive (§ 656).
22. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying, telling, knowing, thinking, and perceiving* (§ 657).
23. In an indirect question the verb is in the subjunctive, and its tense is determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 671).



ROMAN MOSAIC

## GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

### DECLENSION OF NOUNS

**804.** Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular.

#### **805. FIRST DECLENSION**

*aqua* (base *aqu-*), *water*

|      | SINGULAR     |            | PLURAL         |              |
|------|--------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| NOM. | <i>aqua</i>  | <i>-a</i>  | <i>aquae</i>   | <i>-ae</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>aquae</i> | <i>-ae</i> | <i>aquarum</i> | <i>-arum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>aquae</i> | <i>-ae</i> | <i>aquis</i>   | <i>-is</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>aquam</i> | <i>-am</i> | <i>aquas</i>   | <i>-as</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>aquā</i>  | <i>-ā</i>  | <i>aquis</i>   | <i>-is</i>   |

*a. Dea* and *filia* have the termination *-abus* in the dative and ablative plural.

#### **806. SECOND DECLENSION**

*a. MASCULINES IN -us*

*servus* (base *serv-*), *slave*

|      |               |            |                 |              |
|------|---------------|------------|-----------------|--------------|
| NOM. | <i>servus</i> | <i>-us</i> | <i>servī</i>    | <i>-ī</i>    |
| GEN. | <i>servī</i>  | <i>-ī</i>  | <i>servōrum</i> | <i>-ōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>servō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>servīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>servum</i> | <i>-um</i> | <i>servōs</i>   | <i>-ōs</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>servō</i>  | <i>-ō</i>  | <i>servīs</i>   | <i>-īs</i>   |

1. Nouns in *-us* of the second declension have the termination *-e* in the vocative singular: as, *serve*.

2. Proper names in *-ius*, and *filius*, end in *-ī* in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult: as, *Vergi'li*, *fili*.

## b. NEUTERS IN -um

oppidum (base oppid-), *town*

|      |         |     |           |       |
|------|---------|-----|-----------|-------|
| NOM. | oppidum | -um | oppida    | -a    |
| GEN. | oppidī  | -ī  | oppidōrum | -ōrum |
| DAT. | oppidō  | -ō  | oppidis   | -is   |
| ACC. | oppidum | -um | oppida    | -a    |
| ABL. | oppidō  | -ō  | oppidis   | -is   |

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, *not* in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

## c. MASCULINES IN -er AND -ir

puer (base puer-), *boy*; ager (base agr-), *field*; vir (base vir-), *man*

|      |          |         |         |       |
|------|----------|---------|---------|-------|
| NOM. | puer     | ager    | vir     | —     |
| GEN. | puerī    | agrī    | virī    | -ī    |
| DAT. | puerō    | agrō    | virō    | -ō    |
| ACC. | puerum   | agrum   | virum   | -um   |
| ABL. | puerō    | agrō    | virō    | -ō    |
| NOM. | puerī    | agrī    | virī    | -ī    |
| GEN. | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | -ōrum |
| DAT. | puerīs   | agrīs   | virīs   | -is   |
| ACC. | puerōs   | agrōs   | virōs   | -ōs   |
| ABL. | puerīs   | agrīs   | virīs   | -is   |

## THIRD DECLENSION

807. Nouns of the third declension are classified as consonant stems or i-stems.

808.

## I. CONSONANT STEMS

## a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

cōnsul (base cōnsul-), M., *consul*; legiō (base legiōn-), F., *legion*;pater (base patr-), M., *father*

|      |          |          |        |     |
|------|----------|----------|--------|-----|
| NOM. | cōnsul   | legiō    | pater  | —   |
| GEN. | cōnsulis | legiōnis | patris | -is |
| DAT. | cōnsulī  | legiōnī  | patrī  | -ī  |
| ACC. | cōnsulem | legiōnem | patrem | -em |
| ABL. | cōnsule  | legiōne  | patre  | -e  |

|      |           |            |          |       |
|------|-----------|------------|----------|-------|
| NOM. | cōsulēs   | legiōnēs   | patrēs   | -ēs   |
| GEN. | cōsulūm   | legiōnum   | patrum   | -um   |
| DAT. | cōsulibus | legiōnibus | patribus | -ibus |
| ACC. | cōsulēs   | legiōnēs   | patrēs   | -ēs   |
| ABL. | cōsulibus | legiōnibus | patribus | -ibus |

**princeps** (base **prīncip-**), M., *chief*; **mīles** (base **mīlit-**), M., *soldier*;  
**rēx** (base **rēg-**), M., *king*

|      |             |           |         |       |
|------|-------------|-----------|---------|-------|
| NOM. | prīnceps    | mīles     | rēx     | -s    |
| GEN. | prīncipis   | militis   | rēgis   | -is   |
| DAT. | prīncipī    | militī    | rēgī    | -ī    |
| ACC. | prīncipem   | mīlitem   | rēgem   | -em   |
| ABL. | prīncipe    | mīlite    | rēge    | -e    |
| NOM. | prīncipēs   | mīlitēs   | rēgēs   | -ēs   |
| GEN. | prīncipum   | mīlitum   | rēgum   | -um   |
| DAT. | prīncipibus | mīlitibus | rēgibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | prīncipēs   | mīlitēs   | rēgēs   | -ēs   |
| ABL. | prīncipibus | mīlitibus | rēgibus | -ibus |

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular  
 cf. § 405. a.

#### δ. NEUTERS

**flūmen** (base **flūmin-**), N., *river*; **tempus** (base **tempor-**), N., *time*;  
**caput** (base **capit-**), N., *head*

|      |            |            |           |       |
|------|------------|------------|-----------|-------|
| NOM. | flūmen     | tempus     | caput     | —     |
| GEN. | flūminis   | temporis   | capitis   | -is   |
| DAT. | flūminī    | temporī    | capitī    | -ī    |
| ACC. | flūmen     | tempus     | caput     | —     |
| ABL. | flūmine    | tempore    | capite    | -e    |
| NOM. | flūmina    | tempora    | capita    | -a    |
| GEN. | flūminum   | temporum   | capitum   | -um   |
| DAT. | flūminibus | temporibus | capitibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | flūmina    | tempora    | capita    | -a    |
| ABL. | flūminibus | temporibus | capitibus | -ibus |

## 809.

## II. I-STEMS

## a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

**caedēs** (base **caed-**), F., *slaughter*; **hostis** (base **host-**), M., *enemy*; **urbs**  
(base **urb-**), F., *city*; **cliēns** (base **client-**), M., *retainer*

|      |             |             |            |               |                 |
|------|-------------|-------------|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| NOM. | caedēs      | hostis      | urbs       | cliēns        | -s, -is, or -ēs |
| GEN. | caedis      | hostis      | urbis      | clientis      | -is             |
| DAT. | caedī       | hostī       | urbī       | clientī       | -ī              |
| ACC. | caedem      | hostem      | urbem      | clientem      | -em (-im)       |
| ABL. | caede       | hoste       | urbe       | cliente       | -e (-ī)         |
| NOM. | caedēs      | hostēs      | urbēs      | clientēs      | -ēs             |
| GEN. | caedium     | hostium     | urbium     | clientium     | -ium            |
| DAT. | caedibus    | hostibus    | urbibus    | clientibus    | -ibus           |
| ACC. | caedis, -ēs | hostis, -ēs | urbis, -ēs | clientis, -ēs | -is, -ēs        |
| ABL. | caedibus    | hostibus    | urbibus    | clientibus    | -ibus           |

## b. NEUTERS

**mare** (base **mar-**), N., *sea*; **animal** (base **animāl-**), N., *animal*;  
**calcar** (base **calcār-**), N., *spur*

|      |         |            |            |         |
|------|---------|------------|------------|---------|
| NOM. | mare    | animal     | calcar     | — or -e |
| GEN. | maris   | animālis   | calcāris   | -is     |
| DAT. | marī    | animālī    | calcārī    | -ī      |
| ACC. | mare    | animal     | calcar     | — or -e |
| ABL. | marī    | animālī    | calcārī    | -ī      |
| NOM. | maria   | animālia   | calcāria   | -ia     |
| GEN. | —       | animālium  | calcārium  | -ium    |
| DAT. | maribus | animālibus | calcāribus | -ibus   |
| ACC. | maria   | animālia   | calcāria   | -ia     |
| ABL. | maribus | animālibus | calcāribus | -ibus   |

## 810.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

**adventus** (base **advent-**), M., *arrival*; **cornū** (base **corn-**), N., *horn*

|      |               |        | MASC.    | NEUT. |
|------|---------------|--------|----------|-------|
| NOM. | adventus      | cornū  | -us      | -ū    |
| GEN. | adventūs      | cornūs | -ūs      | -ūs   |
| DAT. | adventui (-ū) | cornū  | -ui (-ū) | -ū    |
| ACC. | adventum      | cornū  | -um      | -ū    |
| ABL. | adventū       | cornū  | -ū       | -ū    |

|      |            |          |       |       |
|------|------------|----------|-------|-------|
| NOM. | adventūs   | cornua   | -ūs   | -ua   |
| GEN. | adventuum  | cornuum  | -uum  | -uum  |
| DAT. | adventibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |
| ACC. | adventūs   | cornua   | -ūs   | -ua   |
| ABL. | adventibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |

## 811.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

diēs (base di-), M., *day*; rēs (base r-), F., *thing*

|      |        |       |       |
|------|--------|-------|-------|
| NOM. | diēs   | rēs   | -ēs   |
| GEN. | diēī   | rei   | -ēī   |
| DAT. | diēī   | rei   | -ēī   |
| ACC. | diem   | rem   | -em   |
| ABL. | diē    | rē    | -ē    |
| NOM. | diēs   | rēs   | -ēs   |
| GEN. | diērum | rērum | -ērum |
| DAT. | diēbus | rēbus | -ēbus |
| ACC. | diēs   | rēs   | -ēs   |
| ABL. | diēbus | rēbus | -ēbus |

## 812.

## CONSPECTUS OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS

|      | DECL. I | DECL. II | DECL. III   | DECL. IV      | DECL. V |
|------|---------|----------|-------------|---------------|---------|
| NOM. | aqua    | servus   | princeps    | adventus      | diēs    |
| GEN. | aquae   | servī    | principis   | adventūs      | diēī    |
| DAT. | aquae   | servō    | principī    | adventuī (-ū) | diēī    |
| ACC. | aquam   | servum   | principem   | adventum      | diem    |
| ABL. | aquā    | servō    | principe    | adventū       | diē     |
| NOM. | aquae   | servī    | principēs   | adventūs      | diēs    |
| GEN. | aquārum | servōrum | principum   | adventuum     | diērum  |
| DAT. | aquīs   | servīs   | principibus | adventibus    | diēbus  |
| ACC. | aquās   | servōs   | principēs   | adventūs      | diēs    |
| ABL. | aquīs   | servīs   | principibus | adventibus    | diēbus  |

## 813.

## SPECIAL PARADIGMS

homō, M., *man*; domus, F., *house*; vis, F., *strength*; iter, N., *way*

|      |           |                   |            |            |
|------|-----------|-------------------|------------|------------|
| NOM. | homō      | domus             | vis        | iter       |
| GEN. | hominis   | domūs (loc. domī) | vis (rare) | itineris   |
| DAT. | hominī    | domui, -ō         | vī (rare)  | itinerī    |
| ACC. | hominem   | domum             | vim        | iter       |
| ABL. | homine    | domō, -ū          | vī         | itinere    |
| NOM. | hominēs   | domūs             | virēs      | itinera    |
| GEN. | hominum   | domuum, -ōrum     | virium     | itinerum   |
| DAT. | hominibus | domibus           | viribus    | itineribus |
| ACC. | hominēs   | domōs, -ūs        | virīs, -ēs | itinera    |
| ABL. | hominibus | domibus           | viribus    | itineribus |

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

## 814.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**bonus** (base bon-), *good*

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.   |
|------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | bonus | bona  | bonum | bonī    | bonae   | bona    |
| GEN. | bonī  | bonae | bonī  | bonōrum | bonārum | bonōrum |
| DAT. | bonō  | bonae | bonō  | bonīs   | bonīs   | bonīs   |
| ACC. | bonum | bonam | bonum | bonōs   | bonās   | bona    |
| ABL. | bonō  | bonā  | bonō  | bonīs   | bonīs   | bonīs   |

**liber** (base liber-), *free*

|      |         |         |         |           |           |           |
|------|---------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| NOM. | liber   | libera  | liberum | liberī    | liberae   | libera    |
| GEN. | liberī  | liberae | liberī  | liberōrum | liberārum | liberōrum |
| DAT. | liberō  | liberae | liberō  | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |
| ACC. | liberum | liberam | liberum | liberōs   | liberās   | libera    |
| ABL. | liberō  | liberā  | liberō  | liberīs   | liberīs   | liberīs   |

**pulcher** (base pulchr-), *pretty*

|      |          |          |          |            |            |            |
|------|----------|----------|----------|------------|------------|------------|
| NOM. | pulcher  | pulchra  | pulchrum | pulchrī    | pulchrae   | pulchra    |
| GEN. | pulchrī  | pulchrae | pulchrī  | pulchrōrum | pulchrārum | pulchrōrum |
| DAT. | pulchrō  | pulchrae | pulchrō  | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   |
| ACC. | pulchrum | pulchram | pulchrum | pulchrōs   | pulchrās   | pulchra    |
| ABL. | pulchrō  | pulchrā  | pulchrō  | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   | pulchrīs   |

## 815.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*alius* (base *ali-*), *another*

|      | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        | MASC.          | FEM.           | NEUT.          |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>alius</i> | <i>alia</i>  | <i>aliud</i> | <i>aliī</i>    | <i>aliae</i>   | <i>alia</i>    |
| GEN. | <i>alius</i> | <i>alius</i> | <i>alius</i> | <i>aliōrum</i> | <i>aliārum</i> | <i>aliōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>aliī</i>  | <i>aliī</i>  | <i>aliī</i>  | <i>aliīs</i>   | <i>aliīs</i>   | <i>aliīs</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>aliū</i>  | <i>aliā</i>  | <i>aliud</i> | <i>aliōs</i>   | <i>aliās</i>   | <i>alia</i>    |
| ABL. | <i>aliō</i>  | <i>aliā</i>  | <i>aliō</i>  | <i>aliīs</i>   | <i>aliīs</i>   | <i>aliīs</i>   |

*ūnus* (base *ūn-*), *one, only*

|      | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        | MASC.         | FEM.          | NEUT.         |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| NOM. | <i>ūnus</i>  | <i>ūna</i>   | <i>ūnum</i>  | <i>ūnī</i>    | <i>ūnae</i>   | <i>ūna</i>    |
| GEN. | <i>ūnius</i> | <i>ūnius</i> | <i>ūnius</i> | <i>ūnōrum</i> | <i>ūnārum</i> | <i>ūnōrum</i> |
| DAT. | <i>ūnī</i>   | <i>ūnī</i>   | <i>ūnī</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   |
| ACC. | <i>ūnum</i>  | <i>ūnam</i>  | <i>ūnum</i>  | <i>ūnōs</i>   | <i>ūnās</i>   | <i>ūna</i>    |
| ABL. | <i>ūnō</i>   | <i>ūnā</i>   | <i>ūnō</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   | <i>ūnīs</i>   |

816. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, *I*-STEMS*ācer, ācris, ācre* (base *ācr-*), *keen, eager*

|      | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        | MASC.             | FEM.              | NEUT.          |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>ācer</i>  | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācre</i>  | <i>ācrēs</i>      | <i>ācrēs</i>      | <i>ācria</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācris</i> | <i>ācrium</i>     | <i>ācrium</i>     | <i>ācrium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācribus</i>    | <i>ācribus</i>    | <i>ācribus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācrem</i> | <i>ācre</i>  | <i>ācrīs, -ēs</i> | <i>ācrīs, -ēs</i> | <i>ācria</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācrī</i>  | <i>ācribus</i>    | <i>ācribus</i>    | <i>ācribus</i> |

*omnis, omne* (base *omn-*), *every, all*

|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.        | MASC. AND FEM.    | NEUT.          |
|------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>omnis</i>   | <i>omne</i>  | <i>omnēs</i>      | <i>omnia</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>omnis</i>   | <i>omnis</i> | <i>omnium</i>     | <i>omnium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>omnī</i>    | <i>omnī</i>  | <i>omnibus</i>    | <i>omnibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>omnem</i>   | <i>omne</i>  | <i>omnīs, -ēs</i> | <i>omnia</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>omnī</i>    | <i>omnī</i>  | <i>omnibus</i>    | <i>omnibus</i> |

*pār* (base *par-*), *equal*

|      |              |              |                   |                |
|------|--------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| NOM. | <i>pār</i>   | <i>pār</i>   | <i>parēs</i>      | <i>paria</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>paris</i> | <i>paris</i> | <i>parium</i>     | <i>parium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>parī</i>  | <i>parī</i>  | <i>paribus</i>    | <i>paribus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>parem</i> | <i>pār</i>   | <i>parīs, -ēs</i> | <i>paria</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>parī</i>  | <i>parī</i>  | <i>paribus</i>    | <i>paribus</i> |

## 817.

## PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

*vocāns* (base *vocant-*), *calling*

|      | MASC. AND FEM.     | NEUT.              | MASC. AND FEM.       | NEUT.             |
|------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| NOM. | <i>vocāns</i>      | <i>vocāns</i>      | <i>vocantēs</i>      | <i>vocantia</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>vocantis</i>    | <i>vocantis</i>    | <i>vocantium</i>     | <i>vocantium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>vocantī</i>     | <i>vocantī</i>     | <i>vocantibus</i>    | <i>vocantibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>vocantem</i>    | <i>vocāns</i>      | <i>vocantis, -ēs</i> | <i>vocantia</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>vocante, -ī</i> | <i>vocante, -ī</i> | <i>vocantibus</i>    | <i>vocantibus</i> |

*iēns* (base *ient-*, *eunt-*), *going*

|      |                  |                  |                    |                 |
|------|------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| NOM. | <i>iēns</i>      | <i>iēns</i>      | <i>euntēs</i>      | <i>euntia</i>   |
| GEN. | <i>euntis</i>    | <i>euntis</i>    | <i>euntium</i>     | <i>euntium</i>  |
| DAT. | <i>euntī</i>     | <i>euntī</i>     | <i>euntibus</i>    | <i>euntibus</i> |
| ACC. | <i>euntem</i>    | <i>iēns</i>      | <i>euntis, -ēs</i> | <i>euntia</i>   |
| ABL. | <i>eunte, -ī</i> | <i>eunte, -ī</i> | <i>euntibus</i>    | <i>euntibus</i> |

## 818.

## REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE               |                  | COMPARATIVE      |                     | SUPERLATIVE |       |  |
|------------------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------|-------|--|
| MASC.                  | MASC. AND FEM.   | NEUT.            | MASC.               | FEM.        | NEUT. |  |
| <i>clārus, clear</i>   | <i>clārior</i>   | <i>clārius</i>   | <i>clārissimus</i>  | -a          | -um   |  |
| <i>brevis, short</i>   | <i>brevior</i>   | <i>brevius</i>   | <i>brevissimus</i>  | -a          | -um   |  |
| <i>vēlōx, swift</i>    | <i>vēlōcior</i>  | <i>vēlōcius</i>  | <i>vēlōcissimus</i> | -a          | -um   |  |
| <i>ācer, sharp</i>     | <i>ācrior</i>    | <i>ācrius</i>    | <i>ācerrimus</i>    | -a          | -um   |  |
| <i>pulcher, pretty</i> | <i>pulchrior</i> | <i>pulchrius</i> | <i>pulcherrimus</i> | -a          | -um   |  |
| <i>liber, free</i>     | <i>liberior</i>  | <i>liberius</i>  | <i>liberrimus</i>   | -a          | -um   |  |

## 819. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

clārior, *clearer*

|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.     | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.       |
|------|----------------|-----------|----------------|-------------|
| NOM. | clārior        | clārius   | clāriōrēs      | clāriōra    |
| GEN. | clāriōris      | clāriōris | clāriōrum      | clāriōrum   |
| DAT. | clāriōrī       | clāriōrī  | clāriōribus    | clāriōribus |
| ACC. | clāriōrem      | clārius   | clāriōrēs      | clāriōra    |
| ABL. | clāriōre       | clāriōre  | clāriōribus    | clāriōribus |

plūs, *more*

|      |   |        |             |          |
|------|---|--------|-------------|----------|
| NOM. | — | plūs   | plūrēs      | plūra    |
| GEN. | — | plūris | plūrium     | plūrium  |
| DAT. | — | —      | plūribus    | plūribus |
| ACC. | — | plūs   | plūris, -ēs | plūra    |
| ABL. | — | plūre  | plūribus    | plūribus |

## 820. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE                       | COMPARATIVE                     | SUPERLATIVE                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>    | melior, melius, <i>better</i>   | optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>         |
| magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>  | maior, maius, <i>greater</i>    | maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>     |
| malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>     | peior, peius, <i>worse</i>      | pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>       |
| multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>   | —, plūs, <i>more</i>            | plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>        |
| parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>  | minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>    | minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>     |
| facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>       | facilior, <i>easier</i>         | facillimus, <i>easiest</i>            |
| difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>    | difficilior, <i>harder</i>      | difficillimus, <i>hardest</i>         |
| similis, -e, <i>like</i>       | similior, <i>more like</i>      | simillimus, <i>most like</i>          |
| dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>  | dissimilior, <i>more unlike</i> | dissimillimus, <i>most unlike</i>     |
| inferus, -a, -um, <i>below</i> | inferior, <i>lower</i>          | { infimus<br>imus } <i>lowest</i>     |
| superus, -a, -um, <i>above</i> | superior, <i>higher</i>         | { suprēmus<br>summus } <i>highest</i> |
|                                | prior, <i>former</i>            | primus, <i>first</i>                  |
|                                | propior, <i>nearer</i>          | proximus, <i>next</i>                 |
|                                | ulterior, <i>farther</i>        | ultimus, <i>farthest</i>              |
|                                | interior, <i>inner</i>          | intimus, <i>inmost</i>                |
|                                | citerior, <i>hither</i>         | citimus, <i>hithermost</i>            |

**821. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

| POSITIVE                    | COMPARATIVE | SUPERLATIVE |
|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| cārē, <i>dearly</i>         | cārius      | cārissimē   |
| pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i> | pulchrius   | pulcherrimē |
| liberē, <i>freely</i>       | liberius    | liberrimē   |
| ācritē, <i>sharply</i>      | ācrius      | ācerrimē    |
| similiter, <i>similarly</i> | similius    | simillimē   |

**822. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

| POSITIVE                      | COMPARATIVE             | SUPERLATIVE                 |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| bene, <i>well</i>             | melius, <i>better</i>   | optimē, <i>best</i>         |
| diū, <i>long, a long time</i> | diūtius, <i>longer</i>  | diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>  |
| magnopere, <i>greatly</i>     | magis, <i>more</i>      | maximē, <i>most</i>         |
| parum, <i>little</i>          | minus, <i>less</i>      | minimē, <i>least</i>        |
| prope, <i>nearly, near</i>    | propius, <i>nearer</i>  | proximē, <i>nearest</i>     |
| saepe, <i>often</i>           | saepius, <i>oftener</i> | saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i> |

**NUMERAL ADJECTIVES**

**823.** The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mille* used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*.

| CARDINALS ( <i>How many</i> )  |              | ORDINALS ( <i>In what order</i> ) |               |
|--------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| 1, ūnus, -a, -um               | <i>one</i>   | prīmus, -a, -um                   | <i>first</i>  |
| 2, duo, duae, duo              | <i>two</i>   | secundus ( <i>or alter</i> )      | <i>second</i> |
| 3, trēs, tria                  | <i>three</i> | tertius                           | <i>third</i>  |
| 4, quattuor                    | <i>etc.</i>  | quārtus                           | <i>etc.</i>   |
| 5, quīnque                     |              | quintus                           |               |
| 6, sex                         |              | sextus                            |               |
| 7, septem                      |              | septīmus                          |               |
| 8, octō                        |              | octāvus                           |               |
| 9, novem                       |              | nōnus                             |               |
| 10, decem                      |              | decimus                           |               |
| 11, ūndecim                    |              | ūndecimus                         |               |
| 12, duodecim                   |              | duodecimus                        |               |
| 13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs) |              | tertius decimus                   |               |
| 14, quattuordecim              |              | quārtus decimus                   |               |

|                                                       |                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 15, quīndecim                                         | quīntus decimus                                         |
| 16, sēdecim                                           | sextus decimus                                          |
| 17, septendecim                                       | septimus decimus                                        |
| 18, duodēvigintī                                      | duodēvicēsimus                                          |
| 19, ūndēvigintī                                       | ūndēvicēsimus                                           |
| 20, vigintī                                           | vicēsimus <i>or</i> vicēsīmus                           |
| 21, { vigintī ūnus <i>or</i><br>ūnus et vigintī, etc. | { vicēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i><br>ūnus et vicēsīmus, etc. |
| 30, trīgintā                                          | trīcēsimus                                              |
| 40, quadrāgintā                                       | quadrāgēsimus                                           |
| 50, quīnquāgintā                                      | quīnquāgēsimus                                          |
| 60, sexāgintā                                         | sexāgēsimus                                             |
| 70, septuāgintā                                       | septuāgēsimus                                           |
| 80, octōgintā                                         | octōgēsimus                                             |
| 90, nōnāgintā                                         | nōnāgēsimus                                             |
| 100, centum                                           | centēsīmus                                              |
| 101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.                           | centēsīmus (et) prīmus, etc.                            |
| 200, ducentī, -ae, -a                                 | ducentēsīmus                                            |
| 300, trecentī                                         | trecentēsīmus                                           |
| 400, quadringentī                                     | quadringentēsīmus                                       |
| 500, quīngentī                                        | quīngentēsīmus                                          |
| 600, sescentī                                         | sescentēsīmus                                           |
| 700, septingentī                                      | septingentēsīmus                                        |
| 800, octingentī                                       | octingentēsīmus                                         |
| 900, nōngentī                                         | nōngentēsīmus                                           |
| 1000, mille                                           | millēsīmus                                              |

**824.** Declension of *duo*, *two*; *trēs*, *three*; and *mille*, *thousand*.

|      | MASC.              | FEM.   | NEUT.  | M. AND F.           | NEUT.  | SING. | PLUR.   |
|------|--------------------|--------|--------|---------------------|--------|-------|---------|
| NOM. | duo                | duae   | duo    | trēs                | tria   | mille | mīlia   |
| GEN. | duōrum             | duārum | duōrum | trium               | trium  | mille | mīlium  |
| DAT. | duōbus             | duābus | duōbus | tribus              | tribus | mille | mīlibus |
| ACC. | duōs <i>or</i> duo | duās   | duo    | trīs <i>or</i> trēs | tria   | mille | mīlia   |
| ABL. | duōbus             | duābus | duōbus | tribus              | tribus | mille | mīlibus |

NOTE. *Mille* is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of *ūnus* cf. § 534.

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

## 825.

## PERSONAL

|      | ego, <i>I</i> |               | tū, <i>you</i> |               | suī, <i>of himself, etc.</i> |          |
|------|---------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|------------------------------|----------|
| NOM. | ego           | nōs           | tū             | vōs           | —                            | —        |
| GEN. | meī           | nostrum, -trī | tuī            | vestrum, -trī | suī                          | suī      |
| DAT. | mihi          | nōbīs         | tibi           | vōbīs         | sibi                         | sibi     |
| ACC. | mē            | nōs           | tē             | vōs           | sē, sēsē                     | sē, sēsē |
| ABL. | mē            | nōbīs         | tē             | vōbīs         | sē, sēsē                     | sē, sēsē |

## 826.

## POSSESSIVE

| MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.   |                                        |
|--------|--------|---------|----------------------------------------|
| meus   | mea    | meum    | <i>my, mine</i>                        |
| tuus   | tua    | tuum    | <i>your, yours</i>                     |
| suus   | sua    | suum    | <i>his (own), her (own), its (own)</i> |
| noster | nostra | nostrum | <i>our, ours</i>                       |
| vester | vestra | vestrum | <i>your, yours</i>                     |
| suus   | sua    | suum    | <i>their (own), theirs</i>             |

NOTE. The vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mi*.

## 827.

## INTENSIVE

|      | ipse, <i>self</i> |         |         |         |         |         |
|------|-------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
|      | MASC.             | FEM.    | NEUT.   | MASC.   | FEM.    | NEUT.   |
| NOM  | ipse              | ipsa    | ipsum   | ipsī    | ipsae   | ipsa    |
| GEN. | ipsī'us           | ipsī'us | ipsī'us | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| DAT. | ipsī              | ipsī    | ipsī    | ipsis   | ipsis   | ipsis   |
| ACC. | ipsum             | ipsam   | ipsum   | ipsōs   | ipsās   | ipsa    |
| ABL. | ipsō              | ipsā    | ipsō    | ipsis   | ipsis   | ipsis   |

828.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

*hic, this (here), he*

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| NOM. | hic   | haec  | hoc   | hī    | hae   | haec  |
| GEN. | huius | huius | huius | hōrum | hārum | hōrum |
| DAT. | huic  | huic  | huic  | hīs   | hīs   | hīs   |
| ACC. | hunc  | hanc  | hoc   | hōs   | hās   | haec  |
| ABL. | hōc   | hāc   | hōc   | hīs   | hīs   | hīs   |

*iste, this, that (of yours), he*

|      |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | iste    | ista    | istud   | istī    | istae   | ista    |
| GEN. | istī'us | istī'us | istī'us | istōrum | istārum | istōrum |
| DAT. | istī    | istī    | istī    | istīs   | istīs   | istīs   |
| ACC. | istum   | istam   | istud   | istōs   | istās   | ista    |
| ABL. | istō    | istā    | istō    | istīs   | istīs   | istīs   |

*ille, that (yonder), he*

|      |         |         |         |         |         |         |
|------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| NOM. | ille    | illa    | illud   | illī    | illae   | illa    |
| GEN. | illī'us | illī'us | illī'us | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| DAT. | illī    | illī    | illī    | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |
| ACC. | illum   | illam   | illud   | illōs   | illās   | illa    |
| ABL. | illō    | illā    | illō    | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |

*is, this, that, he*

|      |      |      |      |          |          |          |
|------|------|------|------|----------|----------|----------|
| NOM. | is   | ea   | id   | īī, eī   | eae      | ea       |
| GEN. | eius | eius | eius | eōrum    | eārum    | eōrum    |
| DAT. | eī   | eī   | eī   | īīs, eīs | īīs, eīs | īīs, eīs |
| ACC. | eum  | eam  | id   | eōs      | eās      | ea       |
| ABL. | eō   | eā   | eō   | īīs, eīs | īīs, eīs | īīs, eīs |

*īdem, the same*

|      |          |          |          |                      |                    |                    |
|------|----------|----------|----------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| NOM. | īdem     | e'adem   | īdem     | { īī'dem<br>eī'dem   | eae'dem            | e'adem             |
| GEN. | eius'dem | eius'dem | eius'dem | eōrun'dem            | eārun'dem          | eōrun'dem          |
| DAT. | eī'dem   | eī'dem   | eī'dem   | { īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem | īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem | īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem |
| ACC. | eun'dem  | ean'dem  | īdem     | eōs'dem              | eās'dem            | e'adem             |
| ABL. | eō'dem   | eā'dem   | eō'dem   | { īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem | īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem | īīs'dem<br>eīs'dem |

## 829.

## RELATIVE

*quī, who, which, that*

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
|------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| NOM. | quī   | quae  | quod  | quī    | quae   | quae   |
| GEN. | cuius | cuius | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. | cui   | cui   | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. | quem  | quam  | quod  | quōs   | quās   | quae   |
| ABL. | quō   | quā   | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

## 830.

## INTERROGATIVE

*quis, substantive, who, what*

|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.   | NEUT.  |
|------|----------------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| NOM. | quis           | quid  | quī    | quae   | quae   |
| GEN. | cuius          | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| DAT. | cui            | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| ACC. | quem           | quid  | quōs   | quās   | quae   |
| ABL. | quō            | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod**, is declined like the relative.

## INDEFINITE

**831. Quis** and **quī**, as declined above,<sup>1</sup> are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of **quis** and **quī**.

*quisque, each*

|      | SUBSTANTIVE    |           | ADJECTIVE |           |           |
|------|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.     | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| NOM. | quisque        | quidque   | quisque   | quaeque   | quodque   |
| GEN. | cuius'que      | cuius'que | cuius'que | cuius'que | cuius'que |
| DAT. | cuique         | cuique    | cuique    | cuique    | cuique    |
| ACC. | quemque        | quidque   | quemque   | quamque   | quodque   |
| ABL. | quōque         | quōque    | quōque    | quāque    | quōque    |

<sup>1</sup> *Qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

*quīdam, a certain one, a certain*

|      | MASC.      | FEM.       | NEUT.                                  |
|------|------------|------------|----------------------------------------|
| NOM. | quīdam     | quaedam    | { quoddam<br>quiddam ( <i>subst.</i> ) |
| GEN. | cuius'dam  | cuius'dam  | cuius'dam                              |
| DAT. | cuidam     | cuidam     | cuidam                                 |
| ACC. | quendam    | quandam    | { quoddam<br>quiddam ( <i>subst.</i> ) |
| ABL. | quōdam     | quādam     | quōdam                                 |
| NOM. | quīdam     | quaedam    | quaedam                                |
| GEN. | quōrun'dam | quārun'dam | quōrun'dam                             |
| DAT. | quibus'dam | quibus'dam | quibus'dam                             |
| ACC. | quōsdam    | quāsdam    | quaedam                                |
| ABL. | quibus'dam | quibus'dam | quibus'dam                             |

*aliquis, substantive, someone, something; aliquī, adjective, some*

|      | SUBSTANTIVE    |           | ADJECTIVE |           |           |
|------|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|      | MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.     | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| NOM. | aliquis        | aliquid   | aliquī    | aliqua    | aliquod   |
| GEN. | alicu'ius      | alicu'ius | alicu'ius | alicu'ius | alicu'ius |
| DAT. | alicui         | alicui    | alicui    | alicui    | alicui    |
| ACC. | aliquem        | aliquid   | aliquem   | aliquam   | aliquod   |
| ABL. | aliquō         | aliquō    | aliquō    | aliquā    | aliquō    |

|      | MASC.      | FEM.       | NEUT.      |
|------|------------|------------|------------|
| NOM. | aliquī     | aliquae    | aliqua     |
| GEN. | aliquō'rum | aliquā'rum | aliquō'rum |
| DAT. | ali'quibus | ali'quibus | ali'quibus |
| ACC. | aliquōs    | aliquās    | aliqua     |
| ABL. | ali'quibus | ali'quibus | ali'quibus |

## CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS

832. FIRST CONJUGATION. *Ā-VERBS. VOCŌ, I CALL*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**Pres. stem **vocā-**; perf. stem **vocāv-**; part. stem **vocāt-**

| ACTIVE                                       |                 | PASSIVE                               |                    |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| INDICATIVE                                   |                 |                                       |                    |
| PRESENT                                      |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I call, am calling, do call, etc.</i>     |                 | <i>I am called, etc.</i>              |                    |
| vocō                                         | vocāmus         | vocor                                 | vocāmur            |
| vocās                                        | vocātis         | vocāris, -re                          | vocāminī           |
| vocat                                        | vocant          | vocātur                               | vocantur           |
| PAST                                         |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I called, was calling, did call, etc.</i> |                 | <i>I was called, etc.</i>             |                    |
| vocābam                                      | vocābāmus       | vocābar                               | vocābāmur          |
| vocābās                                      | vocābātis       | vocābāris, -re                        | vocābāminī         |
| vocābat                                      | vocābant        | vocābātur                             | vocābantur         |
| FUTURE                                       |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I shall call, etc.</i>                    |                 | <i>I shall be called, etc.</i>        |                    |
| vocābō                                       | vocābimus       | vocābor                               | vocābimur          |
| vocābis                                      | vocābitis       | vocāberis, -re                        | vocābiminī         |
| vocābit                                      | vocābunt        | vocābitur                             | vocābuntur         |
| PERFECT                                      |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I have called, called, did call, etc.</i> |                 | <i>I have been (was) called, etc.</i> |                    |
| vocāvī                                       | vocāvimus       | vocātus, {<br>-a, -um {               | vocātī, {          |
| vocāvisti                                    | vocāvistis      |                                       | sumus              |
| vocāvit                                      | vocāvērunt, -re |                                       | estis              |
|                                              |                 |                                       | -ae, -a {<br>sunt  |
| PAST PERFECT                                 |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I had called, etc.</i>                    |                 | <i>I had been called, etc.</i>        |                    |
| vocāveram                                    | vocāverāmus     | vocātus, {<br>-a, -um {               | vocātī, {          |
| vocāverās                                    | vocāverātis     |                                       | erāmus             |
| vocāverat                                    | vocāverant      |                                       | erātis             |
|                                              |                 |                                       | -ae, -a {<br>erant |
| FUTURE PERFECT                               |                 |                                       |                    |
| <i>I shall have called, etc.</i>             |                 | <i>I shall have been called, etc.</i> |                    |
| vocāverō                                     | vocāverimus     | vocātus, {<br>-a, -um {               | vocātī, {          |
| vocāveris                                    | vocāveritis     |                                       | erimus             |
| vocāverit                                    | vocāverint      |                                       | eritis             |
|                                              |                 |                                       | -ae, -a {<br>erunt |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|       |         |              |          |
|-------|---------|--------------|----------|
| vocem | vocēmus | vocer        | vocēmur  |
| vocēs | vocētis | voceris, -re | vocēmini |
| vocet | vocent  | vocētur      | vocentur |

## PAST

|         |           |                |            |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| vocārem | vocārēmus | vocārer        | vocārēmur  |
| vocārēs | vocārētis | vocārēris, -re | vocārēmini |
| vocāret | vocārent  | vocārētur      | vocārentur |

## PERFECT

|           |             |            |           |
|-----------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| vocāverim | vocāverimus | vocātus, { | vocāti, { |
| vocāveris | vocāveritis | sim        | sīmus     |
| vocāverit | vocāverint  | -a, -um {  | sītis     |
|           |             | sis        | sint      |
|           |             | sit        |           |

## PAST PERFECT

|            |              |            |           |
|------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| vocāvissem | vocāvissēmus | vocātus, { | vocāti, { |
| vocāvissēs | vocāvissētis | essem      | essēmus   |
| vocāvisset | vocāvissent  | -a, -um {  | -ae, -a { |
|            |              | essēs      | essētis   |
|            |              | esset      | essent    |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| vocā, <i>call thou</i> | vocāre, <i>be thou called</i> |
| vocāte, <i>call ye</i> | vocāmini, <i>be ye called</i> |

## FUTURE

|                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| [vocātō, <i>thou shalt call</i> | vocātor, <i>thou shalt be called</i>  |
| vocātō, <i>he shall call</i>    | vocātor, <i>he shall be called</i>    |
| vocātōte, <i>you shall call</i> | _____                                 |
| vocantō, <i>they shall call</i> | vocantor, <i>they shall be called</i> |

## INFINITIVE

|                                                          |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. vocāre, <i>to call</i>                             | vocārī, <i>to be called</i> [ <i>called</i> ]   |
| PERF. vocāvisse, <i>to have called</i>                   | vocātus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been</i>      |
| FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to call</i> | [vocātum irī, <i>to be about to be called</i> ] |

## PARTICIPLES

|                                               |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. vocāns, -antis, <i>calling</i>          | PRES. _____                                                   |
| FUT. vocātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to call</i> | GERUNDIVE <sup>1</sup> vocandus, -a, -um, <i>to be called</i> |
| PERF. _____                                   | PERF. vocātus, -a, -um, <i>having been called</i>             |

## GERUND

|                                  |
|----------------------------------|
| NOM. _____                       |
| GEN. vocandī, <i>of calling</i>  |
| DAT. vocandō, <i>for calling</i> |
| ACC. vocandum, <i>calling</i>    |
| ABL. vocandō, <i>by calling</i>  |

## SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

|                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|
| ACC. vocātum, <i>to call</i>                |
| ABL. vocātū, <i>to call, in the calling</i> |

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called the future passive participle.

**833. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *MONEŌ, I ADVISE***PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**Pres. stem **monē-**; perf. stem **monu-**; part. stem **monit-**

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

*I advise, etc.*

|       |                     |
|-------|---------------------|
| moneō | monēm <sup>us</sup> |
| monēs | monētis             |
| monet | monent              |

*I am advised, etc.*

|              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| moneor       | monēmur  |
| monēris, -re | monēmini |
| monētur      | monentur |

## PAST

*I was advising, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| monēbam | monēbāmus |
| monēbās | monēbātis |
| monēbat | monēbant  |

*I was advised, etc.*

|                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| monēbar        | monēbāmur  |
| monēbāris, -re | monēbāmini |
| monēbātur      | monēbantur |

## FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| monēbō  | monēbimus |
| monēbis | monēbitis |
| monēbit | monēbunt  |

*I shall be advised, etc.*

|                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| monēbor        | monēbimur  |
| monēberis, -re | monēbimini |
| monēbitur      | monēbuntur |

## PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.*

|          |                |
|----------|----------------|
| monuī    | monuimus       |
| monuisti | monuistis      |
| monuit   | monuerunt, -re |

*I have been (was) advised, etc.*

|            |     |           |       |
|------------|-----|-----------|-------|
| monitus, { | sum | moniti, { | sumus |
| -a, -um {  | es  | -ae, -a { | estis |
|            | est |           | sunt  |

## PAST PERFECT

*I had advised, etc.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| monueram | monuerāmus |
| monuerās | monuerātis |
| monuerat | monuerant  |

*I had been advised, etc.*

|            |      |           |        |
|------------|------|-----------|--------|
| monitus, { | eram | moniti, { | erāmus |
| -a, -um {  | erās | -ae, -a { | erātis |
|            | erat |           | erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| monuerō  | monuerimus |
| monueris | monueritis |
| monuerit | monuerint  |

*I shall have been advised, etc.*

|            |      |           |        |
|------------|------|-----------|--------|
| monitus, { | erō  | moniti, { | erimus |
| -a, -um {  | eris | -ae, -a { | eritis |
|            | erit |           | erunt  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|        |          |               |           |
|--------|----------|---------------|-----------|
| moneam | moneāmus | monear        | moneāmur  |
| moneās | moneātis | moneāris, -re | moneāmini |
| moneat | moneant  | moneātur      | moneantur |

## PAST

|         |           |                |            |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| monērem | monērēmus | monērer        | monērēmur  |
| monērēs | monērētis | monērēris, -re | monērēmini |
| monēret | monērent  | monērētur      | monērentur |

## PERFECT

|          |            |                |                 |
|----------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| monuerim | monuerimus | monitus, { sim | monitī, { simus |
| monueris | monueritis | -a, -um { sis  | -ae, -a { sitis |
| monuerit | monuerint  | sit            | sint            |

## PAST PERFECT

|           |             |                  |                   |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|-------------------|
| monuissē  | monuissēmus | monitus, { essem | monitī, { essēmus |
| monuissēs | monuissētis | -a, -um { essēs  | -ae, -a { essētis |
| monuisset | monuissent  | esset            | essent            |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| monē, <i>advise thou</i> | monēre, <i>be thou advised</i> |
| monēte, <i>advise ye</i> | monēmini, <i>be ye advised</i> |

## FUTURE

|                                   |                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| [monētō, <i>thou shalt advise</i> | monētor, <i>thou shalt be advised</i>  |
| monētō, <i>he shall advise</i>    | monētor, <i>he shall be advised</i>    |
| monētōte, <i>you shall advise</i> | _____                                  |
| monentō, <i>they shall advise</i> | monentor, <i>they shall be advised</i> |

## INFINITIVE

|                                                            |                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. monēre, <i>to advise</i>                             | monērī, <i>to be advised</i>                       |
| PERF. monuisse, <i>to have advised</i>                     | monitus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been advised</i> |
| FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to advise</i> | [monitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised</i> ]   |

## PARTICIPLES

|                                                 |                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>           | PRES. _____                                                 |
| FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i> | GER. monendus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>                |
| PERF. _____                                     | PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i> |

## GERUND

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| NOM. _____                        |
| GEN. monendī, <i>of advising</i>  |
| DAT. monendō, <i>for advising</i> |
| ACC. monendum, <i>advising</i>    |
| ABL. monendō, <i>by advising</i>  |

## SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

|                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|
| ACC. monitum, <i>to advise</i>                 |
| ABL. monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i> |

## 834. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ė-VERBS. REGŌ, I RULE

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**Pres. stem **rego-**; perf. stem **rēx-**; part. stem **rēct-**

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

*I rule, etc.**I am ruled, etc.*

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| regō  | regimus |
| regis | regitis |
| regit | regunt  |

|              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| regor        | regimur  |
| regeris, -re | regimini |
| regitur      | reguntur |

## PAST

*I was ruling, etc.**I was ruled, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| regēbam | regēbāmus |
| regēbās | regēbātis |
| regēbat | regēbant  |

|                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| regēbar        | regēbāmur  |
| regēbāris, -re | regēbāmini |
| regēbātur      | regēbantur |

## FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.**I shall be ruled, etc.*

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| regam | regēmus |
| regēs | regētis |
| reget | regent  |

|              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| regar        | regēmur  |
| regēris, -re | regēmini |
| regētur      | regentur |

## PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.**I have been ruled, etc.*

|         |               |
|---------|---------------|
| rēxī    | rēximus       |
| rēxistī | rēxistis      |
| rēxit   | rēxērunt, -re |

|               |                 |     |      |
|---------------|-----------------|-----|------|
| rēctus, { sum | rēctī, { sumus  |     |      |
| -a, -um { es  | -ae, -a { estis |     |      |
|               |                 | est | sunt |

## PAST PERFECT

*I had ruled, etc.**I had been ruled, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| rēxeram | rēxerāmus |
| rēxerās | rēxerātis |
| rēxerat | rēxerant  |

|                |                  |      |       |
|----------------|------------------|------|-------|
| rēctus, { eram | rēctī, { erāmus  |      |       |
| -a, -um { erās | -ae, -a { erātis |      |       |
|                |                  | erat | erant |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.**I shall have been ruled, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| rēxerō  | rēxerimus |
| rēxeris | rēxeritis |
| rēxerit | rēxerint  |

|                |                  |      |       |
|----------------|------------------|------|-------|
| rēctus, { erō  | rēctī, { erimus  |      |       |
| -a, -um { eris | -ae, -a { eritis |      |       |
|                |                  | erit | erunt |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|       |         |              |          |
|-------|---------|--------------|----------|
| regam | regāmus | regar        | regāmur  |
| regās | regātis | regāris, -re | regāmini |
| regat | regant  | regātur      | regantur |

## PAST

|         |           |                |            |
|---------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| regerem | regerēmus | regerer        | regerēmur  |
| regerēs | regerētis | regerēris, -re | regerēmini |
| regeret | regerent  | regerētur      | regerentur |

## PERFECT

|         |           |               |                 |
|---------|-----------|---------------|-----------------|
| rēxerim | rēxerimus | rēctus, { sim | rēctī, { sīmus  |
| rēxeris | rēxeritis | -a, -um { sis | -ae, -a { sitis |
| rēxerit | rēxerint  | sit           | sint            |

## PAST PERFECT

|          |            |                 |                   |
|----------|------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| rēxissem | rēxissemus | rēctus, { essem | rēctī, { essēmus  |
| rēxissēs | rēxissētis | -a, -um { essēs | -ae, -a { essētis |
| rēxisset | rēxissent  | easet           | essent            |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| rege, <i>rule thou</i> | regerere, <i>be thou ruled</i> |
| regite, <i>rule ye</i> | regimini, <i>be ye ruled</i>   |

## FUTURE

|                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| [ regitō, <i>thou shalt rule</i> | regitor, <i>thou shalt be ruled</i>  |
| regitō, <i>he shall rule</i>     | regitor, <i>he shall be ruled</i>    |
| regitōte, <i>ye shall rule</i>   |                                      |
| reguntō, <i>they shall rule</i>  | reguntor, <i>they shall be ruled</i> |

## INFINITIVE

|                                                         |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. regere, <i>to rule</i>                            | regi, <i>to be ruled</i>                        |
| PERF. rēxisse, <i>to have ruled</i>                     | rēctus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been ruled</i> |
| FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, <i>to be about to rule</i> | [rēctum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i> ]   |

## PARTICIPLES

|                                              |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| PRES. regēns, -entis, <i>ruling</i>          | PRES. _____                                            |
| FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i> | GER. regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>             |
| PERF. _____                                  | PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, <i>having been ruled, ruled</i> |

## GERUND

|                                 |
|---------------------------------|
| NOM. _____                      |
| GEN. regendī, <i>of ruling</i>  |
| DAT. regendō, <i>for ruling</i> |
| ACC. regendum, <i>ruling</i>    |
| ABL. regendō, <i>by ruling</i>  |

## SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

|                                           |
|-------------------------------------------|
| ACC. rēctum, <i>to rule</i>               |
| ABL. rēctū, <i>to rule, in the ruling</i> |

835. FOURTH CONJUGATION. *Ī-VERBS. AUDIŌ, I HEAR*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiŏ, audire, audivī, auditus**Pres. stem **audi-**; perf. stem **audiv-**; part. stem **audit-**

| ACTIVE                          |                 | PASSIVE                              |                  |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| INDICATIVE                      |                 |                                      |                  |
| PRESENT                         |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I hear, etc.</i>             |                 | <i>I am heard, etc.</i>              |                  |
| audiō                           | audimus         | audior                               | audimur          |
| audis                           | auditis         | audiris, -re                         | audimini         |
| audit                           | audiunt         | auditur                              | audiuntur        |
| PAST                            |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I was hearing, etc.</i>      |                 | <i>I was heard, etc.</i>             |                  |
| audiēbam                        | audiēbāmus      | audiēbar                             | audiēbāmur       |
| audiēbās                        | audiēbātis      | audiēbāris, -re                      | audiēbāmini      |
| audiēbat                        | audiēbant       | audiēbātur                           | audiēbantur      |
| FUTURE                          |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I shall hear, etc.</i>       |                 | <i>I shall be heard, etc.</i>        |                  |
| audiam                          | audiēmus        | audiar                               | audiēmur         |
| audiēs                          | audiētis        | audiēris, -re                        | audiēmini        |
| audiet                          | audient         | audiētur                             | audientur        |
| PERFECT                         |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I have heard, etc.</i>       |                 | <i>I have been heard, etc.</i>       |                  |
| audivi                          | audivimus       | auditus, { sum                       | auditi, { sumus  |
| audivisti                       | audivistis      | -a, -um { es                         | -ae, -a { estis  |
| audivit                         | audiverunt, -re | est                                  | sunt             |
| PAST PERFECT                    |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I had heard, etc.</i>        |                 | <i>I had been heard, etc.</i>        |                  |
| audiveram                       | audiverāmus     | auditus, { eram                      | auditi, { erāmus |
| audiverās                       | audiverātis     | -a, -um { erās                       | -ae, -a { erātis |
| audiverat                       | audiverant      | erat                                 | erant            |
| FUTURE PERFECT                  |                 |                                      |                  |
| <i>I shall have heard, etc.</i> |                 | <i>I shall have been heard, etc.</i> |                  |
| audiverō                        | audiverimus     | auditus, { erō                       | auditi, { erimus |
| audiveris                       | audiveritis     | -a, -um { eris                       | -ae, -a { eritis |
| audiverit                       | audiverint      | erit                                 | erunt            |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|               |                 |                      |                  |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>audiam</b> | <b>audiāmus</b> | <b>audiar</b>        | <b>audiāmur</b>  |
| <b>audiās</b> | <b>audiātis</b> | <b>audiāris, -re</b> | <b>audiāmini</b> |
| <b>audiat</b> | <b>audiant</b>  | <b>audiātur</b>      | <b>audiantur</b> |

## PAST

|                |                  |                       |                   |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>audirem</b> | <b>audirēmus</b> | <b>audirer</b>        | <b>audirēmur</b>  |
| <b>audirēs</b> | <b>audirētis</b> | <b>audirēris, -re</b> | <b>audirēmini</b> |
| <b>audiret</b> | <b>audirent</b>  | <b>audirētur</b>      | <b>audirentur</b> |

## PERFECT

|                  |                    |                   |                  |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <b>audiverim</b> | <b>audiverimus</b> | <b>auditus, {</b> | <b>audītī, {</b> |
| <b>audiveris</b> | <b>audiveritis</b> | <b>-a, -um {</b>  | <b>-ae, -a {</b> |
| <b>audiverit</b> | <b>audiverint</b>  | <b>sit</b>        | <b>sint</b>      |

## PAST PERFECT

|                   |                     |                   |                  |
|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| <b>audivissem</b> | <b>audivissēmus</b> | <b>auditus, {</b> | <b>audītī, {</b> |
| <b>audivissēs</b> | <b>audivissētis</b> | <b>-a, -um {</b>  | <b>-ae, -a {</b> |
| <b>audivisset</b> | <b>audivissent</b>  | <b>esset</b>      | <b>essētis</b>   |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>audi, hear thou</b> | <b>audire, be thou heard</b> |
| <b>audite, hear ye</b> | <b>audimini, be ye heard</b> |

## FUTURE

|                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>[auditō, thou shalt hear</b>  | <b>auditor, thou shalt be heard</b>   |
| <b>auditō, he shall hear</b>     | <b>auditor, he shall be heard</b>     |
| <b>auditōte, ye shall hear</b>   | <b>_____</b>                          |
| <b>audiuntō, they shall hear</b> | <b>audiuntor, they shall be heard</b> |

## INFINITIVE

|                                                          |                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PRES. audire, to hear</b>                             | <b>audiri, to be heard</b>                       |
| <b>PERF. audivisse, to have heard</b>                    | <b>auditus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard</b> |
| <b>FUT. auditurus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear</b> | <b>[auditum iri, to be about to be heard]</b>    |

## PARTICIPLES

|                                               |                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PRES. audiēns, -entis, hearing</b>         | <b>PRES. _____</b>                                      |
| <b>FUT. auditurus, -a, -um, about to hear</b> | <b>GER. audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard</b>             |
| <b>PERF. _____</b>                            | <b>PERF. auditus, -a, -um, having been heard, heard</b> |

## GERUND

|                                   |
|-----------------------------------|
| <b>NOM. _____</b>                 |
| <b>GEN. audiendī, of hearing</b>  |
| <b>DAT. audiendō, for hearing</b> |
| <b>ACC. audiendum, hearing</b>    |
| <b>ABL. audiendō, by hearing</b>  |

## SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)

|                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>ACC. auditum, to hear</b>                |
| <b>ABL. auditū, to hear, in the hearing</b> |

836. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *-IŌ*. *CAPĪŌ, I TAKE*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *capĭō, capere, cēpī, captus*Pres. stem *cape-*; perf. stem *cēp-*; part. stem *capt-*

| ACTIVE          |                      | INDICATIVE             | PASSIVE            |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
|                 |                      | PRESENT                |                    |
| <i>capĭō</i>    | <i>capimus</i>       | <i>capior</i>          | <i>capimur</i>     |
| <i>capis</i>    | <i>capitis</i>       | <i>caperis, -re</i>    | <i>capiminī</i>    |
| <i>capit</i>    | <i>capiunt</i>       | <i>capitur</i>         | <i>capiuntur</i>   |
|                 |                      | PAST                   |                    |
| <i>capĭebam</i> | <i>capĭebāmus</i>    | <i>capĭebar</i>        | <i>capĭebāmur</i>  |
| <i>capĭebās</i> | <i>capĭebātis</i>    | <i>capĭebāris, -re</i> | <i>capĭebāminī</i> |
| <i>capĭebat</i> | <i>capĭebant</i>     | <i>capĭebātur</i>      | <i>capĭebantur</i> |
|                 |                      | FUTURE                 |                    |
| <i>capiam</i>   | <i>capĭemus</i>      | <i>capiar</i>          | <i>capĭemur</i>    |
| <i>capĭēs</i>   | <i>capĭētis</i>      | <i>capĭēris, -re</i>   | <i>capĭēminī</i>   |
| <i>capiet</i>   | <i>capient</i>       | <i>capĭētur</i>        | <i>capientur</i>   |
|                 |                      | PERFECT                |                    |
| <i>cēpī</i>     | <i>cēpimus</i>       | <i>captus, {</i>       | <i>captī, {</i>    |
| <i>cēpistī</i>  | <i>cēpistis</i>      | <i>-a, -um {</i>       | <i>-ae, -a {</i>   |
| <i>cēpit</i>    | <i>cēperunt, -re</i> | <i>es</i>              | <i>estis</i>       |
|                 |                      | <i>est</i>             | <i>sunt</i>        |
|                 |                      | PAST PERFECT           |                    |
| <i>cēperam</i>  | <i>cēperāmus</i>     | <i>captus, {</i>       | <i>captī, {</i>    |
| <i>cēperās</i>  | <i>cēperātis</i>     | <i>-a, -um {</i>       | <i>-ae, -a {</i>   |
| <i>cēperat</i>  | <i>cēperant</i>      | <i>eram</i>            | <i>erāmus</i>      |
|                 |                      | <i>erās</i>            | <i>erātis</i>      |
|                 |                      | <i>erat</i>            | <i>erant</i>       |
|                 |                      | FUTURE PERFECT         |                    |
| <i>cēperō</i>   | <i>cēperimus</i>     | <i>captus, {</i>       | <i>captī, {</i>    |
| <i>cēperis</i>  | <i>cēperitis</i>     | <i>-a, -um {</i>       | <i>-ae, -a {</i>   |
| <i>cēperit</i>  | <i>cēperint</i>      | <i>erō</i>             | <i>erimus</i>      |
|                 |                      | <i>eris</i>            | <i>eritis</i>      |
|                 |                      | <i>erit</i>            | <i>erunt</i>       |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|               |                 |                      |                  |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| <b>capiam</b> | <b>capiāmus</b> | <b>capiar</b>        | <b>capiāmur</b>  |
| <b>capiās</b> | <b>capiātis</b> | <b>capiāris, -re</b> | <b>capiāmini</b> |
| <b>capiat</b> | <b>capiant</b>  | <b>capiātur</b>      | <b>capiantur</b> |

## PAST

|                |                  |                       |                   |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>caperem</b> | <b>caperēmus</b> | <b>caperer</b>        | <b>caperēmur</b>  |
| <b>caperēs</b> | <b>caperētis</b> | <b>caperēris, -re</b> | <b>caperēmini</b> |
| <b>caperet</b> | <b>caperent</b>  | <b>caperētur</b>      | <b>caperentur</b> |

## PERFECT

|                |                  |                        |                       |
|----------------|------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>cēperim</b> | <b>cēperimus</b> | <b>captus, -a, -um</b> | <b>capti, -ae, -a</b> |
| <b>cēperis</b> | <b>cēperitis</b> | <b>sim</b>             | <b>simus</b>          |
| <b>cēperit</b> | <b>cēperint</b>  | <b>sis</b>             | <b>sitis</b>          |
|                |                  | <b>sit</b>             | <b>sint</b>           |

## PAST PERFECT

|                 |                   |                        |                       |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>cēpissē</b>  | <b>cēpissēmus</b> | <b>captus, -a, -um</b> | <b>capti, -ae, -a</b> |
| <b>cēpissēs</b> | <b>cēpissētis</b> | <b>essem</b>           | <b>essēmus</b>        |
| <b>cēpisset</b> | <b>cēpissent</b>  | <b>essēs</b>           | <b>essētis</b>        |
|                 |                   | <b>esset</b>           | <b>essent</b>         |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                 |             |               |               |                 |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <b>2D PERS.</b> | <b>cape</b> | <b>capite</b> | <b>capere</b> | <b>capimini</b> |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|

## FUTURE

|                 |               |                 |                |                  |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| <b>2D PERS.</b> | <b>capitō</b> | <b>capitōte</b> | <b>capitor</b> | <b>capimini</b>  |
| <b>3D PERS.</b> | <b>capitō</b> | <b>capiuntō</b> | <b>capitor</b> | <b>capiuntor</b> |

## INFINITIVE

|              |                               |                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>PRES.</b> | <b>capere</b>                 | <b>capī</b>                 |
| <b>PERF.</b> | <b>cēpisse</b>                | <b>captus, -a, -um esse</b> |
| <b>FUT.</b>  | <b>captūrus, -a, -um esse</b> | <b>[captum iri]</b>         |

## PARTICIPLES

|              |                          |              |                           |
|--------------|--------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| <b>PRES.</b> | <b>capiēns, -entis</b>   | <b>PRES.</b> | <b>——</b>                 |
| <b>FUT.</b>  | <b>captūrus, -a, -um</b> | <b>GER.</b>  | <b>capiendus, -a, -um</b> |
| <b>PERF.</b> | <b>——</b>                | <b>PERF.</b> | <b>captus, -a, -um</b>    |

## GERUND

|             |                  |                                |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>NOM.</b> | <b>——</b>        | <b>[SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)]</b> |
| <b>GEN.</b> | <b>capiendī</b>  | <b>ACC. captum</b>             |
| <b>DAT.</b> | <b>capiendō</b>  | <b>ABL. captū</b>              |
| <b>ACC.</b> | <b>capiendum</b> |                                |
| <b>ABL.</b> | <b>capieadō</b>  |                                |

## 837.

## DEPONENT VERBS

|                    |   |                                                          |
|--------------------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| PRINCIPAL<br>PARTS | { | I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, <i>urge</i>            |
|                    |   | II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, <i>fear</i>             |
|                    |   | III. { sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow</i>         |
|                    |   | { patior, patī, passus sum (-iō verb), <i>suffer</i>     |
|                    |   | IV. partior, partirī, partitus sum, <i>share, divide</i> |

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star.

## INDICATIVE

|          |               |              |               |              |               |
|----------|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| PRES.    | hortor        | vereor       | sequor        | patior       | partior       |
|          | hortāris, -re | verēris, -re | sequeris, -re | pateris, -re | partīris, -re |
|          | hortātur      | verētur      | sequitur      | patitur      | partitur      |
|          | hortāmur      | verēmur      | sequimur      | patimur      | partimur      |
|          | hortāminī     | verēminī     | sequiminī     | patiminī     | partiminī     |
|          | hortantur     | verentur     | sequuntur     | patiuntur    | partiuntur    |
| PAST     | hortābar      | verēbar      | sequēbar      | patiēbar     | partiēbar     |
| FUT.     | hortābor      | verēbor      | sequar        | patiar       | partiar       |
| PERF.    | hortātus      | veritus      | secūtus       | passus       | partītus      |
|          | sum           | sum          | sum           | sum          | sum           |
| P. PERF. | hortātus      | veritus      | secūtus       | passus       | partītus      |
|          | eram          | eram         | eram          | eram         | eram          |
| F. PERF. | hortātus erō  | veritus erō  | secūtus erō   | passus erō   | partītus erō  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

|          |              |             |             |            |              |
|----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| PRES.    | horter       | verear      | sequar      | patiar     | partiar      |
| PAST     | hortārer     | verērer     | sequerer    | paterer    | partīrer     |
| PERF.    | hortātus sim | veritus sim | secūtus sim | passus sim | partītus sim |
| P. PERF. | hortātus     | veritus     | secūtus     | passus     | partītus     |
|          | essem        | essem       | essem       | essem      | essem        |

## IMPERATIVE

|       |          |         |          |         |           |
|-------|----------|---------|----------|---------|-----------|
| PRES. | hortāre  | verēre  | sequere  | patere  | partīre   |
| [FUT. | hortātor | verētor | sequitor | patitor | partitor] |

## INFINITIVE

|       |                     |                    |                    |                   |                     |
|-------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. | hortārī             | verērī             | sequī              | patī              | partīrī             |
| PERF. | hortātus<br>esse    | veritus<br>esse    | secūtus<br>esse    | passus esse       | partītus<br>esse    |
| FUT.  | *hortātūrus<br>esse | *veritūrus<br>esse | *secūtūrus<br>esse | *passūrus<br>esse | *partitūrus<br>esse |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |             |            |            |           |             |
|-------|-------------|------------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| PRES. | *hortāns    | *verēns    | *sequōns   | *patiēns  | *partiēns   |
| FUT.  | *hortātūrus | *veritūrus | *secūtūrus | *passūrus | *partitūrus |
| PERF. | hortātus    | veritus    | secūtus    | passus    | partītus    |
| GER.  | hortandus   | verendus   | sequendus  | patiendus | partiendus  |

## GERUND

|           |          |           |           |            |
|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| *hortandī | *verendī | *sequendī | *patiendī | *partiendī |
| etc.      | etc.     | etc.      | etc.      | etc.       |

## SUPINE

|           |          |          |         |           |
|-----------|----------|----------|---------|-----------|
| *hortātum | *veritum | *secūtum | *passum | *partitum |
| *hortātū  | *veritū  | *secūtū  | *passū  | *partitū  |

## CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS

838.

sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fui, futūrus

Pres. stem es-; perf. stem fu-; part. stem fut-

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| sum, <i>I am</i>            | sumus, <i>we are</i>  |
| es, <i>thou art</i>         | estis, <i>you are</i> |
| est, <i>he (she, it) is</i> | sunt, <i>they are</i> |

## PAST

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| eram, <i>I was</i>     | erāmus, <i>we were</i>  |
| erās, <i>thou wast</i> | erātis, <i>you were</i> |
| erat, <i>he was</i>    | erant, <i>they were</i> |

## FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*  
eris, *thou wilt be*  
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*  
eritis, *you will be*  
erunt, *they will be*

## PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*  
fuisti, *thou hast been, wast*  
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, were*  
fuistis, *you have been, were*  
fuērunt } *they have been, were*  
fuere }

## PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*  
fuerās, *thou hadst been*  
fuerat, *he had been*

fuerāmus, *we had been*  
fuerātis, *you had been*  
fuerant, *they had been*

## FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*  
fueris, *thou wilt have been*  
fuerit, *he will have been*

fuerimus, *we shall have been*  
fueritis, *you will have been*  
fuerint, *they will have been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

sim            simus  
sis            sitis  
sit            sint

## PAST

essem        essēmus  
essēs        essētis  
esset        essent

## PERFECT

fuerim        fuerimus  
fueris        fueritis  
fuerit        fuerint

## PAST PERFECT

fuissem        fuissēmus  
fuissēs        fuissētis  
fuisset        fuissent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

2D PERS. SING. es, *be thou*  
2D PERS. PLUR. este, *be ye*

## FUTURE

[ 2D PERS. SING. estō, *thou shalt be*  
3D PERS. SING. estō, *he shall be*  
2D PERS. PLUR. estōte, *ye shall be*  
3D PERS. PLUR. suntō, *they shall be* ]

## INFINITIVE

PRES. esse, *to be*  
PERF. fuisse, *to have been*  
FUT. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,  
      *to be about to be*

## PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

839.

**possum, be able, can**PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potui, —**

|          | INDICATIVE |            | SUBJUNCTIVE |             |
|----------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| PRES.    | possum     | pos'sumus  | possim      | possī'mus   |
|          | potes      | potes'tis  | possis      | possī'tis   |
|          | potest     | possunt    | possit      | possint     |
| PAST     | poteram    | poterāmus  | possem      | possē'mus   |
| FUT.     | poterō     | poterimus  | —           | —           |
| PERF.    | potui      | potuimus   | potuerim    | potuerimus  |
| P. PERF. | potueram   | potuerāmus | potuissem   | potuissēmus |
| F. PERF. | potuerō    | potuerimus | —           | —           |

## INFINITIVE

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

## PARTICIPLE

PRES. potēns, -entis (adjective), *powerful*

840.

PRINCIPAL PARTS { **volō, velle, volui, —, be willing, will, wish**  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, —, be unwilling, will not**  
**mālō, malle, mālui, —, be more willing, prefer**

**Nōlō** and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne (not) + volō**, and **mālō** for **mā (from magis, more) + volō**.

## INDICATIVE

|          |                    |                    |                    |
|----------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| PRES.    | volō               | nōlō               | mālō               |
|          | vīs                | nōn vīs            | māvīs              |
|          | vult               | nōn vult           | māvult             |
|          | volumus            | nolumus            | mālumus            |
|          | vultis             | nōn vultis         | māvul'tis          |
|          | volunt             | nōlunt             | mālunt             |
| PAST     | volēbam            | nōlēbam            | mālēbam            |
| FUT.     | volam, volēs, etc. | nōlam, nōlēs, etc. | mālam, mālēs, etc. |
| PERF.    | volui              | nōlui              | mālui              |
| P. PERF. | volueram           | nōlueram           | mālueram           |
| F. PERF. | voluerō            | nōluerō            | māluerō            |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

|          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| PRES.    | velim    | nōlim     | mālim     |
|          | velis    | nōlis     | mālis     |
|          | velit    | nōlit     | mālit     |
|          | velī'mus | nōlī'mus  | mālī'mus  |
|          | velī'tis | nōlī'tis  | mālī'tis  |
|          | velint   | nōlint    | mālint    |
| PAST     | vellem   | nōllem    | māllem    |
| PERF.    | voluerim | nōluerim  | māluerim  |
| P. PERF. | voluissē | nōluissem | māluissem |

## IMPERATIVE

|       |     |                |              |      |
|-------|-----|----------------|--------------|------|
| PRES. | ——— | 2D PERS. SING. | nōlī         | ———  |
|       |     | 2D PERS. PLUR. | nōlite       | ———  |
| [FUT. | ——— | 2D PERS. SING. | nōlitō, etc. | ———] |

## INFINITIVE

|       |          |          |          |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | velle    | nōlle    | mālle    |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

## PARTICIPLE

|       |                |                |
|-------|----------------|----------------|
| PRES. | volēns, -entis | nōlēns, -entis |
|-------|----------------|----------------|

**841.                   ferō, bear, carry, endure**PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**Pres. stem **fer-**; perf. stem **tul-**; part. stem **lāt-**

## INDICATIVE

|          | ACTIVE             |         | PASSIVE              |          |
|----------|--------------------|---------|----------------------|----------|
| PRES.    | ferō               | ferimus | feror                | ferimur  |
|          | fers               | fertis  | ferris, -re          | feriminī |
|          | fert               | ferunt  | fertur               | feruntur |
| PAST     | ferēbam            |         | ferēbar              |          |
| FUT.     | feram, ferēs, etc. |         | ferar, ferēris, etc. |          |
| PERF.    | tulī               |         | lātus, -a, -um sum   |          |
| P. PERF. | tuleram            |         | lātus, -a, -um eram  |          |
| F. PERF. | tulerō             |         | lātus, -a, -um erō   |          |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

|          |                    |                      |
|----------|--------------------|----------------------|
| PRES.    | feram, ferās, etc. | ferar, ferāris, etc. |
| PAST     | ferrem             | ferrer               |
| PERF.    | tulerim            | lātus, -a, -um sim   |
| P. PERF. | tulisses           | lātus, -a, -um essem |

## IMPERATIVE

|                |       |         |        |           |
|----------------|-------|---------|--------|-----------|
| PRES. 2D PERS. | fer   | ferte   | ferre  | feriminī  |
| [FUT. 2D PERS. | fertō | fertōte | fertor | _____]    |
| 3D PERS.       | fertō | feruntō | fertor | feruntor] |

## INFINITIVE

|       |                       |                     |
|-------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. | ferre                 | ferri               |
| PERF. | tulisse               | lātus, -a, -um esse |
| FUT.  | lāturus, -a, -um esse | [lātum iri]         |

## PARTICIPLES

|       |                  |       |                   |
|-------|------------------|-------|-------------------|
| PRES. | ferēns, -entis   | PRES. | _____             |
| FUT.  | lāturus, -a, -um | GER.  | ferendus, -a, -um |
| PERF. | _____            | PERF. | lātus, -a, -um    |

## GERUND

|      |         |      |          |
|------|---------|------|----------|
| GEN. | ferendī | ACC. | ferendum |
| DAT. | ferendō | ABL. | ferendō  |

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| [SUPINE (ACTIVE VOICE)] |
| ACC. lātum              |
| ABL. lātū               |

842.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus (fut. part.)

Pres. stem ī-; perf. stem ī- or iv-; part. stem it-

|          | INDICATIVE                             | SUBJUNCTIVE     | IMPERATIVE                                       |
|----------|----------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| PRES.    | eō    imus<br>is    itis<br>it    eunt | eam             | 2D PERS. ī    ite                                |
| PAST     | ibam                                   | irem            |                                                  |
| FUT.     | ibō                                    | _____           | [2D PERS. itō    itōte<br>3D PERS. itō    euntō] |
| PERF.    | ii (ivī)                               | ierim (iverim)  |                                                  |
| P. PERF. | ieram (iveram)                         | issem (ivissem) |                                                  |
| F. PERF. | ierō (iverō)                           | _____           |                                                  |

| INFINITIVE |                      | PARTICIPLES |                      |
|------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------------|
| PRES.      | īre                  | PRES.       | iēns, euntis (§ 817) |
| PERF.      | isse (ivisse)        | FUT.        | itūrus, -a, -um      |
| FUT.       | itūrus, -a, -um esse | GER.        | eundum               |
| GERUND     |                      | [ SUPINE ]  |                      |
| GEN.       | eundī                | ACC.        | eundum               |
| DAT.       | eundō                | ABL.        | eundō                |
|            |                      | ACC.        | itum                 |
|            |                      | ABL.        | itū                  |

*a.* The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive: as, **itur, itum est**, etc.

*b.* In the perfect system the forms with **v** are rare.

**843. fiō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fiō, fierī, factus sum**

|          | INDICATIVE                           | SUBJUNCTIVE           | IMPERATIVE            |
|----------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| PRES.    | fiō ———<br>fis ———<br>fit      fiunt | fiam                  | 2D PERS. fi      fite |
| PAST     | fiēbam                               | fierem                |                       |
| FUT.     | fiam                                 | ———                   |                       |
| PERF.    | factus, -a, -um sum                  | factus, -a, -um sim   |                       |
| P. PERF. | factus, -a, -um eram                 | factus, -a, -um essem |                       |
| F. PERF. | factus, -a, -um erō                  | ———                   |                       |

| INFINITIVE |                      | PARTICIPLES |                    |
|------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------------|
| PRES.      | fieri                | PERF.       | factus, -a, -um    |
| PERF.      | factus, -a, -um esse | GER.        | faciendus, -a, -um |
| [FUT.]     | factum iri           |             |                    |

## WORD LIST FOR FIRST HALF YEAR

Proper nouns and adjectives are omitted

### VERBS

|          |            |         |           |           |
|----------|------------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| abdūcō   | discēdō    | iubeō   | parō      | respondeō |
| absum    | dō         | labōrō  | pateō     | sedeō     |
| agō      | dūcō       | liberō  | persuādeō | servō     |
| amō      | ēdūcō      | locō    | perterreō | spectō    |
| appellō  | ēvocō      | mittō   | petō      | studeō    |
| ascendō  | expugnō    | moneō   | portō     | sum       |
| audiō    | faciō      | moveō   | possum    | superō    |
| capiō    | faveō      | mūniō   | prōcēdō   | suscipiō  |
| comparō  | fugiō      | nārrō   | prōdūcō   | teneō     |
| cōnfirmō | gerō       | nāvigō  | prohibeō  | timeō     |
| cōnservō | habeō      | noceō   | properō   | vāstē     |
| convocō  | habitō     | nūntiō  | pugnō     | veniō     |
| crēdō    | iaciō      | obtimeō | putō      | vetō      |
| cupiō    | incipiō    | occupō  | raziō     | videō     |
| dēfendō  | indūcō     | oppugnō | regō      | vincō     |
| dīcō     | interficiō | pācō    | remittō   | vocō      |
| dīmittō  | inveniō    | pāreō   | resistō   |           |

### NOUNS

|          |          |            |          |              |
|----------|----------|------------|----------|--------------|
| ager     | arma     | cōnsilium  | fābula   | fossa        |
| agricola | auxilium | cōpia      | factum   | frūmentum    |
| amicitia | barbarus | dea        | fāma     | impedimentum |
| amicus   | bellum   | deus       | filia    | imperium     |
| animus   | captivus | diligentia | filius   | iniūria      |
| annus    | casa     | equus      | finitimī | inopia       |
| aqua     | castrum  | exemplum   | fortūna  | insula       |

|          |          |            |           |          |
|----------|----------|------------|-----------|----------|
| iūdicium | nāvigium | periculum  | puer      | terra    |
| lēgātus  | negōtium | poena      | rēgina    | vāllum   |
| liber    | numerus  | poēta      | rēgnum    | via      |
| locus    | officium | populus    | sapientia | victōria |
| memoria  | oppidum  | praemium   | servus    | villa    |
| mūrus    | ōra      | praesidium | silva     | vir      |
| nātūra   | patria   | proelium   | socius    | vita     |
| nauta    | pecūnia  | puella     | tēlum     |          |

**PRONOUNS**

|    |    |    |     |      |      |
|----|----|----|-----|------|------|
| is | ea | id | quī | quid | quis |
|----|----|----|-----|------|------|

**ADJECTIVES**

|          |           |        |          |         |
|----------|-----------|--------|----------|---------|
| altus    | finitimus | longus | nōtus    | sacer   |
| amicus   | firmus    | magnus | novus    | suus    |
| amplus   | grātus    | malus  | parvus   | tardus  |
| barbarus | inimicus  | medius | paucī    | timidus |
| bonus    | iniquus   | meus   | proximus | tuus    |
| clārus   | integer   | miser  | pūblicus | vērus   |
| crēber   | lātus     | multus | pulcher  | vester  |
| ēgregius | liber     | noster | reliquus |         |

**ADVERBS**

|           |          |           |         |        |
|-----------|----------|-----------|---------|--------|
| antēa     | diū      | longē     | numquam | saepe  |
| celeriter | fortiter | magnopere | nunc    | semper |
| certē     | iam      | minimē    | postea  | statim |
| cūr       | ibi      | mox       | quam    | tum    |
| dēnique   | ita      | nōn       | quō     | ubi    |

**CONJUNCTIONS**

|                    |        |                     |               |     |
|--------------------|--------|---------------------|---------------|-----|
| ac <i>or</i> atque | et     | nam                 | nec . . . nec | sed |
| cum                | itaque | nec <i>or</i> neque | que           | sī  |

**PREPOSITIONS**

|                |      |                |     |      |       |
|----------------|------|----------------|-----|------|-------|
| ā <i>or</i> ab | ante | dē             | in  | post | sine  |
| ad             | cum  | ē <i>or</i> ex | per | prō  | trāns |

## WORD LIST FOR SECOND HALF YEAR

### VERBS

|             |           |            |            |          |
|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|----------|
| accipiō     | conveniō  | impediō    | pellō      | redūcō   |
| addūcō      | dēbeō     | imperō     | perdūcō    | relinquō |
| āmittō      | dēiciō    | incendō    | permaneō   | retineō  |
| appropinquō | dēligō    | incolō     | permoveō   | rogō     |
| audeō       | dēmōnstrō | inferō     | pertineō   | sciō     |
| circummūniō | dēpōnō    | instruō    | perveniō   | scribō   |
| cognōscō    | dēsum     | intelleō   | pōnō       | sentiō   |
| cōgō        | dicō      | interclūdō | postulō    | sequor   |
| committō    | doceō     | intermittō | praefficiō | spērō    |
| commoveō    | eō        | iūdicō     | praemittō  | sūmō     |
| cōnficiō    | excēdō    | mālō       | praesum    | sustineō |
| coniciō     | existimō  | maneō      | premō      | temptō   |
| cōnscribō   | expellō   | negō       | prōpōnō    | trādūcō  |
| cōnsistō    | exspectō  | nōlō       | prōvideō   | vereor   |
| cōnsulō     | ferō      | oportet    | quaerō     | volō     |
| contendō    | fiō       | ostendō    | recipiō    | vulnerō  |
| contineō    | hortor    | patior     | reddō      |          |

### NOUNS

|            |            |             |           |           |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| aciēs      | causa      | difficultās | frāter    | iter      |
| adventus   | celeritās  | dolor       | fuga      | iūs       |
| aestās     | cīvis      | domus       | genus     | laus      |
| altitūdō   | civitās    | dux         | grātia    | legiō     |
| animal     | cohors     | eques       | hiems     | lēx       |
| auctōritās | condiciō   | equitātus   | homō      | libertās  |
| beneficium | cōnsuētūdō | exercitus   | hōra      | lingua    |
| caedēs     | cōnsul     | explōrātor  | hostis    | lūx       |
| Caesar     | cornū      | fidēs       | ignis     | magnitūdō |
| calcar     | corpus     | finis       | imperātor | manus     |
| caput      | diēs       | flūmen      | impetus   | maius     |

|             |        |          |                 |         |
|-------------|--------|----------|-----------------|---------|
| māter       | nāvis  | pater    | rēs frūmentāria | spatium |
| mātrimōnium | nēmō   | pāx      | rēs pūblica     | spēs    |
| mēns        | nihil  | pedes    | rēx             | tempus  |
| miles       | nōmen  | pēs      | rūs             | timor   |
| modus       | nox    | pōns     | salūs           | turris  |
| mōns        | ōrātiō | potestās | senātus         | urbs    |
| mors        | ōrdō   | prīnceps | servitūs        | virtūs  |
| mulier      | pars   | ratio    | signum          | vis     |
| multitūdō   | passus | rēs      | soror           | vulnus  |

## PRONOUNS

|         |      |      |      |         |     |
|---------|------|------|------|---------|-----|
| aliquis | hic  | ille | is   | quīdam  | sui |
| ego     | idem | ipse | iste | quisque | tū  |

## ADJECTIVES

|            |              |           |          |           |
|------------|--------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| ācer       | dissimilis   | levis     | primus   | sinister  |
| aequus     | ducenti      | militāris | quārtus  | summus    |
| brevis     | duo          | mille     | quattuor | tālis     |
| celer      | duodecim     | nōbilis   | quinque  | tantus    |
| centum     | duodecim     | nōnus     | quīntus  | tertius   |
| certus     | equester     | novem     | satis    | trēs      |
| commūnis   | facilis      | octāvus   | secundus | ūndecim   |
| cupidus    | fortis       | octō      | septem   | ūndecimus |
| decem      | frūmentārius | omnis     | septimus | ūnus      |
| decimus    | gravis       | pār       | sex      |           |
| dexter     | idōneus      | pedester  | sextus   |           |
| difficilis | imperitus    | perītus   | similis  |           |

## ADVERBS

|            |          |
|------------|----------|
| bene       | molestē  |
| deinde     | plūrimum |
| diligenter | prīmō    |
| etiam      | primum   |
| facile     | quidem   |
| interim    | tam      |
| maximē     | vērō     |

## CONJUNCTIONS

|               |
|---------------|
| aut           |
| aut . . . aut |
| autem         |
| enim          |
| et . . . et   |

## PREPOSITIONS

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| nē    | apud    |
| quam  | inter   |
| quod  | propter |
| tamen |         |
| ut    |         |

## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The related English words that are given will often suggest others. Always try to add to them and so increase your English vocabulary. Latin is the key to the mastery of English. If the meaning of any of the related words is unknown to you, consult the English dictionary.

### LESSON V, § 63

| LATIN WORD      | MEANING                       | RELATED WORDS      |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>dat</b>      | he (she, it) gives, is giving | data, dative       |
| <b>est</b>      | he (she, it) is               | essence, essential |
| <b>fā'bula</b>  | story                         | fable, fabulous    |
| <b>nār'rat</b>  | he (she, it) tells            | narrate, narrative |
| <b>pecū'nia</b> | money                         | pecuniary          |
| <b>sunt</b>     | they are                      |                    |

### LESSON VII, § 81

|                                      |                              |                      |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>ā, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i></b> | from                         |                      |
| <b>ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i></b>    | to, <i>expressing motion</i> |                      |
| <b>a'qua</b>                         | water                        | aquarium, aqueduct   |
| <b>cum, <i>prep. with abl.</i></b>   | with                         |                      |
| <b>in, <i>prep. with acc.</i></b>    | into                         |                      |
| <b>in, <i>prep. with abl.</i></b>    | in, on                       |                      |
| <b>nau'ta</b>                        | sailor                       | nautical             |
| <b>per, <i>prep. with acc.</i></b>   | through                      |                      |
| <b>ter'ra</b>                        | earth, land                  | terrace, terrestrial |

### LESSON VIII, § 94

NOTE. Learn the three essential facts about each Latin noun : its nominative, its genitive, and its gender. When reciting the vocabularies, give all three : as, "aqua, aquae, *feminine*, water."

|                              |                    |                        |
|------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <b>bo'na</b>                 | good, kind         | bonus, bounty          |
| <b>ca'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i></b> | hut, cottage       |                        |
| <b>et</b>                    | and                |                        |
| <b>ha'bitat</b>              | he (she, it) lives | habitation, inhabitant |
| <b>par'va</b>                | small, little      |                        |
| <b>pul'chra</b>              | pretty, beautiful  | pulchritude            |

## LESSON IX, § 100

| LATIN WORD                                      | MEANING | RELATED WORDS     |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------|
| ami'cus, -i, <i>m.</i>                          | friend  | amicable, amiable |
| e'quus, -i, <i>m.</i>                           | horse   | equine            |
| Mār'cus, -i, <i>m.</i>                          | Marcus  | Mark              |
| quō, <i>interrog. adv. with verbs of motion</i> | whither |                   |
| ser'vus, -i, <i>m.</i>                          | slave   | servant, serf     |
| u'bi, <i>interrog. adv. with verbs of rest</i>  | where   |                   |

## LESSON X, § 105

|                              |                      |                   |
|------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| a'ger, a'gri, <i>m.</i>      | field                | acre, agrarian    |
| labō'rat                     | he (she, it) toils   | labor, laboratory |
| por'tat                      | he (she, it) carries | porter, portable  |
| pu'er, pu'eri, <i>m.</i>     | boy                  | puerile           |
| quid, <i>interrog. pron.</i> | what                 |                   |
| quis, <i>interrog. pron.</i> | who                  |                   |
| vir, vi'ri, <i>m.</i>        | man                  | virile, virtue    |

## LESSON XI, § 113

|                                |                             |                                                            |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| ar'ma, -ō'rum, <i>n. plur.</i> | arms                        | armament                                                   |
| con'vocat                      | he (she, it) calls together | convoke, convocation                                       |
| cūr, <i>interrog. adv.</i>     | why                         |                                                            |
| nōn, <i>neg. adv.</i>          | not                         | non- <i>in many compounds: as, non-essential, nonsense</i> |
| op'pidum, -i, <i>n.</i>        | town                        |                                                            |
| po'pulus, -i, <i>m.</i>        | people                      | population, popular                                        |

## LESSON XII, § 118

|                               |                       |                    |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| auxi'lium, auxi'li, <i>n.</i> | aid                   | auxiliary          |
| bel'lum, -i, <i>n.</i>        | war                   | belligerent        |
| fi'lius, fi'li, <i>m.</i>     | son                   | filial, affiliate  |
| frūmen'tum, -i, <i>n.</i>     | grain                 |                    |
| mag'nus, -a, -um              | great, large          | magnitude, magnify |
| no'vus, -a, -um               | new                   | novel, novelty     |
| pa'rat                        | he (she, it) prepares | compare, repair    |
| so'cius, so'ci, <i>m.</i>     | ally, companion       | society, associate |

## LESSON XIII, § 124

|                       |                           |                    |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------|
| fā'ma, -ae, <i>f.</i> | rumor, report, reputation | fame, famous       |
| lon'gus, -a, -um      | long                      | longitude, prolong |

## LATIN WORD

mul'tus, -a, -um  
nō'tus, -a, -um

sae'pe, *adv.*  
tē'lum, -i, *n.*  
vi'a, -ae, *f.*

## MEANING

much, many  
known, well-known,  
famous  
often  
weapon, missile, spear  
way, road

## RELATED WORDS

multitude, multiply  
noted, notable

via (by way of) *in*  
*time-tables, on guide-*  
*boards, etc.*

## LESSON XIV, § 131

al'tus, -a, -um  
ami'cus, -a, -um

grā'tus, -a, -um  
inimi'cus, -a, -um  
in'sula, -ae, *f.*  
li'ber, li'bera, li'berum  
nā'vigat  
pro'ximus, -a, -um  
sed, *conj.*

high, deep, lofty  
friendly

pleasing  
unfriendly, hostile  
island  
free  
he (she, it) sails  
nearest, very near  
but

altitude, exalt  
*See the noun amicus,*  
Lesson IX

grateful  
inimical, enemy  
insulate, peninsula  
liberal, liberate  
navigate, navigation  
approximate, proximity

## LESSON XVI, § 151

Gal'lia, -ae, *f.*  
Gal'lus, -i, *m.*  
Germā'nus, -i, *m.*  
oc'cupat  
pug'nat  
sem'per, *adv.*  
tum, *adv.*  
victō'ria, -ae, *f.*

Gaul (modern France)  
a Gaul  
a German  
he (she, it) seizes  
he (she, it) fights  
ever, always  
then, at that time  
victory

occupy, occupation  
pugnacious, pugilist

victor

## LESSON XIX, § 172

cas'trum, -i, *n.*

fort; *plur.* camp

*Appears as -cester,*  
*-chester, or -caster*  
*in names of English*  
*towns founded by*  
*the Romans: Wor-*  
*cester, Winchester,*  
*Lancaster,*

| LATIN WORD                       | MEANING                                                              | RELATED WORDS                               |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <b>cō'pia, -ae, f.</b>           | plenty, abundance;<br><i>plur.</i> forces                            | copious                                     |
| <b>crē'ber, -bra, -brum</b>      | thick, frequent, crowded                                             |                                             |
| <b>diligen'tia, -ae, f.</b>      | industry                                                             | diligence                                   |
| <b>Germā'nia, -ae, f.</b>        | Germany                                                              |                                             |
| <b>mox, adv.</b>                 | soon, presently                                                      |                                             |
| <b>perī'culum, -ī, n.</b>        | danger                                                               | peril, perilous                             |
| <b>Rōmā'nus, -a, -um</b>         | Roman. <i>As a noun in the masc. or fem., a Roman</i>                |                                             |
| LESSON XX, § 181                 |                                                                      |                                             |
| <b>amīci'tia, -ae, f.</b>        | friendship                                                           | amity. <i>See also amīcus,</i><br>Lesson IX |
| <b>bar'barus, -a, -um</b>        | savage, uncivilized. <i>As a noun in the masc. or fem., a savage</i> | barbarous, barbarian                        |
| <b>Britan'ni, -ōrum, m.</b>      | the Britons                                                          |                                             |
| <b>Britan'nia, -ae, f.</b>       | Britain, England                                                     |                                             |
| <b>iam, adv.</b>                 | already, immediately, presently, now and so, therefore               |                                             |
| <b>i'taque, conj.</b>            |                                                                      |                                             |
| <b>sil'va, -ae, f.</b>           | forest                                                               | silvan, Pennsylvania<br>(Penn's Forest)     |
| LESSON XXI, § 185                |                                                                      |                                             |
| <b>mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum</b> | wretched                                                             | miserable, miser                            |
| <b>ō'ra, -ae, f.</b>             | shore, coast                                                         |                                             |
| <b>prae'mium, prae'mi, n.</b>    | prize, reward                                                        | premium                                     |
| <b>proe'lium, proe'li, n.</b>    | battle                                                               |                                             |
| <b>su'perō, -ā're</b>            | overcome, conquer                                                    | superable, insuperable                      |
| LESSON XXII, § 195               |                                                                      |                                             |
| <b>numquam, adv.</b>             | never                                                                |                                             |
| <b>nunc, adv.</b>                | now, the present time                                                |                                             |
| <b>sine, prep. with abl.</b>     | without                                                              | sinecure                                    |
| LESSON XXIV, § 206               |                                                                      |                                             |
| <b>cōnsi'lium, cōnsi'li, n.</b>  | plan, advice                                                         | counsel                                     |
| <b>iniū'ria, -ae, f.</b>         | wrong                                                                | injury, injustice                           |

| LATIN WORD                                       | MEANING                             | RELATED WORDS                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| nūntiō, -ā're                                    | announce                            | enunciate, pronunciation      |
| servō, -ā're                                     | save                                | preserve, conserve            |
| vita, -ae, <i>f.</i>                             | life                                | vital, vitality               |
| LESSON XXV, § 210                                |                                     |                               |
| clārus, -a, -um                                  | clear, bright; famous               | Clara                         |
| finitimī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i>                 | neighbors                           |                               |
| finitimus, -a, -um                               | adjoining, neighboring              |                               |
| lātus, -a, -um                                   | wide, broad                         | latitude                      |
| mūrus, -i, <i>m.</i>                             | wall                                | mural                         |
| patria, -ae, <i>f.</i>                           | native land                         | patriot, patriotism           |
| LESSON XXVI, § 216                               |                                     |                               |
| dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i>                       | down from, concerning               |                               |
| dicō, -ere                                       | say, speak                          | diction, dictionary           |
| dūcō, -ere                                       | lead                                | conduct, aqueduct             |
| Italia, -ae, <i>f.</i>                           | Italy                               |                               |
| liber, librī, <i>m.</i>                          | book                                | library, librarian            |
| pateō, -ē're                                     | lie open, extend, stretch           | patent ( <i>adj.</i> )        |
| regō, -ere                                       | rule                                | regulate, regal               |
| Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i>                             | Rome                                |                               |
| LESSON XXVII, § 221                              |                                     |                               |
| audiō, -ī're                                     | hear                                | audible, audience             |
| fossa, -ae, <i>f.</i>                            | ditch                               | fosse, fossil                 |
| medius, -a, -um                                  | middle, middle part of              | medium, mediocre              |
| mūniō, -ī're                                     | fortify                             | munition, ammunition          |
| quī, <i>rel. pron.</i>                           | who                                 |                               |
| vāllum, -i, <i>n.</i>                            | palisade, wall ( <i>of a camp</i> ) |                               |
| veniō, -ī're                                     | come                                | advent, convention            |
| LESSON XXIX, § 233                               |                                     |                               |
| dea, -ae, <i>f. (dat. and abl. plur. deābus)</i> | goddess                             | deity, deify                  |
| deus, -i, <i>m.</i>                              | god                                 |                               |
| malus, -a, -um                                   | evil, bad                           | malice, malicious, malefactor |
| numerus, -i, <i>m.</i>                           | number                              | numerous, numerator           |
| poēta, -ae, <i>m.</i>                            | poet                                |                               |
| sapientia, -ae, <i>f.</i>                        | wisdom                              | sapient                       |

## LESSON XXX, § 239

| LATIN WORD            | MEANING                                                           | RELATED WORDS               |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>animus, -i, m.</b> | mind, spirit, heart                                               | animate, unanimous          |
| <b>gerō, -ere</b>     | wage, carry on, wear                                              | belligerent                 |
| <b>indūcō, -ere</b>   | lead in <i>or</i> against                                         | induce, inductive           |
| <b>mittō, -ere</b>    | send                                                              | mission, remit              |
| <b>poena, -ae, f.</b> | punishment; <b>poenam dare</b> , suffer punishment, pay a penalty | penalty, penalize, sub-pœna |

## LESSON XXXI, § 244

|                         |                                                         |                                               |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>capīō, -ere</b>      | take, seize                                             | capture                                       |
| <b>cele'riter, adv.</b> | quickly                                                 | celerity, accelerate                          |
| <b>faciō, -ere</b>      | make, do, form; <b>proelium facere</b> , fight a battle | fact, affect, defect, effect, infect, perfect |
| <b>postea, adv.</b>     | thereafter, afterwards                                  |                                               |
| <b>vincō, -ere</b>      | conquer                                                 | vanquish, invincible                          |

## LESSON XXXII, § 254

|                               |                          |                     |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>cum, conj.</b>             | when                     |                     |
| <b>nāvi'gium, nāvi'gī, n.</b> | boat                     | navigable           |
| <b>petō, -ere</b>             | seek, ask, beg, make for | petition, compete   |
| <b>respondeō, -ē're</b>       | reply                    | respond, responsive |

## LESSON XXXIII, § 259

|                            |                                                                                 |           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>dēnique, adv.</b>       | at last, finally                                                                |           |
| <b>diū, adv.</b>           | a long time                                                                     |           |
| <b>ēducō, -ere</b>         | lead out                                                                        | educē     |
| <b>fortiter, adv.</b>      | bravely                                                                         | fortitude |
| <b>Graecia, -ae, f.</b>    | Greece                                                                          |           |
| <b>nec or neque, conj.</b> | and not, nor; <b>nec (neque)</b><br>... <b>nec (neque)</b> , neither<br>... nor |           |

## LESSON XXXVI, § 275

|                                   |                       |         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| <b>captivus, -i, m.</b>           | captive               | captive |
| <b>firmus, -a, -um</b>            | strong, trusty, loyal | firm    |
| <b>ibi, adv.</b>                  | there, in that place  |         |
| <b>praesi'dium, praesi'di, n.</b> | garrison, guard       |         |

## LESSON XXXVIII, § 283

| LATIN WORD              | MEANING            | RELATED WORDS        |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| <i>certē, adv.</i>      | certainly, surely  | certify              |
| <i>memoria, -ae, f.</i> | memory             | memorable            |
| <i>sedeō, -ē're</i>     | sit                | sedentary            |
| <i>spectō, -ā're</i>    | look at            | spectacle, spectator |
| <i>tardus, -a, -um</i>  | slow, dull, stupid | tardy                |

## LESSON XL, § 292

|                       |                 |                    |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| <i>agō, -ere</i>      | drive, lead, do | agitate, act       |
| <i>factum, -ī, n.</i> | deed, act       | fact               |
| <i>nam, conj.</i>     | for             |                    |
| <i>oppugnō, -ā're</i> | attack, assault |                    |
| <i>rapiō, -ere</i>    | seize           | rapture, rapacious |

## LESSON XLI, § 297

|                                   |                   |                 |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| <i>abdūcō, -ere</i>               | lead away         | abduct          |
| <i>absum, abesse, irreg. verb</i> | be away, be off   | absent, absence |
| <i>dīmīttō, -ere</i>              | send away, let go | dismiss         |
| <i>discēdō, -ere</i>              | depart, go away   |                 |
| <i>liberō, -ā're</i>              | set free          | liberate        |
| <i>locus, -ī, m., plur.</i>       | place, spot       | local, locality |
| <i>loca, -ō'rūm, n.</i>           |                   |                 |
| <i>longē, adv.</i>                | far away, distant |                 |
| <i>prohibeō, -ē're</i>            | hinder, prevent   | prohibit        |

## LESSON XLII, § 306

|                         |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>amplus, -a, -um</i>  | large, abundant; famous | ample            |
| <i>comparō, -ā're</i>   | get together, provide   | compare          |
| <i>cōnfirmō, -ā're</i>  | strengthen, encourage   | confirm          |
| <i>dēfendō, -ere</i>    | defend                  | defensive        |
| <i>locō, -ā're</i>      | put, set                | locate, locative |
| <i>quam, adv.</i>       | how                     |                  |
| <i>timidus, -a, -um</i> | fearful, cowardly       | timid            |

## LESSON XLIII, § 309

|                               |                          |                       |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>annus, -ī, m.</i>          | year                     | annual, perennial     |
| <i>ēgregius, -a, -um</i>      | remarkable, marvelous    | egregious, congregate |
| <i>exemplum, -ī, n.</i>       | example, specimen        | exemplary             |
| <i>offī'cium, offī'ci, n.</i> | duty, service            | office                |
| <i>pācō, -ā're</i>            | subdue, pacify           | pacific               |
| <i>villa, -ae, f.</i>         | farm, villa, countryseat | village               |

## LESSON XLIV, § 320

| LATIN WORD                    | MEANING                | RELATED WORDS      |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| in'teger, in'tegra, in'tegrum | whole, fresh, pure     | integer, integrity |
| lĕgātus, -i, <i>m.</i>        | ambassador, lieutenant | legate             |
| pūblicus, -a, -um             | public, official       | publicity          |
| vĕrus, -a, -um                | true, genuine          | veracious, verity  |

## LESSON XLV, § 324

|                               |                               |                                                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| ante, <i>prep. with acc.</i>  | before                        | <i>In English compounds, as, anteroom, antebellum</i> |
| impe'rium, impe'ri, <i>n.</i> | command, supreme power, realm | empire, imperial                                      |
| inveniō, -i're                | find, come upon               | invent                                                |
| minimē, <i>adv.</i>           | not at all, least of all      | minimum                                               |
| nātūra, -ae, <i>f.</i>        | nature                        | natural                                               |

## LESSON XLIX, § 343

|                                 |                                                                  |                                                |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsus | climb                                                            | ascend, ascension, descend                     |
| expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus  | take by storm, capture; <i>distinguish from oppugnō, assault</i> |                                                |
| fu'giō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus   | flee, run                                                        | fugitive, refuge                               |
| ia'ciō, ia'cere, iēcī, iactus   | throw, hurl                                                      | inject, eject, <i>and many other compounds</i> |
| magnō'pere, <i>adv.</i>         | greatly                                                          |                                                |
| perter'reō, -ē're, -uī, -itus   | terrify, alarm                                                   | terror, terrible                               |
| sacer, sacra, sacrum            | sacred                                                           |                                                |
| vāstō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus     | lay waste                                                        | waste, devastate                               |

## LESSON LI, § 359

|                                                                                          |                                  |  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| ac ( <i>before cons.</i> ), atque ( <i>before either vowels or cons.</i> ), <i>conj.</i> | and, and what is more            |  |
| anteā, <i>adv.</i>                                                                       | heretofore, previously, formerly |  |

| LATIN WORD                    | MEANING                                        | RELATED WORDS        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| ē'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus  | call out, summon                               | evoke                |
| fortūna, -ae, <i>f.</i>       | fortune                                        |                      |
| ini'quus, -a, -um             | uneven, unequal, unfavorable                   | iniquity             |
| post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>  | after, behind                                  | postpone, postscript |
| prō, <i>prep. with abl.</i>   | for, in behalf of; <i>rarely</i> , in front of | proceed, procure     |
| rēgnum, -i, <i>n.</i>         | realm, kingdom; sovereignty                    | interregnum, reign   |
| Rhēnus, -i, <i>m.</i>         | the Rhine                                      |                      |
| trāns, <i>prep. with acc.</i> | across                                         | transport, transpose |

## LESSON LII, § 363

|                                     |                          |           |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|
| inopia, -ae, <i>f.</i>              | want, need, scarcity     |           |
| interf'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus  | put out of the way, kill |           |
| negō'tium, negō'ti, <i>n.</i>       | business, affair, matter | negotiate |
| obti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus      | possess, keep, gain      | obtain    |
| prōcē'dō, -ere, -ces'sī, -cessū'rus | go forward, advance      | proceed   |
| prōdū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus    | lead forward             | produce   |
| susci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus   | undertake, assume        |           |

## LESSON LIII, § 371

|                                  |              |                         |
|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| cu'piō, -ere, -i'vī, -i'tus      | wish, desire | cupidity                |
| inci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus | begin        | incipient, inceptive    |
| iu'beō, -ē're, iussī, iussus     | command      |                         |
| possum, posse, po'tui            | be able, can | possible, posse, potent |
| vetō, -ā're, -uī, -itus          | forbid       | veto                    |

## LESSON LIV, § 379

|                                |            |                     |
|--------------------------------|------------|---------------------|
| appel'lō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus | call, name | appellation, appeal |
|--------------------------------|------------|---------------------|

| LATIN WORD                          | MEANING             | RELATED WORDS            |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī,<br>-ā'tus  | preserve, keep safe | conserve, conservation   |
| ita, <i>adv.</i>                    | thus, so            |                          |
| iūdi'cium, iūdi'cī, <i>n.</i>       | judgment, trial     | judicial                 |
| remit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī,<br>-mis'sus | send back           | remit, remiss, remission |
| sī, <i>conj.</i>                    | if                  |                          |
| statim, <i>adv.</i>                 | at once, instantly  |                          |

## LESSON LV, § 391

|                               |                                   |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| impedimētum, -ī, <i>n.</i>    | hindrance; <i>plur.</i> baggage   | impediment                  |
| mo'veō, -ē're, mōvī,<br>mōtus | move                              |                             |
| paucī, -ae, -a                | few, only a few                   | paucity                     |
| putō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus    | think                             | repute, impute, compute     |
| re'liquus, -a, -um            | the rest, remaining, remainder of | relic, relinquish, derelict |

## LESSON LVII, § 406

|                            |               |                   |
|----------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| cōnsul, -is, <i>m.</i>     | consul        |                   |
| le'giō, -ō'nis, <i>f.</i>  | legion        |                   |
| miles, -itis, <i>m.</i>    | soldier       | military, militia |
| pater, patris, <i>m.</i>   | father        | paternal          |
| pāx, pācis, <i>f.</i>      | peace         | pacify            |
| princeps, -ipis, <i>m.</i> | chief, leader | prince            |
| rēx, rēgis, <i>m.</i>      | king          | regal, regent     |

## LESSON LVIII, § 409

|                                  |                |                     |
|----------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| accipiō, -ere, -cēpī,<br>-ceptus | receive        | accept              |
| caput, capitis, <i>n.</i>        | head, capital  | decapitate, chapter |
| et . . . et, <i>conj.</i>        | both . . . and |                     |
| flūmen, flūminis, <i>n.</i>      | river          | flume               |
| frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>       | brother        | fraternal           |
| māter, mātris, <i>f.</i>         | mother         | maternal            |
| soror, -ō'ris, <i>f.</i>         | sister         | sorority            |
| tempus, -oris, <i>n.</i>         | time           | temporal            |

## LESSON LIX, § 411

| LATIN WORD                                        | MEANING                                              | RELATED WORDS                       |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>autem, conj., never stands first</b>           | however, but, moreover                               |                                     |
| <b>dēiciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iectus (dē + iaciō)</b> | throw down                                           | dejected                            |
| <b>nōmen, -inis, n.</b>                           | name                                                 | nomenclature, noun                  |
| <b>pellō, -ere, pe'puli, pulsus</b>               | drive, banish                                        | repel, compel                       |
| <b>pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus</b>                 | place, set, build; <b>castra pōnere</b> , pitch camp | position, positive, propose, expose |
| <b>reddō, -ere, red'didi, red'ditus</b>           | give back, return                                    | render                              |

## LESSON LX, § 414

|                                    |                                                                         |                                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>caedēs, -is (-ium), f.</b>      | slaughter, carnage                                                      | -cide <i>in</i> suicide, homicide, etc. |
| <b>cohors, cohortis (-ium), f.</b> | cohort, company (consisting of one tenth of a legion, or about 360 men) |                                         |
| <b>hostis, hostis(-ium), m.</b>    | enemy (in war)                                                          | hostile                                 |
| <b>mātrimō'nium, -ō'ni, n.</b>     | marriage; in <b>mātrimō'nium dūcere</b> , marry                         | matrimony                               |
| <b>mul'ier, mul'ieris, f.</b>      | woman                                                                   |                                         |
| <b>signum, -ī, n.</b>              | sign, signal, standard                                                  | signify, design                         |
| <b>urbs, urbis (-ium), f.</b>      | city                                                                    | urban, suburbs, <del>urbane</del>       |

## LESSON LXI, § 417

|                                        |                                      |                     |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>animal, animālis (-ium), n.</b>     | animal                               | animate, inanimate  |
| <b>calcar, calcāris (-ium), n.</b>     | spur                                 |                     |
| <b>cī'vitās, -ā'tis, f.</b>            | state                                | civic               |
| <b>contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus</b> | hold together, bound, restrain, keep | contain, continent. |
| <b>e'ques, e'quitis, m.</b>            | horseman                             | equestrian          |
| <b>lingua, -ae, f.</b>                 | language, tongue                     | linguist            |
| <b>mare, -is (-ium), n.</b>            | sea                                  | marine              |

## LESSON LXII, § 420

| LATIN WORD                                                 | MEANING                                                                                                                | RELATED WORDS                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>committō, -ere, -misi, -missus</b>                      | join together; intrust;<br><b>proelium committere</b> ,<br>join battle, begin an<br>engagement                         | commit, commission                      |
| <b>homō, -inis, m. and f.</b><br><b>iter, itineris, n.</b> | human being, man<br>journey, march, route;<br><b>iter dare</b> , give a right<br>of way; <b>iter facere</b> ,<br>march | homicide, human<br>itinerary, itinerant |
| <b>redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus</b>                        | lead back                                                                                                              | reduce, reduction                       |
| <b>tamen, conj.</b>                                        | nevertheless                                                                                                           |                                         |
| <b>virtūs, virtū'tis, f.</b>                               | manliness; courage,<br>valor; worth, virtue                                                                            | virtuous                                |
| <b>vis, (vīs), f.</b>                                      | strength, power, violence                                                                                              | vim, violent                            |

## LESSON LXIII, § 422

|                                                               |                                   |                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>aequus, -a, -um</b>                                        | even, level, equal; fair,<br>just | equal, equation, equator  |
| <b>audeō, -ēre, ausus sum<sup>1</sup></b>                     | dare                              | audacity                  |
| <b>etiam, adv., standing<br/>before the emphatic<br/>word</b> | even, also                        |                           |
| <b>mors, mortis (-ium), f.</b>                                | death                             | mortal                    |
| <b>relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictus</b>                        | leave behind, desert              | relinquish                |
| <b>salūs, -ū'tis, f.</b>                                      | safety                            | salutary, salvation, save |

## LESSON LXV, § 432

|                               |                                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>acer, ācris, ācre</b>      | keen, sharp, eager,<br>courageous             | acrid, acrimonious |
| <b>aut, conj.</b>             | or; <b>aut . . . aut</b> , either<br>. . . or |                    |
| <b>celer, celeris, celere</b> | swift                                         | celerity           |
| <b>equester, -tris, -tre</b>  | of cavalry                                    | equestrian         |

<sup>1</sup> Audeō is a semi-deponent verb. These verbs will be explained later.

| LATIN WORD            | MEANING                                         | RELATED WORDS |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| fuga, -ae, <i>f.</i>  | flight; in <i>fugam dare</i> ,<br>put to flight | fugitive      |
| pedester, -tris, -tre | on foot; <i>with cōpiae</i> ,<br>infantry       | pedestrian    |

## LESSON LXVI, § 436

|                                  |                        |                     |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| certus, -a, -um                  | sure, certain          | ascertain, certify  |
| cōgō, -ere, cōē'gī, cōac-<br>tus | collect; compel, force |                     |
| commūnis, -e                     | common                 | commune, community  |
| gravis, -e                       | heavy; severe; weighty | grave, gravity      |
| omnis, -e                        | all, every             | omnibus, omnipotent |
| similis, -e                      | similar, like          | simile, simulate    |

## LESSON LXVII, § 439

|                                   |                                                              |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| benefi'cium, benefi'ci, <i>n.</i> | favor, kindness                                              | benefit                            |
| corpus, -oris, <i>n.</i>          | body                                                         | corporal, corpse, incor-<br>porate |
| grātia, -ae, <i>f.</i>            | favor, thanks; grātiās<br>agere, <i>with dat.</i> ,<br>thank | gratitude, gratis, ingra-<br>tiate |
| maximē, <i>adv.</i>               | most of all, especially                                      | maximum                            |
| pār                               | equal                                                        | par, peer, parity, pair            |

## LESSON LXVIII, § 447

|                              |                           |                          |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| brevis, -e                   | short                     | brief, brevity           |
| difficilis, -e               | hard                      | difficult                |
| facilis, -e                  | easy                      | facility                 |
| fortis, -e                   | brave, courageous, strong | fortitude, fort, fortify |
| ignis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i> | fire                      | ignite, ignition         |

## LESSON LXIX, § 453

|                               |                                                                                                                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| dux, ducis, <i>m.</i>         | leader, commander                                                                                                             | duke                 |
| inter, <i>prep. with acc.</i> | between, among                                                                                                                | interim, intervene   |
| levis, -e                     | light, trivial, fickle                                                                                                        | levity               |
| nihil, <i>n., indecl.</i>     | nothing. <i>An abl. nihilō,</i><br><i>from a nom. nihilum,</i><br><i>occurs as an abl. of</i><br><i>measure of difference</i> | nihilist, annihilate |

| LATIN WORD                                     | MEANING                                                     | RELATED WORDS               |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>pēs, pedis, <i>m.</i></b>                   | foot                                                        | pedal, pedestal, pedestrian |
| <b>spatium, spatī, <i>n.</i></b>               | space, distance                                             | spacious, expatiate         |
| LESSON LXX, § 459                              |                                                             |                             |
| <b>auctōritās, -ātis, <i>f.</i></b>            | authority                                                   | author                      |
| <b>dissimilis, -e</b>                          | unlike, dissimilar                                          | dissimulate, dissemble      |
| <b>lēx, lēgis, <i>f.</i></b>                   | law                                                         | legal, legislate            |
| <b>liber'tās, -ā'tis, <i>f.</i></b>            | freedom, liberty                                            | liberal                     |
| <b>servitūs, -ūtis, <i>f.</i></b>              | slavery                                                     | servitude                   |
| LESSON LXXI, § 468                             |                                                             |                             |
| <b>addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus</b>            | lead to, bring to, influence                                | adduce                      |
| <b>cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus</b>         | learn, find out; <i>in perf. tenses</i> , know              | recognize                   |
| <b>exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus</b>             | await, expect, wait for                                     | expectation                 |
| <b>quod, <i>conj.</i></b>                      | because                                                     |                             |
| <b>vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus</b>              | wound                                                       | vulnerable, invulnerable    |
| LESSON LXXII, § 473                            |                                                             |                             |
| <b>bene, <i>adv.</i>, from bonus</b>           | well                                                        | benediction, benefit        |
| <b>deinde, <i>adv.</i></b>                     | next, then, thereafter                                      |                             |
| <b>facile, <i>adv.</i></b>                     | easily                                                      | facile                      |
| <b>maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus</b>            | remain, abide, stay                                         | mansion                     |
| <b>plūrimum, <i>adv.</i></b>                   | very much, most; <i>with posse</i> , be most powerful       | plural, plurality           |
| <b>primō, <i>adv.</i>, referring to time</b>   | at first, <i>as opposed to</i> afterwards; in the beginning | prime, primary, primeval    |
| <b>primum, <i>adv.</i>, referring to order</b> | first, in the first place                                   | primitive                   |
| LESSON LXXIII, § 478                           |                                                             |                             |
| <b>adventus, -ūs, <i>m.</i></b>                | arrival                                                     | advent                      |
| <b>Caesar, -aris, <i>m.</i></b>                | Cæsar                                                       | kaiser, czar                |
| <b>celeritās, -ātis, <i>f.</i></b>             | speed, swiftness                                            | celerity                    |

| LATIN WORD                       | MEANING                                                           | RELATED WORDS        |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>cornū, -ūs, <i>n.</i></b>     | horn                                                              | cornucopia           |
| <b>dexter, -tra, -trum</b>       | right                                                             | dexterity, dexterous |
| <b>equitātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i></b> | cavalry                                                           | equine               |
| <b>exercitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i></b> | army                                                              | exercise             |
| <b>impetus, -ūs, <i>m.</i></b>   | attack; <b>impetum facere</b><br><b>in</b> , make an attack<br>on | impetus, impetuous   |
| <b>sinister, -tra, -trum</b>     | left                                                              | sinister             |

## LESSON LXXIV, § 486

|                                                                                           |                                          |                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus</b>                                                          | hasten; strive, fight                    | contend, contention   |
| <b>domus, -ūs, <i>f.</i></b>                                                              | home; <b>domi</b> , at home              | domesticate, domicile |
| <b>nāvis, -is (-ium), <i>f.</i></b>                                                       | ship                                     | navy, naval           |
| <b>pedes, -itis, <i>m.</i></b>                                                            | foot soldier; <i>plur.</i> in-<br>fantry | pedestrian            |
| <b>rūs, rūris, <i>n.</i>; <i>plur.</i><br/>only <i>nom.</i> and <i>acc.</i>,<br/>rūra</b> | country; <b>rūrī</b> , in the<br>country | rural, rustic         |

## LESSON LXXV, § 494

|                                      |                                         |                    |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>aestās, -ātis, <i>f.</i></b>      | summer                                  |                    |
| <b>diēs, diēī, <i>m.</i></b>         | day                                     | diary, dial        |
| <b>hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i></b>      | winter                                  |                    |
| <b>lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i></b>         | light; <b>prima lūx</b> , day-<br>light | lucid, elucidate   |
| <b>nox, noctis (-ium), <i>f.</i></b> | night                                   | nocturnal, equinox |
| <b>rēs, rei, <i>f.</i></b>           | thing, matter                           | real, reality      |

## LESSON LXXVIII, § 514

|                                                       |                                                                                         |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>cīvis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i><br/>and <i>f.</i></b> | citizen                                                                                 | civic, civil |
| <b>commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī,<br/>-mōtus</b>              | alarm, excite, move                                                                     | commotion    |
| <b>ego, mei</b>                                       | I; <i>plur.</i> <b>we</b>                                                               | egotism      |
| <b>imperātor, -ōris, <i>m.</i></b>                    | general                                                                                 | emperor      |
| <b>suī, <i>gen.</i></b>                               | of himself (herself, itself,<br>themselves); <b>in fugam</b><br><b>sēsē dare</b> , flee | suicide      |
| <b>timor, -ōris, <i>m.</i></b>                        | fear                                                                                    | timorous     |
| <b>tū, tuī</b>                                        | thou, you                                                                               |              |

## LESSON LXXIX, § 519

| LATIN WORD                        | MEANING                                                  | RELATED WORDS                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| dēpōnō, -ere, -posui,<br>-positus | put down, lay down,<br>lay aside                         | deponent, deposit                    |
| idem, eadem, idem                 | same                                                     | identity, identical, identify        |
| incolō, -ere, -uī, —              | inhabit, <i>trans.</i> ; also<br><i>intrans.</i> , dwell |                                      |
| ipse, ipsa, ipsum                 | self, himself, herself,<br>itself; very                  |                                      |
| manus, -ūs, <i>f.</i>             | hand; group, force                                       | manual, manufacture,<br>manuscript   |
| pars, partis (-ium), <i>f.</i>    | part, share; side, direc-<br>tion                        | party, particle, partner,<br>partial |
| spēs, spēl, <i>f.</i>             | hope                                                     |                                      |

## LESSON LXXX, § 525

|                                 |                                                  |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus         | owe, ought                                       | debt, debit                          |
| dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi,<br>-ātus | point out, show                                  | demonstrate                          |
| finis, -is (-ium), <i>m.</i>    | end, limit; <i>plur.</i> terri-<br>tory, country | finish, final, finite, in-<br>finite |
| hic, haec, hoc                  | this; <i>as pers. pron.</i> ,<br>he, she, it     |                                      |
| ille, illa, illud               | that; <i>as pers. pron.</i> ,<br>he, she, it     |                                      |
| iste, ista, istud               | that; <i>as pers. pron.</i> ,<br>he, she, it     |                                      |
| modus, -i, <i>m.</i>            | measure; manner                                  | mode, model, mood                    |
| mōns, montis(-ium), <i>m.</i>   | mountain                                         | mount, amount                        |

## LESSON LXXXI, § 530

|                                       |                          |          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------|
| aliquis, aliquid                      | someone, something       |          |
| aliquī, aliqua, aliquod               | some                     |          |
| existimō, -āre, -āvi,<br>-ātus        | think, consider          | estimate |
| quidam, quaedam,<br>quiddam (quoddam) | a certain one, a certain |          |
| quisque, quidque                      | each one                 |          |

| LATIN WORD                         | MEANING                        | RELATED WORDS |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| quisque, quaeque,<br>quodque       | each                           |               |
| retineō, -ēre, -tinui,<br>-tentus  | hold back, retain              | retention     |
| sustineō, -ēre, -tinui,<br>-tentus | hold up, maintain; en-<br>dure | sustain       |

## LESSON LXXXIII, § 544

|                                      |                                                                |           |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| causa, -ae, <i>f.</i>                | cause, reason; <i>quā dē</i><br><i>causā</i> , for this reason | because   |
| expellō, -ere, -puli,<br>-pulsus     | drive out, expel                                               | expulsion |
| permaneō, -ēre, -mānsi,<br>-mānsūrus | last, endure, continue                                         | permanent |

## LESSON LXXXIV, § 549

|                                      |                                                                           |                      |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| aciēs, aciēi, <i>f.</i>              | line of battle                                                            |                      |
| cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī,<br>-fectus     | do completely, finish                                                     |                      |
| instruō, -ere, -strūxi,<br>-strūctus | draw up, arrange                                                          | instruct, instructor |
| passus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>               | step, pace; <i>mille pas-</i><br><i>sūs</i> , a thousand<br>paces, a mile |                      |
| pōns, pontis (-ium), <i>m.</i>       | bridge                                                                    | pontoon              |
| trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi,<br>-ductus     | lead across                                                               | traduce              |

## LESSON LXXXV, § 555

|                                     |                                                          |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| cupidus, -a, -um                    | desirous of, eager for,<br><i>with gen.</i>              | cupidity                        |
| imperitus, -a, -um                  | unskilled, in experi-<br>enced, <i>with gen.</i>         |                                 |
| intermittō, -ere, -misi,<br>-missus | leave off, suspend,<br>suffer to elapse,<br>leave vacant | intermittent, intermis-<br>sion |
| laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>             | praise                                                   | laud, laudatory                 |
| militāris, -e                       | military; <i>rēs militā-</i><br><i>ris</i> , art of war  | militia, militant               |
| peritus, -a, -um                    | skilled, experienced,<br><i>with gen.</i>                | experience                      |

## LESSON LXXXVI, § 563

| LATIN WORD                                   | MEANING               | RELATED WORDS     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <b>altitūdō, -inis, f.</b>                   | height, depth         | altitude          |
| <b>dolor, -ōris, m.</b>                      | pain, grief           | dolorous, doleful |
| <b>excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus</b>       | go out, depart        | exceed, excessive |
| <b>hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, dep. verb</b> | urge, encourage       | exhort            |
| <b>patior, pati, passus sum, dep. verb</b>   | suffer, allow, permit | patient, passion  |
| <b>sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, dep. verb</b> | follow                | sequence, execute |
| <b>vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, dep. verb</b>  | fear, respect         | reverence         |

## LESSON LXXXVII, § 571

|                                        |                                                                      |                          |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus</b>    | choose, select                                                       |                          |
| <b>explōrātor, -ōris, m.</b>           | spy, scout                                                           | explorer                 |
| <b>hōra, -ae, f.</b>                   | hour                                                                 |                          |
| <b>idōneus, -a, -um</b>                | suitable, fitting                                                    |                          |
| <b>magnitūdō, -inis, f.</b>            | size, greatness                                                      | magnitude                |
| <b>multitūdō, -inis, f.</b>            | crowd, throng, multitude                                             |                          |
| <b>praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</b> | send ahead, send forward                                             | premise                  |
| <b>scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus</b> | write                                                                | scribble, scribe, script |
| <b>sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus</b>     | take up, assume; <b>supplicium sūmere dē</b> , inflict punishment on | presume, consume         |

## LESSON LXXXVIII, § 575

|                               |                            |                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| <b>apud, prep. with acc.</b>  | among, in the presence of  |                  |
| <b>doceō, -ere, -uī, -tus</b> | teach                      | docile           |
| <b>interim, adv.</b>          | meanwhile, in the meantime | interim          |
| <b>potestās, -ātis, f.</b>    | power                      | potent           |
| <b>vērō, adv.</b>             | in truth, verily           | veracity, verity |

## LESSON XC, § 590

| LATIN WORD                               | MEANING                                                       | RELATED WORDS |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus</b>      | send away, lose                                               |               |
| <b>condiciō, -ōnis, f.</b>               | terms, agreement                                              | condition     |
| <b>cōsulō, -ere, -ui, -tus</b>           | ask for advice, consult, counsel with, <i>with acc.</i>       | consultation  |
| <b>quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus</b> | seek for, ask, inquire for                                    | question      |
| <b>ratio, -ōnis, f.</b>                  | method, arrangement, plan                                     | rational      |
| <b>summus, -a, -um</b>                   | ( <i>superl. of the adj. superus</i> , high) highest, supreme | sum, summit   |

## LESSON XCI, § 597

|                                                                             |                                         |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>nēmō, gen. nūllius, dat. nēmini, acc. nēmīnem, abl. nūllō, m. and f.</b> | no one                                  |            |
| <b>perducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus</b>                                        | lead through, bring; construct (a wall) |            |
| <b>permovēō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus</b>                                        | move deeply, arouse, influence          |            |
| <b>pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventus</b>                                       | arrive, <i>with ad or in and acc.</i>   |            |
| <b>propter, prep. with acc.</b>                                             | on account of, because of               |            |
| <b>rēs publica, rei publicae, f.</b>                                        | commonwealth, republic, state           | republican |
| <b>vulnus, -eris, n.</b>                                                    | wound                                   | vulnerable |

## LESSON XCII, § 604

|                                      |                                                 |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>frumentārius, -a, -um</b>         | of grain; <b>rēs frumentaria</b> , grain supply |                       |
| <b>imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus</b>     | command, <i>with dat. and a subjv. clause</i>   | imperative, imperious |
| <b>postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus</b>    | demand, require                                 | expostulate           |
| <b>prōvideō, -ēre, -vidi, -vīsus</b> | look out for, foresee                           | provide               |

| LATIN WORD                                                                | MEANING                                                                                       | RELATED WORDS                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus<br>temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus                      | ask, request<br>try, attempt                                                                  | interrogate<br>temptation                                                        |
| LESSON XCIII, § 608                                                       |                                                                                               |                                                                                  |
| appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus                                            | draw near, approach,<br><i>with dat.</i>                                                      | propinquity                                                                      |
| cōscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus                                       | enroll                                                                                        | conscript                                                                        |
| impediō, -ire, -īvi, -ītus                                                | hinder, obstruct                                                                              | impede                                                                           |
| intercludō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus                                         | cut off, block up                                                                             | <i>The root word, claudō,</i><br>close, <i>appears in</i> include, exclude, etc. |
| ōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>                                                  | speech, oration; <i>ōrātiō-nem habēre</i> , make a speech                                     | oratory                                                                          |
| <i>quidem, adv., never stands first</i>                                   | indeed, in fact. <i>Nē . . . quidem</i> , not even, <i>the emphatic word standing between</i> |                                                                                  |
| LESSON XCIV, § 613                                                        |                                                                                               |                                                                                  |
| difficultās, -ātis, <i>f.</i><br>diligenter, <i>adv.</i>                  | difficulty<br>carefully, industriously, attentively                                           | difficult<br>diligently                                                          |
| nōbilis, -e<br>turris, -is (-ium; <i>abl. turri or turre</i> ), <i>f.</i> | well-known, famous, noble<br>tower                                                            | nobility<br>turret                                                               |
| LESSON XCV, § 620                                                         |                                                                                               |                                                                                  |
| coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus                                             | hurl                                                                                          | <i>The root word, iaciō,</i><br>throw, <i>appears in</i> inject, object, etc.    |
| cōsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus                                            | stand still, take a stand,<br>halt, be at rest                                                | consist, consistent                                                              |
| cōsuētūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>                                               | custom                                                                                        |                                                                                  |
| mēns, mentis (-ium), <i>f.</i>                                            | mind                                                                                          | mental                                                                           |
| premō, -ere, pressi, pressus                                              | press hard                                                                                    | compress, express, impress, oppress                                              |
| tālis, -e                                                                 | such                                                                                          |                                                                                  |
| tantus, -a, -um                                                           | so great                                                                                      |                                                                                  |

## LESSON XCVI, § 624

| LATIN WORD                                                                 | MEANING                                                              | RELATED WORDS        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| conveniō, -īre, -vēnī,<br>-ventus                                          | come together, assemble                                              | convene, convention  |
| dēsum, -esse, -fui,<br>-futūrus                                            | be lacking, be wanting,<br><i>with dat.</i>                          |                      |
| incendō, -ere, -cendi,<br>-cēnsus                                          | set on fire, burn                                                    | incendiary, incense  |
| iūs, iūris, <i>n.</i> ; <i>plur.</i><br><i>only nom. and acc.,</i><br>iūra | law, right                                                           | justice, judge       |
| praeſiciō, -ere, -fēcī,<br>-fectus                                         | set over, place in com-<br>mand, <i>with acc. and</i><br><i>dat.</i> | prefect              |
| praesum, -esse, -fui,<br>—                                                 | be before, be over, be in<br>command, <i>with dat.</i>               | present              |
| prōpōnō, -ere, -posui,<br>-positus                                         | set forth, offer                                                     | propose, proposition |
| senātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>                                                    | senate                                                               | senator              |

## LESSON XCVIII, § 636

|                                                                                          |                                                                                                                      |                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| circummūniō, -īre, -ivi,<br>-ītus                                                        | wall around, fortify all<br>about                                                                                    |                         |
| enim, <i>conj., never</i><br><i>stands first</i>                                         | for                                                                                                                  |                         |
| fīdēs, fideī, <i>f.</i>                                                                  | good faith, protection                                                                                               | fidelity                |
| genus, -eris, <i>n.</i>                                                                  | race, kind                                                                                                           | generic, genus          |
| oportet, -ēre, oportuit                                                                  | it is fitting, is necessary;<br><i>an impers. verb,</i><br><i>often used with an</i><br><i>infin. and subj. acc.</i> |                         |
| ōrdō, -inis, <i>m.</i>                                                                   | rank, class, order                                                                                                   | ordinary                |
| ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus                                                                 | show, display                                                                                                        | ostensible, ostentation |
| pertineō, -ēre, -ui, —                                                                   | reach, extend, pertain                                                                                               | pertinacity             |
| recipiō, -ere, -cēpi,<br>-ceptus                                                         | take back; receive;<br><i>with sē, withdraw</i>                                                                      | recipient, reception    |
| satis, <i>indecl. adj.; also</i><br><i>used as a neut. noun</i><br><i>and as an adv.</i> | enough, sufficient; suf-<br>ficiently                                                                                | satisfy, satisfactory   |

## DERIVATION NOTEBOOK <sup>1</sup>

### TYPE I (WITHOUT DEFINITIONS)

|                                                 |                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>locō, locāre, locāvī,<br/>locātus, place</b> | locate, location, locative, local, locality, localize,<br>locally, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate,<br>localization, locomotive, locomotor |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### TYPE II (WITH DEFINITIONS)

|                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,<br/>vocātus, call</b> | vocation : <i>a calling, occupation</i><br>vocal : <i>pertaining to a vocation or calling</i><br>vocal : <i>pertaining to voice</i><br>evoke : <i>call out</i><br>convoke : <i>call together</i><br>vocate : <i>case of calling, case of address</i><br>revoke : <i>call back, rescind</i><br>invoke : <i>call upon, ask for</i><br>vociferous : <i>with large calling power, with loud tones</i><br>invocation : <i>a calling upon, a prayer</i> |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### TYPE III (WITH EXAMPLES OF USE IN ENGLISH)

|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>mittō, mittere, misi,<br/>missus, send</b> | mission : <i>He was sent on a mission to Europe</i><br>missionary : <i>He was sent as a missionary to China</i><br>missive : <i>The letter was a formidable missive</i><br>missile : <i>Stones were the missiles of early warfare</i><br>transmit : <i>They will transmit the message to us</i><br>remission : <i>He preached the remission of sins</i><br>commit : <i>She was committed to his care</i><br>submit : <i>They submitted to the inevitable</i><br>submissive : <i>The slave was not submissive</i><br>omit : <i>Omit the nonessential</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> This is a specimen page based on the Latin syllabus for secondary schools published by the University of the State of New York.

## COMMON LATIN ABBREVIATIONS

- A.B. or B.A. = Artium Baccalaureus, *Bachelor of Arts*  
A.D. = annō Domini, *in the year of our Lord*  
ad lib. = ad libitum, *at pleasure*  
a.m. = ante meridiem, *before noon*  
A.M. or M.A. = Artium Magister, *Master of Arts*  
A.U.C. = ab urbe conditā, *from the founding of the city*, that is, of Rome,  
753 B.C.  
cf. = cōfer, *compare*  
e.g. = exempli grātiā, *for example*  
etc. = et cētera, *and the rest, and so forth*  
ib. or ibid. = ibīdem, *in the same place*  
i.e. = id est, *that is*  
I H S = first three letters of the Greek for *Jesus*, but often taken as the  
abbreviation for the Latin "Iēsus Hominum Salvātor," *Jesus, the*  
*Saviour of Men*  
I.N.R.I. = Iēsus Nazarēnus, Rēx Iūdāeorum, *Jesus of Nazareth, King*  
*of the Jews*  
lb. = libra, *pound*; lbs. = librae, *pounds*  
LL.D. = Lēgum Doctor, *Doctor of Laws*  
M.D. = Medicīnae Doctor, *Doctor of Medicine*  
N.B. = notā bene, *note well, take notice*  
no. = numerō (plural nos.), *by number*  
Ph.D. = Philosophiae Doctor, *Doctor of Philosophy*  
p.m. = post meridiem, *after noon*  
P.S. = post scriptum, *postscript*  
Q.E.D. = quod erat dēmōnstrandum, *which was to be demonstrated*  
R. = recipe, *take* (placed before a doctor's prescription)  
R.I.P. = requiēscat in pāce, *may he (or she) rest in peace*  
sc. = scilicet, *namely*  
S.P.Q.R. = Senātus Populusque Rōmānus, *the Senate and Roman People*  
st. = stet, *let it stand*  
s.v. = sub voce, *under the word*  
ult. = ultimō, *of last month*  
v. or vid. = vidē, *see*  
viz. = videlicet, *namely*  
vs. = versus, *against*



#### SERMONETA

Sermoneta is a characteristic hill town of Italy. The picture gives a good idea of Italian scenery. The country is very mountainous, and south of the valley of the Po there are few large plains. Note the great grove of olive trees covering the slopes below Sermoneta. Olives were as important to ancient as they are to modern Italy ; but the Romans of Caesar's time had neither oranges nor lemons

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**ā**, *ab*, *prep.* with *abl.*, from, by  
**abdō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, hide; *with*  
**sē**, conceal one's self, hide  
**abdūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead  
 away  
**absum**, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, *irreg.*,  
 be away, be off, be distant; *with*  
**ā** or *ab* and *abl.* (§ 838)  
**Abȳdus**, -i, *m.*, Abydus  
**ac** (*before consonants*), **atque** (*before*  
*either vowels or consonants*),  
*conj.*, and, and what is more;  
**simul atque**, as soon as  
**accidō**, -cidere, -cidi, happen  
**accipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, receive  
**accurrō**, -ere, **accurri**, —, run to,  
 run up  
**ācer**, ācris, ācre, keen, sharp; eager,  
 courageous  
**aciēs**, aciēi, *f.*, line of battle; **prīma**  
**aciēs**, the front line  
**ācriter**, *adv.*, sharply, fiercely  
**ad**, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, 'towards,  
 near, by; at, on  
**adamō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fall in love  
 with  
**addūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead to,  
 bring to, influence  
**adeō**, -īre, -ii, -itus, go to  
**adferō**, -ferre, attuli, adlātus, bring,  
 carry to (§ 841)  
**adhūc**, *adv.*, until now, as yet, still

**aditus**, -ūs, *m.*, privilege of admit-  
 tance  
**admirātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, wonder, sur-  
 prise; tibi admirātiōnem movēre,  
 cause you surprise  
**adsidō**, -ere, -ēdi, —, sit by (*es-*  
*pecially a sick person*)  
**adstō**, -āre, astiti or adstiti, —,  
 stand by, stand near  
**adsum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be  
 present, be at hand, *with dat.*  
 (§ 838)  
**adulēscēns**, -entis, *m.*, youth  
**adveniō**, -īre, -vēni, -ventus, come,  
 arrive  
**adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, arrival  
**adversus**, -a, -um, ill, unfavorable;  
 opposite  
**aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick  
**aequus**, -a, -um, even, level, equal;  
 fair, just  
**aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer; **initā aes-**  
**tāte**, at the beginning of summer  
**aetās**, -tātis, *f.*, age  
**Aethiopia**, -ae, *f.*, Ethiopia  
**ager**, agri, *m.*, field  
**agmen**, agminis, *n.*, an army (*on the*  
*march*), column; **primum agmen**,  
 the van; **novissimum agmen**, the  
 rear; **agmen claudere**, bring up  
 the rear  
**agō**, -ere, ēgi, āctus, drive, lead; do

**agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer  
**agricultūra**, -ae, *f.*, agriculture  
**āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing  
**Albānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Albans  
**aliquandō**, *adv.*, some day  
**aliquis** (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod),  
*indef. pron.*, someone, anyone,  
 some, any (§ 831)  
**alius**, **alia**, **aliud** (*gen.* -ius, *dat.* -ī),  
 other, another (*of several*); **alius**  
 . . . **alius**, one . . . another; **alii**  
 . . . **alii**, some . . . others (§ 815)  
**Allobrogēs**, -um, *m.*, the Allobroges  
**Alpēs**, -ium, *f.*, the Alps  
**altē**, *adv.*, high, on high  
**alter**, -era, -erum (*gen.* -ius, *dat.* -ī),  
 the one, the other (*of two*); **alter**  
 . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other;  
**alteri** . . . **alteri**, the one party . . .  
 the other party (§ 502)  
**altitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, height; depth  
**altus**, -a, -um, high, deep, lofty  
**amanter**, *adv.*, lovingly, affection-  
 ately  
**amicitia**, -ae, *f.*, friendship  
**amicus**, -a, -um, friendly, affection-  
 ate  
**amicus**, -ī, *m.*, friend  
**āmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, send  
 away; lose  
**amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, love  
**amor**, -ōris, *m.*, love  
**amplus**, -a, -um, large, abundant;  
 famous, distinguished; copious  
**Amūlius**, **Amūli**, *m.*, Amulius  
**Andromeda**, -ae, *f.*, Andromeda  
**angustē**, *adv.*, narrowly, closely  
**angustus**, -a, -um, narrow  
**animal**, -ālis (-ium), *n.*, animal

**animus**, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit, heart;  
*in animō esse*, *with dat.*, intend;  
**animum tenēre**, hold attention;  
*in plur. often* courage  
**annus**, -ī, *m.*, year  
**anser**, -eris, *m.*, goose  
**ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before, in  
 front of; *adv.*, before, previously  
**antēā**, *adv.*, heretofore, formerly  
**antiquus**, -a, -um, ancient  
**aperiō**, -ire, -ui, -pertus, open  
**apertus**, -a, -um, open  
**appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call, name  
**Appius**, -a, -um, Appian  
**appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, draw  
 near, approach, *with dat.*  
**apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the  
 presence of  
**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water  
**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle  
**aquilifer**, -eri, *m.*, standard-bearer  
*(of the eagle)*  
**Aquitāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aquitani  
**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree  
**arca**, -ae, *f.*, chest  
**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsi, ārsurus, be afire,  
 glow, burn  
**Ariadnē**, -ēs, *f.* (*Greek noun*), Ariadne  
**Ariōn**, -ōnis, *m.*, Arion  
**Ariovistus**, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus  
**arma**, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms  
**armātus**, -a, -um, armed; *as a noun*  
*in the masc. plur.*, armed men  
**armō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, arm  
**arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, plow  
**ascendō**, -ere, ascendi, ascēsus,  
 climb  
**ascribō**, -ere, -ipsi, -iptus, enroll  
**asper**, -era, -erum, rough, wild

**Athēnae**, -ārum, *f.*, Athens  
**ātramentum**, -ī, *n.*, ink  
**attingō**, -ere, -tigi, -tactus, touch  
 upon, reach  
**aspiciō**, -ere, -ēxi, -ectus, behold, see  
**auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, authority  
**audācia**, -ae, *f.*, daring, boldness,  
 presumption  
**audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*  
*verb.*, dare  
**audiō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, hear  
**auferō**, auferre, abstuli, ablātus,  
 remove (§ 841)  
**aura**, -ae, *f.*, air  
**aureus**, -a, -um, golden  
**aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold  
**aut**, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either  
 . . . or  
**autem**, *conj.* (*never stands first*),  
 however, but, moreover  
**auxilium**, auxilii, *n.*, aid  
**āvertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn away,  
 withdraw

**Bacchus**, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus  
**Baculus**, -ī, *m.*, Baculus  
**barbarus**, -a, -um, savage, uncivil-  
 ized; *as a noun in the masc. or*  
*fem.*, a savage  
**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgæ  
**bellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wage war  
**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war; bellum inferre,  
*with dat.*, make war upon  
**bene**, *adv.* from bonus, well  
**beneficium**, benefici, *n.*, favor, kind-  
 ness  
**benignē**, *adv.*, kindly  
**benignus**, -a, -um, kind  
**Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, Bibracte

**bonus**, -a, -um, good, kind (§ 820)  
**brevis**, -e, short  
**brevitās**, -ātis, *f.*, shortness; *brevi-*  
*tās temporis*, want of time  
**breviter**, *adv.*, briefly  
**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain, England  
**Britanni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Britons  
**Brūtus**, -ī, *m.*, Brutus

**Caecilius**, -ī, *m.*, Cæcilius  
**caedēs**, -is (ium), *f.*, slaughter, car-  
 nage  
**caelum**, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven  
**Caesar**, -is, *m.*, Cæsar  
**calamitās**, -ātis, *f.*, loss, disaster  
**calcar**, -āris (ium), *n.*, spur  
**cālō**, -ōnis, *m.*, camp follower  
**Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, Camillus  
**canō**, -ere, cecini, —, sing  
**capiō**, -ere, cēpi, captus, take, seize  
**Capitōlium**, -tōli, *n.*, the Capitolium  
**capra**, -ae, *f.*, goat  
**captivus**, -ī, *m.*, captive  
**caput**, capitis, *n.*, head; capital  
**careō**, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, go without,  
 be without, *with abl.*  
**carrus**, -ī, *m.*, baggage wagon  
**cārus**, -a, -um, dear  
**casa**, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage  
**Cassiopēia**, -ae, *f.*, Cassiopeia  
**castrum**, -ī, *n.*, fort; *plur.*, camp;  
*castra movēre*, break camp; *castra*  
*pōnere*, pitch camp  
**causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; *quā dē*  
*causā*, for this reason; *causam*  
*dicere*, plead a case; *causā, with*  
*preceding genitive*, for the sake  
 of, in order to  
**celer**, celeris, celere, swift

**celeritās, -ātis, f.**, speed, swiftness  
**celeriter, adv.**, quickly  
**cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, conceal  
**Celtae, -ārum, m.**, the Celts  
**cēna, -ae, f.**, dinner  
**centum, indecl. num. adj.**, one hundred  
**centuriō, -ōnis, m.**, centurion  
**Cēpheus, -i, m.**, Cepheus  
**Cerēs, -eris, f. (Greek noun)**, Ceres  
**certāmen, -inis, n.**, contest  
**certē, adv.**, certainly, surely  
**certus, -a, -um**, sure, certain; true;  
     **certiōrem facere**, inform; certior  
     **fieri**, be informed  
**cibus, -i, m.**, food  
**Cicerō, -ōnis, m.**, Cicero  
**Cincinnātus, -i, m.**, Cincinnatus  
**circiter, adv.**, about, nearly  
**circummūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus**, wall  
     around, fortify all about  
**circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, sur-**  
     round  
**circumveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus,**  
     surround  
**civis, -is (-ium), m. and f.**, citizen  
**civitās, -ātis, f.**, state  
**clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, cry, shout  
**clāmor, -ōris, m.**, shout, cry  
**clārus, -a, -um**, clear, bright; famous  
**claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus**, close, end;  
     **agmen claudere**, bring up the rear  
**cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus**, find  
     out, learn; *in perf. tenses*, know  
**cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōāctus**, collect;  
     compel, force  
**cohors, cohortis (-ium), f.**, cohort,  
     company (*consisting of one tenth*  
     *of a legion, or about 360 men*)

**collis, collis (-ium), m.**, hill; **sum-**  
**mus collis**, the top of the hill  
**colō, -ere, colui, cultus**, till; cherish,  
     foster  
**commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, intrust,  
     commit  
**commilitō, -ōnis, m.**, fellow soldier,  
     comrade  
**committō, -ere, -misi, -missus**, com-  
     mit, intrust; **proelium committere**,  
     join battle  
**commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**, ex-  
     cite, alarm, move  
**communis, -e**, common  
**commūtātiō, -ōnis, f.**, change  
**comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, get to-  
     gether, provide  
**comportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, collect  
**cōnātus, -ūs, m.**, undertaking, at-  
     tempt  
**concidō, -ere, -cidi, —, fall down, fall**  
**condiciō, -ōnis, f.**, terms, agreement,  
     condition  
**cōnfectus, -a, -um**, exhausted  
**cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus**, bring  
     together, collect (§ 841)  
**cōnfertus, -a, -um**, dense, closely  
     crowded  
**cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**, do com-  
     pletely, finish; subdue, overcome,  
     exhaust  
**cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, encour-  
     age, strengthen  
**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (con +**  
     *iaciō)*, hurl  
**coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f.**, husband,  
     wife  
**coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, conspire,  
     plot

- conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, place  
**cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb.**, attempt, try  
**cōnscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus**, enroll  
**cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, dep. verb.**, follow, overtake  
**cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, preserve, keep safe  
**cōnsilium, cōnsili, n.**, plan, advice, resource; **cōnsilium capere**, form a plan; **cōnsilium omittere**, leave a plan untried  
**cōnsistō, -ere, -stiti, —**, stand still, take a stand; halt, be at rest  
**cōnspectus, -ūs, m.**, sight  
**cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus**, get sight of, see  
**cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus**, appoint; determine, decide; station  
**cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f.**, custom, habit  
**cōnsul, -is, m.**, consul  
**cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus**, ask for advice, consult, *with acc.*  
**contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus**, hasten; strive, fight  
**continenter, adv.**, continuously  
**contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus**, hold together, bound; restrain, keep; hem in  
**contrā, prep. with acc.**, against; opposite to  
**conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**, come together, assemble  
**convertō, -ere, -tī, -sus**, turn, change  
**convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, call together  
**coōrior, -īrī, -ortus sum, dep. verb.**, rise  
**cōpia, -ae, f.**, plenty, abundance; *plur.*, forces; **cōpiam facere**, give an opportunity  
**cōpiōsus, -a, -um**, wealthy, well supplied  
**cornū, -ūs, n.**, horn; wing (*of an army*); **ā dextrō cornū**, on the right wing  
**corpus, -oris, n.**, body  
**corripō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus**, seize  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um**, daily  
**cotidiē, adv.**, daily, everyday  
**crēber, -bra, -brum**, thick, frequent, crowded  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, believe, trust  
**cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, burn, consume  
**creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, make  
**crēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus**, increase  
**Crēta, -ae, f.**, Crete  
**culpa, -ae, f.**, fault  
**cum, prep. with abl.**, with  
**cum, conj.**, when, since, although  
**cupidus, -a, -um**, desirous of, eager for, *with gen.*  
**cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itus**, wish, desire  
**cūr, interrog. adv.**, why  
**Curiātius, Curiāti, m.**, Curiatius  
**Curius, Curī, m.**, Curius  
**cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, care for, take care of; cure  
**currus, -ūs, m.**, chariot  
**cursus, -ūs, m.**, course; march, journey  
**dē, prep. with abl.**, down from; concerning, about  
**dea, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. plur. deābus)**, goddess  
**dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, owe, ought

dēbitor, -ōris, *m.*, debtor  
 dēbitum, -i, *n.*, debt  
 decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten  
 December, -bris, -bre, of December  
 decimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, tenth  
 dēditio, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender; in dēditio-  
 nem accipere, receive in sur-  
 render  
 dēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, surrender;  
 with sē, surrender one's self  
 dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead  
 down or from; escort  
 dēfendō, -ere, -di, -fēnsus, defend  
 dēfensor, -ōris, *m.*, defender  
 dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, weary  
 dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, fail, be  
 wanting  
 dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dē + iaciō),  
 throw down  
 deinde, *adv.*, next, then, thereafter  
 dēligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus, choose,  
 select  
 delphinus, -i, *m.*, dolphin  
 dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, point  
 out, show  
 dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally  
 Dentātus, -i, *m.*, Dentatus  
 dēpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, put  
 down, lay down, lay aside; memo-  
 riam dēpōnere, forget  
 dēscendō, -ere, -di, -scēnsus, climb  
 down, descend  
 dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, long for  
 dēsiliō, -ire, -silui, -sultus, leap down  
 dēsistō, -ere, -stiti, -stiturus, desist  
 from  
 dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, despair of  
 dēstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictus,  
 draw

dēsūm, -esse, -fui, -futurus, be lack-  
 ing, be wanting, with *dat.* (§ 838)  
 dētrahō, -ere, -trāxi, -trāctus, snatch,  
 with *acc. and dat.*  
 dētrimentum, -i, *n.*, loss; disaster  
 deus, -i, *m.*, god  
 dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, devour,  
 consume  
 dexter, -tra, -trum, right  
 dextra, -ae, *f.*, right hand  
 Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana  
 dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, say, speak, tell  
 dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator  
 diēs, -ēi, *m.*, day; in diēs, every day  
 differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātus, *irreg.*,  
 be different, differ (§ 841)  
 difficilis, -e, hard, difficult (§ 820)  
 difficultās, -ātis, *f.*, difficulty  
 diiudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, decide  
 diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, industri-  
 ously, attentively  
 diligentia, -ae, *f.*, industry  
 dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send  
 away; let go  
 discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, de-  
 part from, leave, withdraw, go away  
 discipulus, -i, *m.*, pupil  
 discrimen, -inis, *n.*, turning point;  
 discrimen rerum, crisis  
 dispōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, sta-  
 tion  
 dissimilis, -e, unlike, dissimilar  
 (§ 820)  
 diū, *adv.* (compared diūtius, diūtis-  
 simē), for a long time, long (§ 822)  
 diurnus, -a, -um, of the day, daily;  
 nocturnō diurnōque (itinere), by  
 night and day  
 diversus, -a, -um, different

- dividō, -ere, -visi, -visus, divide  
 dō, dare, dedi, datus, give  
 doceō, -ēre, -ui, -tus, teach  
 dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief  
 domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; domi,  
 at home (§ 813)  
 dōnum, -i, *n.*, gift  
 dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain;  
 sine dubiō, certainly  
 ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred  
 dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead  
 dulcis, -e, sweet  
 duo, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two  
 (§ 824)  
 duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve  
 ducdecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*,  
 twelfth  
 dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, commander  
 ē or ex, *prep. with abl.*, out of, from,  
 off, of  
 ecce, *adv.*, lo! see! behold! look!  
 edō, -ere, ēdi, ēsus, eat  
 Eburōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Ebu-  
 rōnes  
 ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead out  
 effugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, es-  
 cape  
 ego, mei, *per. pron.*, I; *in plur.*, we  
 ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum, *dep. verb.*,  
 go out, march out; with nāve,  
 disembark  
 ēgregius, -a, -um, remarkable, mar-  
 velous, distinguished, fine  
 ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send  
 out, send forth  
 enim, *conj.*, for, never stands first  
 eō, ire, ii (ivi), itūrus, go (§ 842)  
 epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter  
 eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman  
 equester, -tris, -tre, of cavalry  
 equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry  
 equus, -i, *m.*, horse  
 ergō, *adv.*, therefore  
 ēripiō, -ere, -ripiui, -reptus, snatch  
 away, rescue  
 ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, sally  
 et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and  
 ērumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus, burst  
 out, make a sally  
 etiam, *adv.*, standing before the  
 emphatic word even, also  
 Etrūsci, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Etrus-  
 cans  
 Eurydicē, -ēs, *f.* (Greek noun),  
 Eurydice  
 ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call out, sum-  
 mon  
 excēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessūrus, go  
 out, depart  
 excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arouse  
 exemplum, -i, *n.*, example, specimen  
 exeō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, go forth (§ 842)  
 exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, train  
 exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army  
 existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think,  
 consider  
 expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive  
 out, expel  
 expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, atone for  
 explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, spy, scout  
 expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take by  
 storm, capture; distinguish from  
 oppūgnō, assault  
 exspectātus, -a, -um, expected, ap-  
 pointed  
 exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, await, ex-  
 pect, wait for

- fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story  
**faciēs**, **faciēs**, *f.*, beauty  
**facile**, *adv.*, easily  
**facilis**, -e, easy (§ 820)  
**faciō**, -ere, **fēci**, **factus**, make, do, form, cause; **proelium facere**, fight a battle; **aliquem certiōrem facere**, inform someone; **cōpiam facere**, give an opportunity  
**factum**, -i, *n.*, deed, act  
**fāma**, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report, reputation, fame  
**famēs**, -is (-ium), *f.*, hunger  
**faveō**, -ēre, **fāvi**, **fautūrus**, be favorable to, favor, *with dat.*  
**Februārius**, -a, -um, of February  
**ferē**, *adv.*, nearly, almost, about  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, bear, carry; **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, *with acc. and inf.*, be annoyed; **subsidiū ferre**, go to the rescue (§ 841)  
**fidēs**, **fidei**, *f.*, good faith, protection; **fidēs pūblica**, the promise given by the state  
**filia**, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. plur. filiābus*), daughter  
**filius**, **fili**, *m.*, son (§ 806.2)  
**filum**, -i, *n.*, string  
**finis**, -is (-ium), *m.*, end, limit; *in the plur.*, territory, country  
**finitimī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, neighbors  
**finitimus**, -a, -um, adjoining, neighboring  
**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *used as the passive of faciō*, be done, be made, happen; **certior fieri**, be informed (§ 843)  
**firmus**, -a, -um, strong, trusty, loyal  
**flagrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, burn, be on fire; glow, be stirred  
**Flāminius**, -a, -um, Flaminian  
**flūmen**, **flūminis**, *n.*, river  
**fluō**, -ere, **fluxi**, **fluxūrus**, flow  
**fortasse**, perhaps, possibly  
**fortis**, -e, brave, courageous, strong  
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely  
**fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, fortune, circumstances  
**fossa**, -ae, *f.*, ditch  
**frāter**, **frātris**, *m.*, brother  
**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply  
**frūmentor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *dep. verb.*, gather grain  
**frūmentum**, -i, *n.*, grain  
**frustrā**, *adv.*, in vain  
**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare**, put to flight; **in fugam sēsē dare**, flee  
**fugiō**, -ere, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus**, flee, run  
**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, Galba  
**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (modern France)  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, Gallic  
**Gallus**, -i, *m.*, Gaul  
**Garumna**, -ae, *m.*, the Garonne  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, **gāvisus sum**, *semi-dep. verb.*, rejoice  
**gaudium**, **gaudi**, *n.*, joy, gladness  
**gemitus**, -ūs, *m.*, groan  
**Genāva**, -ae, *f.*, Geneva  
**generōsus**, -a, -um, honorable, noble  
**gēns**, **gentis** (-ium), *f.*, tribe, nation  
**genus**, -eris, *n.*, race, tribe; kind, method  
**Germānia**, -ae, *f.*, Germany  
**Germānus**, -i, *m.*, a German

**gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus**, wage, carry  
on, wear, have; bear, wear; **rēs**  
**gestae**, exploits

**gladius, gladi, m.**, sword

**glōria, -ae, f.**, glory, praise, thirst  
for glory

**Graecia, -ae, f.**, Greece

**Graecus, -a, -um**, Greek; **Graecus, -i, m.**, a Greek

**grātia, -ae, f.**, influence, favor,  
thanks; **grātiās agere, with dat.**,  
thank

**grātus, -a, -um**, pleasing

**gravis, -e**, heavy; severe; serious

**graviter, adv.**, heavily; **graviter**  
**ferre**, bear ill, take ill

**habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, have

**habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, live

**hāctenus, adv.**, thus far

**Haedui, -ōrum, m.**, the Haedui

**harēna, -ae, f.**, sand

**Hellēspontus, -i, m.**, the Hellespont

**Helvetii, -ōrum, m. plur.**, the Helvetii

**hercle, interj.**, by Hercules, as-  
suredly, indeed

**Hērō, -ūs, f.** (*Greek noun*), Hero

**hērōs, -ōis, m.** (*Greek noun*), hero

**heu! interj.** of grief or pain, oh!

ah! alas! followed by the acc. of  
exclamation

**hiberna, -ōrum, m. plur.**, winter  
quarters

**hic, haec, hoc, demon. adj. and**  
**pron.**, this; *as per. pron.*, he,  
she, it (§ 828)

**hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, pass the  
winter

**hiems, hiemis, f.**, winter

**hodiē, adv.**, today

**homō, -inis, m. and f.**, human being,  
man (§ 813)

**Horātius, Horāti, m.**, Horatius

**hōra, -ae, f.**, hour

**hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, dep.**  
*verb*, urge, encourage

**hospes, -itis, m.**, stranger

**hostis, hostis (-ium), m.**, enemy  
(*in war*)

**humerus, -i, m.**, shoulder

**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, throw, hurl

**iam, adv.**, already, immediately;  
presently, soon, now

**Iānuārius, -a, -um**, of January

**ibi, adv.**, there, in that place

**idem, eadem, idem, demon. adj. and**  
**pron.**, same (§ 828)

**idōneus, -a, -um**, suitable, fitting

**ignis, -is (-ium), m.**, fire

**ille, illa, illud, demon. adj. and**  
**pron.**, that; *as per. pron.*, he,  
she, it (§ 828)

**immineō, -ēre, —, —, threaten;**  
be at hand

**impedimentum, -i, n.**, hindrance;  
*plur.* baggage; **magnum numerum**  
**impedimentōrum**, a very long bag-  
gage train

**impediō, -ire, -ivī, -itus**, hinder, ob-  
struct, prevent

**imperātor, -ōris, m.**, general

**imperītus, -a, -um**, unskilled, inex-  
perienced, *with gen.*

**imperium, imperi, n.**, command,  
supreme power, realm

**imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, command,  
*with dat. and a subj. clause*

- impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack; **facere impetum in**, make an attack upon
- improbus**, -a, -um, evil
- imprōvisō**, *adv.*, unexpectedly
- imprōvisus**, -a, -um, unforeseen, unexpected
- in**, *prep. with acc.*, into, against, to; *in, prep. with abl.*, in, on; among
- incendō**, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, set on fire, burn
- incipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, begin
- incitātus**, -a, -um, aroused
- incitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten, arouse
- incognitus**, -a, -um, unknown
- incolō**, -ere, -ui, —, *trans. with acc.*, inhabit; *also intrans.*, dwell
- incolumis**, -e, unharmed, safe
- incrēdibilis**, -e, incredible, extraordinary
- incūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, rebuke, chide
- indūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead in or against
- induō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, put on
- industrius**, -a, -um, diligent
- ineō**, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itus, enter upon; **initā aestate**, at the beginning of summer (§ 842)
- infēlix**, -icis, unfortunate, ill-fated
- inferī**, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, shades, lower world
- inferior**, -ius, inferior (§ 820)
- inferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring in, inflict; **spem inferre, with dat.**, inspire hope (§ 841)
- ingēns**, -entis, huge
- ingredior**, **ingredi**, **ingressus sum**, *dep. verb.*, proceed, advance, march; enter
- iniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**in + iaciō**), thrust
- inimicus**, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile
- iniquus**, -a, -um, uneven, unequal; unfavorable, hostile; steep, dangerous
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, wrong, injury; **iniūriās alicui inferre**, inflict injuries on someone
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, want, need, scarcity
- inquit**, said he, said she; **inquiunt**, said they. *Inserted in a direct quotation*
- institūtum**, -ī, *n.*, custom
- instruō**, -ere, -strūxi, -strūctus, draw up, arrange
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island
- integer**, **integra**, **integrum**, whole, fresh, pure; unharmed
- intellegō**, **intellegere**, **intellēxi**, **intellēctus**, understand
- intentus**, -a, -um, attentive, eager
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, between, among
- intercēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come between, intervene
- interclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, cut off, block up
- interdiū**, *adv.*, during the day, by day
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put out of the way, kill
- interfluō**, -ere, —, —, flow between
- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meanwhile
- intermittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, leave off, discontinue, stop, cease, omit
- interpōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, put between, interpose

- intersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus**, be between (§ 838)  
**intrā, prep. with acc.**, within, in, into  
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, enter  
**intus, adv.**, within  
**inūsītātus, -a, -um**, unusual, extraordinary  
**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus**, find, come upon  
**invidia, -ae, f.**, envy, jealousy  
**invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, invite  
**invitus, -a, -um**, against the will; *sē invitō*, against his will  
**iō, interj.** (*expressing joy*), hurra! *common in the phrase iō triumphe*  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. adj. and pron.**, self, himself, herself, itself; very (§ 827)  
**is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron.**, this, that; he, she, it (§ 828)  
**iste, ista, istud, dem. adj. and pron.**, that; he, she, it (§ 828)  
**ita, adv.**, thus, so  
**Italia, -ae, f.**, Italy  
**itaque, conj.**, and so, therefore  
**iter, itineris, n.**, journey, march, route; *iter dare*, give a right of way; *iter facere*, march; *iter magnum*, forced march; *itinere prohibere*, keep from passing; *itinere conversō*, changing their course (§ 813)  
**iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus**, command, order, *with acc. and infin.*  
**iūdicium, iūdicī, n.**, judgment, trial  
**iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, judge, decide  
**iūnō, -ōnis, f.**, Juno  
**Iuppiter, Iovis, m.**, Jupiter  
**iūs, iūris, n. (plur. only nom. and acc. iūra)**, law, right  
**iuvenis, -is**, young; *as subst.*, **iuvenis, -is (-ium), m. or f.**, youth  
**labor, -ōris, m.**, labor, toil  
**labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, toil; suffer  
**labyrinthus, -ī, m.**, labyrinth  
**laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus**, attack, assail  
**lacrima, -ae, f.**, tear  
**laetus, -a, -um**, glad  
**lātus, -a, -um**, wide, broad  
**laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, praise  
**laus, laudis, f.**, praise  
**lavō, -ere, lāvī, lautus or lōtus**, wash  
**Lēander, -dri, m.**, Leander  
**lēgātus, -ī, m.**, ambassador; lieutenant  
**legiō, -ōnis, f.**, legion  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus**, read  
**leō, -ōnis, m.**, lion  
**Lesbia, -ae, f.**, Lesbia  
**levis, -e**, light, trivial, fickle  
**lēx, lēgis, f.**, law  
**libenter, adv.**, willingly, gladly  
**liber, libri, m.**, book  
**liber, libera, liberum**, free  
**liberī, liberōrum, m. plur.**, children  
**liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, set free  
**libertās, -ātis, f.**, freedom, liberty  
**lictor, lictōris, m.**, lictor  
**lignus, -a, -um**, wooden  
**ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, bind  
**lingua, -ae, f.**, language, tongue  
**litterae, -arum, f. plur.**, letter  
**litus, -oris, n.**, shore, beach  
**Livia, -ae, f.**, Livia  
**locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, put, set  
**locus, -ī, m. (plur. loca, -ōrum, n.)**, place, spot

- longē**, *adv.*, far away, distant  
**longus**, -a, -um, long  
**lucerna**, -ae, *f.*, lamp  
**lūdus**, -ī, *m.*, elementary school  
**lupa**, -ae, *f.*, wolf  
**lūx**, **lūcis**, *f.*, light; **prima lūx**, day-light  
**lūxuria**, -ae, *f.*, luxury  
  
**magis**, *adv.* (*in comp. degree*), more (§ 822)  
**magister**, -tri, *m.*, teacher  
**magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, size, greatness  
**magnoperē**, *adv.*, greatly (§ 822)  
**magnus**, -a, -um, great, large (§ 820)  
**maior**, **maius** (*gen. -ōris*), *adj.* (*comp.* of *magnus*, compared *magnus*, *maior*, *maximus*), greater, larger (§ 820)  
**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, —, *irreg. verb.*, prefer (§ 840)  
**malus**, -a, -um, evil, bad (§ 820)  
**maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, remain, abide, stay  
**Mānlius**, **Mānli**, *m.*, Manlius  
**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; group, force; **manūs cōnserere**, join in a hand to hand struggle  
**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus  
**mare**, -is (-ium), *n.*, sea  
**Marius**, **Mari**, *m.*, Marius  
**Mārs**, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars  
**Mārtius**, -a, -um, of March  
**māter**, **mātris**, *f.*, mother  
**mātrimōnium**, -ōni, *n.*, marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry; in **mātrimōnium dare**, give in marriage  
**Mātrona**, -ae, *m.*, the Marne  
  
**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten  
**maximē**, *adv.* (*in superl. degree, compared magnoperē*, *magis*, *maximē*), most of all, especially (§ 822)  
**maximus**, -a, -um (*superl. of magnus*, compared *magnus*, *maior*, *maximus*), greatest, extreme (§ 820)  
**medius**, -a, -um, middle, middle part of  
**melior**, -ius (*gen. -ōris*), *adj.* (*comp. of bonus*, compared *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*), better (§ 820)  
**melius**, *adv.* (*in comp. degree, compared bene*, *melius*, *optimē*), better (§ 822)  
**memorābilis**, -e, noteworthy, memorable  
**memoria**, -ae, *f.*, memory; **habēre in memoriā**, remember; **memoriā tenēre**, remember; **memoriam dēponere**, forget  
**mēns**, **mentis** (-ium), *f.*, mind  
**mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table  
**mēnsis**, -is (-ium), *m.*, month  
**Metellus**, -ī, *m.*, Metellus  
**meus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj. and pron.*, my, mine  
**Midās**, -ae, *m.* (*Greek noun*), Midas  
**miles**, **militis**, *m.*, soldier  
**milītāris**, -e, military; **rēs milītāris**, art of war; **aetās milītāris**, age of military service  
**millitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, serve as a soldier  
**mille** (*plur. milia*, -ium), *num. adj. and subst.*, thousand (§ 820)  
**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva  
**minimē**, *adv.*, not at all, least of all (§ 822)

**minimus**, -a, -um (*superl. of parvus, compared parvus, minor, minimus*), least, smallest (§ 820)

**minor, minus** (*gen. -ōris*) (*comp. of parvus, compared parvus, minor, minimus*), smaller, less (§ 820)

**Minōs**, -ōis, *m.* (*Greek noun*), Minos

**Minōtaurus**, -i, *m.*, the Minotaur

**miser, misera, miserum**, wretched

**mittō**, -ere, *misi*, *missus*, send

**modus**, -i, *m.*, measure; manner

**molestē**, *adv.*, ill, with trouble;

**molestō ferre**, bear ill, be vexed

**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, advise; warn

**mōns, montis** (-ium), *m.*, mountain

**mōnstrum**, -i, *n.*, monster

**mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay

**morior, mori, mortuus sum**, *dep. verb.*, die

**mors, mortis** (-ium), *f.*, death

**moveō**, -ēre, *mōvi*, *mōtus*, move

**mox**, *adv.*, soon, presently

**Mūcius, Mūci**, *m.*, Mucius

**mulier, mulieris**, *f.*, woman

**multitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, crowd, throng,

multitude

**multus**, -a, -um, much, many; **multā**

**nocte**, late at night (§ 820)

**mūniō**, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itus, fortify

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification

**mūrus**, -i, *m.*, wall

**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, change

**nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum**,

*dep. verb.*, find, light upon

**nam**, *conj.*, for

**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, tell

**nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum**, *dep. verb.*,

be born; rise

**nātūra**, -ae, *f.*, nature

**nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor

**nāvigium, nāvigī**, *n.*, boat

**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sail

**nāvis**, -is (-ium), *f.*, ship

**nē**, *conj. and adv.*, in order that not,

lest; not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even

**-ne**, *interrog. adv., enclitic*

**nec or neque**, *conj.*, and not, nor;

**nec (neque) . . . nec (neque)**,

neither . . . nor

**neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, dis-

regard, neglect

**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, deny, say not

**negōtium, negōti**, *n.*, business, affair,

matter; **negōtium dare**, give a

commission, employ

**nēmo** (*gen. nūllius, dat. nēmini,*

*acc. nēminem, abl. nūllō*), *m. and*

*f.*, no one

**Neptūnus**, -i, *m.*, Neptune

**Nervii**, -iōrum, *m. plur.*, the Nervii

**neuter**, -tra, -trum (*gen. -ius, dat. -i*),

neither (*of two*) (§ 502)

**nihil**, *n. indecl.*, nothing. *An abl.*

**nihilō** *from a nom. nihilum, occurs*

*as an abl. of degree of difference;*

**nihil posse**, have no power

**nisi**, *conj.*, if not, unless

**nōbilis**, -e, well known, famous, noble

**noceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, injure, *with*

*dat.*

**noctū**, *adv.*, at night, by night

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, of the night,

nightly, by night

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *irreg. verb.*,

be unwilling (§ 840)

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name; **nōmen dare**,

enlist

- nōn**, *neg. adv.*, not  
**nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet  
**nōn-ne**, *interrog. adv.* (*suggesting an affirmative answer*), not?  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, ninth  
**nōs**, *per. pron.*, we (*see ego*)  
**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, come to know; *in perf. tenses*, know  
**noster**, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj. and pron.*, our, ours. *Plur. nostrī*, -ōrum, *m.*, our men [famous  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, known, well known,  
**novem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine  
**November**, -bris, -bre, of November  
**novus**, -a, -um, new, fresh  
**nox**, **noctis** (-ium), *f.*, night; **primā nocte**, at nightfall; **multā nocte**, late at night  
**nūllus**, -a, -um (*gen. -ius, dat. -ī*), none, no (§ 503)  
**num**, *interrog. adv.*, *suggesting a negative answer; in indirect questions*, whether  
**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number; **numerus impedimentōrum**, quantity of baggage, long baggage train  
**Numitor**, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor  
**numquam**, *adv.*, never  
**nunc**, *adv.*, now, the present time  
**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, announce  
**nympha**, -ae, *f.*, nymph  
  
**Ō**, *interj.*, O! ah!  
**obsecrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I pray, I beseech you; *as exclamation*, in heaven's name  
**obses**, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage  
**obtineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, possess, keep, gain, hold  
  
**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, going down, setting; sub **occāsum sōlis**, just at sunset, just before sunset  
**occidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus, kill  
**occupō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, seize; in **opere occupārī**, be engaged or employed on the works or fortifications  
**octāvus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, eighth  
**octō**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight  
**Octōber**, -bris, -bre, of October  
**Octōdūrus**, -ī, *m.*, Octodurus  
**oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye  
**officium**, **officiī**, *n.*, duty, service  
**olim**, *adv.*, once upon a time, once  
**omittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, let go by; **cōnsilium omittēre**, leave a plan untried  
**omninō**, *adv.*, in all, altogether; but, just  
**omnis**, -e, all, every  
**opera**, -ae, *f.*, labor, work; **operam dare**, give attention  
**opiniō**, -ōnis, *f.*, supposition, opinion  
**oportet**, -ēre, **oportuit**, it is fitting, is necessary; *an impers. verb, often used with an infin. and subj. acc.*  
**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town  
**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, attack, assault  
**optimē**, *adv.* (*in superl. degree, compared bene, melius, optimē*), best; well done (§ 822)  
**optimus**, -a, -um (*superl. of bonus, compared bonus, melior, optimus*), best, most excellent (§ 820)  
**optiō**, **optiōnis**, *m.*, aide-de-camp  
**opus**, **operis**, *n.*, work; fortifications, works

- ōra**, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast  
**ōrāculum**, -ī, *n.*, oracle  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration;  
     **ōrātiōnem habēre**, make a speech  
**ōrdō**, -īnis, *m.*, rank; class, order  
**Orpheus**, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus  
**ostendō**, -ere, -dī, -tus, show, display  
**ōstium**, -ī, *n.*, door  
**ovis**, -is, *f.*, sleep
- pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, subdue, pacify  
**paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost  
**pallidus**, -a, -um, pale  
**pār**, -pāris, equal  
**parcō**, -ere, -peperci, -parsus, spare,  
     *with dat.*  
**pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, obey, *with dat.*  
**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, prepare  
**pars**, -partis (-ium), *f.*, part, share;  
     side, direction; **ex omnibus parti-**  
     **bus**, on all sides  
**partior**, -partiri, -partitus sum, *dep.*  
     *verb.*, share  
**parvus**, -a, -um (*compared parvus*,  
     *minor, minimus*), small, little (§ 820)  
**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; **mille**  
     **passūs**, a thousand paces, a mile  
**pāstor**, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd  
**pateō**, -ēre, -patuī, —, lie open,  
     extend, stretch  
**pater**, -patris, *m.*, father  
**pator**, -pati, -passus sum, *dep. verb.*,  
     suffer, allow, permit  
**patria**, -ae, *f.*, native land  
**pauci**, -ae, -a, few, only a few  
**paulisper**, *adv.*, a little while  
**paulō**, *adv.*, by a little, little  
**paulum**, *adv.*, a little, somewhat  
**pāx**, -pācis, *f.*, peace
- pectus**, -oris, *n.*, heart  
**pecūnia**, -ae, *f.*, money  
**pecus**, -pecoris, *n.*, cattle  
**pedes**, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier; **peditēs**,  
     infantry  
**pedester**, -tris, -tre, on foot; *with*  
     **cōpia**, infantry  
**peior**, -peius (*gen. -ōris*), *adj.* (*in*  
     *comp. degree, compared malus*,  
     **peior**, **pessimus**), worse (§ 820)  
**pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive,  
     banish; defeat  
**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through, by  
**perditio**, -ōnis, *f.*, destruction  
**perducō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead  
     through, bring; construct  
**pereō**, -ire, -ivi or -ii, -itūrus, be  
     lost, perish  
**perficio**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, finish  
**perfringō**, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus,  
     break through  
**periculum**, -ī, *n.*, danger  
**peritus**, -a, -um, skilled, experi-  
     enced, *with gen.*  
**permaneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus,  
     last, endure, continue  
**permovere**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, move  
     deeply, arouse, influence  
**peropportune**, *adv.*, most oppor-  
     tunely  
**perrumpō**, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus, force  
     a way through, break in  
**Perseus**, -ī, *m.*, Perseus  
**perspicio**, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, ob-  
     serve, learn, discover  
**persuadeō**, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsus, per-  
     suade, *with dat.*  
**perterreo**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, terrify,  
     alarm

- pertineō, -ēre, -ui, —, reach, extend, pertain**  
**pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, arrive, with ad or in and acc.**  
**pēs, pedis, m., foot**  
**pessimus, -a, -um, adj. (in superl. degree, compared malus, peior, pessimus), worst (§ 820)**  
**petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itus, seek, ask, beg; make for, attack**  
**pictūra, -ae, f., picture**  
**pīlus, -i, m., company of veteran reserves; primus pīlus, chief centurion of a legion**  
**plānus, -a, -um, flat, level, even**  
**plēnus, -a, -um, full**  
**plūrimum, adv. (in superl. degree, compared multum, plūs, plūrimum), very much, most; with posse, be most powerful**  
**plūrimus, -a, -um (superl. of multus, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus), most, very many (§ 820)**  
**plūs (gen. plūris), adj. (in comp. degree, compared multus, plūs, plūrimus); sing. n. as subst., more; plur., more, many, several (§§ 819, 820)**  
**Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto**  
**poena, -ae, f., punishment; poenam dare, suffer punishment, pay a penalty**  
**poēta, -ae, m., poet**  
**pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, place, set, build; castra pōnere, pitch camp; positus, -a, -um, past part., situated**  
**pōns, pontis (-ium), m., bridge**  
**populus, -i, m., people**  
**porrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectus, extend**  
**Porsenna, -ae, m., Porsenna**  
**porta, -ae, f., gate**  
**portō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, carry**  
**possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can; nihil posse, have no power (§ 839)**  
**post, prep. with acc., after, behind**  
**postea, adv., thereafter, afterwards, hereafter, after this**  
**postulō, -āre, -avi, -ātus, demand, require**  
**potentia, -ae, f., power**  
**potestās, -ātis, f., power**  
**praebeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, offer, present**  
**praecedō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, surpass**  
**praeceptum, -i, n., instruction, order**  
**praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder**  
**praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, set over, place in command, with acc. and dat.**  
**praemittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send ahead, send forward**  
**praemium, praemi, n., prize, reward**  
**praesertim, adv., especially**  
**praesidium, praesidi, n., garrison, guard; praesidiō civitāti esse, be a defense to the state**  
**praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be before, be over, be in command, with dat. (§ 838)**  
**praeter, prep. with acc., except**  
**praeterea, adv., furthermore, besides**  
**praetorium, praetōri, n., general's tent**  
**premō, -ere, pressi, pressus, press hard; harass**  
**primō, adv., at first (as opposed to afterwards); in the beginning (referring to time)**

- primum**, *adv.*, first, in the first place  
(*referring to order*)
- primus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*in superl. degree*), first (§ 820)
- princeps**, -ipis, *m.*, chief, leader
- prō**, *prep. with abl.*, for, in behalf of; *rarely* in front of
- prōcēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go forward, advance
- prōcōsul**, -is, *m.*, proconsul, governor (*of a province*)
- prōcōsulātus**, -ūs, *m.*, proconsulship, governorship
- prōcurrō**, -ere, -curri, -cursurus, run forward, charge
- prōdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditus, go forth; betray [forward]
- prōdūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead
- proelium**, *proeli*, *n.*, battle; **proelium facere**, engage in battle; **proelium committere**, join battle
- profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, departure
- proficiscor**, -i, -fectus sum, *dep. verb.*, set out
- prohibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, hinder, prevent, keep away from
- prōiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (**prō + iaciō**), throw forward; **sē prōicere**, leap
- prope**, *prep. with acc.*, near; *adv.*, near; *comp.* **propius**, *superl.* **proximē** (§ 822)
- properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hasten
- prophēta**, -ae, *m.*, prophet
- prōpōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, set forth, offer; *with vēxillum*, hang out, display
- propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; near, next to, close to
- Prōserpina**, -ae, *f.*, Proserpina
- prōvideō**, -ēre, -vidi, -visus, look out for, foresee
- prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province
- prōvolō**, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, fly forth; rush forth
- proximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*in superl. degree*), nearest, very near, next; last (§ 820)
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, public, official
- puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl
- puer**, *pueri*, *m.*, boy; **ā pueris**, from boyhood
- pūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, pretty, beautiful
- pulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, knock
- putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, think, reckon
- Q.**, *abbreviation for Quintus*
- quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivi**, **quaesitus**, seek for, ask, inquire for
- quam**, *adv.*, how; *conj. after a comp.*, than; *with a superl.*, as . . . as possible
- quandō**, *interrog. adv.*, when?
- quārtus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourth
- quattuor**, *indecl. num. adj.*, four
- que**, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and
- quia**, *conj.*, because
- quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron. and adj.*, who, which, what, that (§ 829)
- quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *adj.*, *pron.*, whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever
- quidam**, **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*, a certain one (§ 831)
- quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *indef. adj.*, a certain (§ 831)

- quidem**, *adv.*, indeed, in fact; *never stands first*; **nē . . . quidem**, not even (*the emphatic word standing between*)
- quindecim**, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen
- quinque**, *indecl. num. adj.*, five
- Quintus**, *-i, m.*, Quintus
- quintus**, *-a, -um, num. adj.*, fifth
- quis (qui)**, *quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj.*, who? what? which? (§ 830)
- quis (qui)**, *qua (quae), quid (quod), indef. pron. and adj. used after si, nisi, nē, num.*, anyone, anything, someone, something, any, some (§ 831)
- quisque, quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one (§ 831)
- quisque, quaeque, quodque**, *indef. adj.*, each (§ 831)
- quō**, *interrog. adv. with verbs of motion*, whither
- quod**, *conj.*, because; that
- quō modo**, *adv.*, how
- quotannis**, *adv.*, every year, yearly
- rapiō**, *-ere, -uī, -tus*, seize
- rāpulum**, *-i, n.*, young turnip
- ratio**, *-ōnis, f.*, method, arrangement, plan
- recipiō**, *-ere, -cēpi, -ceptus*, take back, receive; *with sē*, withdraw, retreat, betake one's self
- recūsō**, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, refuse, reject
- reddō**, *-ere, reddidī, redditus*, give back, return
- redūcō**, *-ere, -dūxī, -ductus*, lead back
- referō**, *-ferre, -ttulī, -lātus*, bring back, return; **pedem referre**, retreat (§ 841)
- rēgina**, *-ae, f.*, queen
- rēgnum**, *-ī, n.*, realm, kingdom; sovereignty
- regō**, *-ere, rēxī, rēctus*, rule, guide
- relanguēscō**, *-ere, -langui, —*, be weakened, be relaxed
- relinquō**, *-ere, -liquī, -lictus*, leave, leave behind, desert
- reliquus**, *-a, -um*, the rest, remaining, remainder of, the other, other
- remittō**, *-ere, -misi, -missus*, send back; pardon, forgive
- remōtus**, *-a, -um*, far away, distant
- Remus**, *-i, m.*, Remus
- repellō**, *-ere, -ppulī, -pulsus*, repulse, repel
- repentinus**, *-a, -um*, sudden
- rēs, rei**, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; **rēs frumentāria**, grain supplies; **rēs gestae**, exploits; **rēs militāria**, art of war; **rēs pūblica**, commonwealth, republic, state; **novis rēbus studere**, be eager for a revolution; **rēs est in periculō**, the situation is critical
- resistō**, *-ere, -stitī, —*, resist, *with dat.*
- respondeō**, *-ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus*, reply
- retinēō**, *-ēre, -tinuī, -tentus*, hold back, retain
- revertō**, *-ere, -verti, —*, or *deponent*, revertor, *-ī, -versus sum*, turn back, return
- revocō**, *-āre, -āvī, -ātus*, call back, recall
- rēx, rēgis**, *m.*, king

- Rhea**, -ae, *f.*, Rhea  
**Rhēnus**, -i, *m.*, the Rhine  
**Rhodanus**, -i, *m.*, the Rhone  
**rideō**, -ēre, **risi**, **risus**, laugh  
**ripa**, -ae, *f.*, bank  
**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask, request  
**Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome  
**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, Roman; *as a noun in the masc. or fem., a Roman*  
**Rōmulus**, -i, *m.*, Romulus  
**rudimentum**, -i, *n.*, beginning, commencement; **prima castrorum rudimenta**, first principles of military service  
**rūrsus**, *adv.*, again  
**rūs**, **rūris**, *n.* (*plur. only nom. and acc., rūra*), country; **rūrī**, in the country  
**rūsticus**, -a, -um, of the country, rustic  
  
**Sabīni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sabines  
**sacer**, **sacra**, **sacrum**, sacred  
**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *m. and f.*, priest or priestess  
**saeculum**, -i, *n.*, age; in **saecula**, forever  
**saepe**, *adv.*, often  
**saevus**, -a, -um, fierce, savage, cruel  
**salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety; **salūtem dicere**, send greeting  
**salvē**, *imper.*, hail, greetings  
**Samnitēs**, -ium, *m. plur.*, the Samnites  
**sānctificō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hallow  
**sapientia**, -ae, *f.*, wisdom  
**satis**, *indecl. adj.; also used as a neut. n. and as an adv.*, enough, sufficient; sufficiently  
  
**saxum**, -i, *n.*, rock  
**Scaevola**, -ae, *m.*, Scaevola  
**sciō**, **scire**, **scivi**, **scitus**, know  
**scribō**, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptus**, write  
**scūtum**, -i, *n.*, shield  
**secundus**, -a, -um, following, next, second  
**sed**, *conj.*, but  
**sedeō**, -ēre, **sēdi**, **sessurus**, sit; be settled, be established  
**semper**, *adv.*, ever, always  
**senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, senate  
**sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, feel, perceive  
**sēparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, separate  
**septem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven  
**September**, -bris, -bre, of September  
**septimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, seventh  
**Sēquana**, -ae, *f.*, the Seine  
**Sēquani**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sequani  
**sequor**, **sequi**, **secutus sum**, *dep. verb*, follow  
**servātor**, -ōris, *m.*, deliverer, preserver, savior  
**servitūs**, **servitūtis**, *f.*, slavery  
**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save  
**servus**, -i, *m.*, slave  
**Sēstus**, -i, *f.*, Sestos  
**sex**, *indecl. num. adj.*, six  
**Sextus**, -i, *m.*, Sextus  
**sextus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, sixth  
**sī**, *conj.*, if  
**sic**, *adv.*, thus, in this way, so  
**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily  
**sicut**, just as  
**signum**, -i, *n.*, sign, signal; standard, ensign  
**silentium**, **silenti**, *n.*, silence

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest  
**Silvia**, -ae, *f.*, Silvia  
**similis**, -e, similar, like (§ 820)  
**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time; **simul**  
*atque, conj.*, as soon as  
**simulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, pretend  
**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without  
**singuli**, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*  
*adj.*, one at a time; **inter singulās**  
**legiōnēs**, between every two legions  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, left  
**societās**, -ātis, *f.*, partnership, alliance  
**socius**, -oci, *m.*, ally, companion  
**sōl**, -sōlis, *m.*, the sun  
**solidus**, -a, -um, solid  
**sollicitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, care, anxiety  
**solum**, *adv.*, only; **nōn solum** . . .  
**sed etiam**, not only . . . but also  
**solus**, -a, -um (*gen. -ius, dat. -ī*),  
 alone (§ 502)  
**solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtus, loose;  
*(of navigation)* set sail  
**somnus**, -i, *m.*, sleep  
**sonitus**, -ūs, *m.*, noise, sound  
**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister  
**spatiōsus**, -a, -um, broad  
**spatium**, -spati, *n.*, space, distance,  
 interval, time  
**speciēs**, -iēi, *f.*, appearance  
**spectāculum**, -i, *n.*, spectacle, game  
**spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, look at  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hope  
**spēs**, -pei, *f.*, hope; **spem inferre**,  
 inspire hope, *with dat.*  
**statim**, *adv.*, at once, instantly, im-  
 mediately  
**statiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, a post, a picket; **in**  
**statiōne**, on guard  
**stō**, -āre, steti, statūrus, stand

**studeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, be eager;  
 study, *with dat.*; **novis rebus**  
**studēre**, to be eager for a revolution  
**stultus**, -a, -um, foolish  
**sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under  
 beneath, underneath  
**subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly  
**subsellium**, -selli, *n.*, bench  
**subsidium**, -sidi, *n.*, assistance, re-  
 enforcement; **subsidium ferre**, go  
 to the rescue  
**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus,  
 come up, advance  
**sui**, *gen.*, of (himself, herself, itself,  
 themselves); **in fugam sēsē dare**,  
 flee; **inter sē**, to each other *or*  
 from each other  
**sum, esse, fui, futurus**, be, am (§ 838)  
**summus**, -a, -um (*superl. of superus*,  
*compared superus*, superior, su-  
 prēmus *or* summus), highest,  
 supreme, greatest, most violent;  
**summus mōns**, the top of the  
 mountain; **summus collis**, the top  
 of the hill (§ 820)  
**sūmō**, -ere, sūpsi, sūptus, take  
 up, assume; **sūmere supplicium**  
**dē**, inflict punishment on  
**superbia**, -ae, *f.*, pride  
**superior**, -ius (*gen. -ōris*), *comp. of*  
*superus* (§ 820)  
**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, overcome,  
 conquer; surpass; go over, ascend  
**superus**, -a, -um, higher, upper  
 (§ 820)  
**supplicium**, -supplici, *n.*, punish-  
 ment, torture; **supplicium sūmere**  
**dē**, inflict punishment on; **suppli-**  
**cium dare**, suffer punishment

**surgō, -ere, surrēxi, surrēctus**, rise,  
get up

**suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus**, under-  
take, assume

**suscitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, arouse,  
awaken

**sustineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus**, hold  
up, maintain; endure, withstand;  
**sē sustinēre**, stand up

**suus, -a, -um, reflex. poss. adj. and  
pron.**, his, her, hers, its, their, theirs

**tabella, -ae, f.**, writing tablet

**tabernāculum, -i, n.**, tent

**tabula, -ae, f.**, map

**taceō, -ēre, -cui, -citus**, be silent

**tālis, -e**, such

**tam, adv.**, so, such

**tamen, conj.**, nevertheless

**tandem, adv.**, pray, pray now, now

**tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus**, touch

**tantum, adv.**, only

**tantus, -a, -um**, so great

**tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, check

**tardus, -a, -um**, slow, dull, stupid;  
backward, reluctant

**tēlum, -i, n.**, weapon, missile, spear

**tempestās, -ātis, f.**, storm; weather

**templum, -i, n.**, temple

**temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, try, attempt

**tempus, -oris, n.**, time, season; in  
**reliquum tempus**, for the future

**teneō, -ēre, tenui, —**, hold, keep,  
retain; **vestigia tenēre**, keep footing

**tentātiō, -ōnis, f.**, temptation, trial

**tergum, -i, n.**, back

**terra, -ae, f.**, earth, land

**terribilis, -e**, dreadful, terrible

**terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus**, frighten, terrify

**tertius, -a, -um, num. adj.**, third

**Thēseus, -i, m.**, Theseus

**Tiberis, -eris, m.**, the Tiber

**timeō, -ēre, -ui, —**, fear

**timidus, -a, -um**, fearful, cowardly

**timor, -ōris, m.**, fear

**toga, -ae, f.**, toga

**tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus**, bear, endure

**tot, indecl. adj.**, so many

**tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i)**, all,  
whole, entire (§ 502)

**trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, give over,  
surrender; pass along

**trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus**, lead  
across

**trānō, -āre, -āvi, —**, swim across

**trāns, prep. with acc.**, across

**trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itus**, go across, cross

**trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum,**  
*dep. verb.* cross

**trēs, tria, num. adj.**, three (§ 820)

**tribūnus, -i, m.**, tribune

**trigeminus, -a, -um**, triplet

**tū, tui, per. pron.**, thou, you

**tuba, -ae, f.**, trumpet

**tum, adv.**, then, at that time

**tunicātus, -a, -um**, dressed in a tunic

**turbidus, -a, -um**, stormy

**turris, -is (-ium; abl. turri or turre),**  
*f.*, tower

**tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron.**,  
your, yours

**ubi, interrog. adv. with verbs of**  
*rest*, where (§ 502)

**ūllus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i)**, any

**umquam, adv.**, ever

**unde, adv.**, whence

**ūndecim, indecl. num. adj.**, eleven

- undecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,**  
 eleventh  
**undique, adv.,** on all sides  
**universus, -a, -um, all together, all**  
**unus, -a, -um (gen. ius, dat. -i),**  
*num. adj.,* one; alone (§ 815)  
**urbs, urbis (-ium), f., city** [hard  
**urgeō, -ēre, ursi, —, press, press**  
**usque, adv., even, even till**  
**ut, conj. with subjv., that, in order**  
 that, so that, to; *with indic., as*  
**uter, utra, utrum (gen. -ius, dat. -i),**  
 which? (*of two*) (§ 502)  
**utrimque, adv., on both sides, from**  
 each side  
**vadum, -i, n., shallow place, ford**  
**vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep. verb,**  
 roam, wander  
**valē, imper., good-by**  
**valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be well, be in**  
 health, be powerful  
**valētūdō, -inis, f., state of health,**  
 health [camp]  
**vāllum, -ī, n., rampart, wall (of a**  
**vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste,**  
 devastate, destroy  
**vātēs, -is (-ium), m. and f., bard,**  
 inspired singer [much  
**vehementer, adv., strongly, very**  
**vehō, -ere, vexi, vectus, carry**  
**venia, -ae, f., favor**  
**veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus, come**  
**Venus, -eris, f., Venus**  
**verbum, -i, n., word**  
**vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, dep. verb,**  
 fear, respect  
**vērō, adv., in truth, verily, but**  
**vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn**
- vērus, -a, -um, true, genuine; vērum**  
 dicere, tell the truth  
**vesper, -eri, m., evening**  
**vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and**  
*pron.,* your, yours  
**vestigium, vestigi, n., step; vestigia**  
 tenēre, keep footing  
**vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, forbid**  
**vēxillum, -i, n., flag**  
**via, -ae, f., way, road**  
**victōria, -ae, f., victory**  
**videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, see**  
**vigilia, -ae, f., watching; watch (of**  
*the night)*  
**viginti, indecl. num. adj., twenty**  
**villa, -ae, farm, villa, country-seat,**  
 farmhouse  
**vincō, -ere, vici, victus, conquer**  
**vinculum, -i, n., rope, cord, fetter**  
**vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, claim**  
**vinum, -i, n., wine**  
**vir, viri, m., man**  
**virga, -ae, f., rod**  
**virgō, -inis, f., maiden**  
**virtūs, virtūtis, f., manliness; cour-**  
 age, valor; worth, virtue (§ 813)  
**vis, (vis), f., strength, power, violence**  
**vita, -ae, f., life**  
**vix, adv., with difficulty, scarcely**  
**vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call**  
**volō, velle, volui, —, irreg. verb,**  
 wish (§ 840)  
**volūmen, -inis, n., roll**  
**voluntās, -ātis, f., will**  
**vōx, vōcis, f., voice; word; magna**  
 vōx, a loud voice  
**vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wound**  
**vulnus, -eris, n., wound**  
**vultus, -ūs, m., looks, expression; face**

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

**a, an**, *commonly not translated*

**abandon**, relinquo, 3

**able (be)**, possum, posse, potuī, —  
(§ 839)

**about**, *prep.*, de, *with abl.*

**about to**, *expressed by fut. act. part.*

**absent (be)**, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfūtūrus (§ 838)

**abundance**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

**abundant**, amplius, -a, -um

**accept**, accipio, 3

**according to**, *expressed by abl.*

**across**, trāns, *with acc.*

**advance**, prōcēdō, 3

**advise**, moneō, 2

**after**, *prep.*, post, *with acc.*

**after**, *conj.*, postquam; *often expressed by past part.*

**afterwards**, postea

**against**, in, *with acc.*

**aid**, auxilium, auxili'li, *n.*

**alarm**, commoveō, 2

**alarmed**, commōtus, -a, -um

**all**, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um (§ 502)

**ally**, socius, soci'li, *m.*

**alone**, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um (§ 502)

**already**, iam

**always**, semper

**ambassador**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

**among**, apud, *with acc.*

**ample**, amplius, -a, -um

**and**, et, atque (ac), -que

**and so**, itaque

**Andromeda**, Andromeda, -ae, *f.*

**animal**, animal, -ālis, *n.*

**announce**, nūntiō, 1

**annoy**, molestē ferō

**another**, alius, -a, -ud (§ 502)

**any**, ūllus, -a, -um (§ 502)

**approach**, appropinquō, 1, *with dat.*

**approach**, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

**are**, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as copula*, sum (§ 838)

**are of**, sum, *with pred. gen.* (*cf. belong to*)

**arms**, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

**army**, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

**arrival**, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

**arrive**, perveniō, 4

**art of war**, rēs militāris

**ask**, petō, 3; quaerō, 3; rogō, 1

**assault**, oppugnō, 1

**assemble**, conveniō, 4

**assistance**, auxilium, auxili'li, *n.*

**at**, in, *with acc. or abl.; with names of towns, locative case or abl. without a preposition* (§ 484); *time when or within which*, abl

**at once**, statim

**Athens**, Athēnae, -ārum, *f.*

**attack**, v., oppugnō, 1

**attack**, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*; **make an attack upon**, impetum faciō in, *with acc.*

- attempt**, temptō, 1  
**attentively**, diligenter  
**authority**, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*  
**away** (be), absum, -esse, āfui, āfutū-  
 rus (§ 838)  
  
**bad**, malus, -a, -um (§ 456)  
**baggage**, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**barbarians**, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
**battle**, proelium, proelī, *n.*  
**be**, sum, esse, fui, futūrus (§ 838)  
**be absent**, **be far**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)  
**be afraid**, timeō, 2; vereor, 2  
**be away**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)  
**be in command of**, praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)  
**be informed**, certior fiō (§ 843)  
**be off**, **be distant**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus (§ 838)  
**bear**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 841)  
**beautiful**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum  
**because**, quod, *conj.*; **because** (of), *abl. of cause or propter with acc.*  
**become**, fiō, fierī, factus sum (§ 843)  
**been**, *expressed in verb form*  
**before**, heretofore, *adv.*, antea  
**before**, *prep.*, ante, *with acc.*  
**beg**, beg for, petō, 3  
**begin**, incipiō, 3  
**believe**, crēdō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
**belong to**, *see are of*  
**benefit**, beneficium, benefī'ci, *n.*  
**best**, optimus, *superl. of bonus*  
**better**, melior, *comp. of bonus*  
**between**, inter, *with acc.*  
  
**boat**, nāvigium, nāvi'gī, *n.*; nāvis, -is, *f.*  
**body**, corpus, -oris, *n.*  
**book**, liber, librī, *m.*  
**both . . . and**, et . . . et  
**bound**, contineō, 2  
**boy**, puer, -erī, *m.*  
**brave**, fortis, -e  
**bravely**, fortiter  
**bridge**, pōns, pontis, *m.*  
**bring**, bring to, addūcō, 3  
**bring upon**, inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *with acc. and dat.* (§ 841)  
**Britain**, Britannia, -ae, *f.*  
**Britons**, Britannī, -ōrum, *m.*  
**brother**, frāter, -tris, *m.*  
**Brutus**, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*  
**build**, pōnō, 3; faciō, 3  
**burn**, incendō, 3  
**business**, negōtium, negō'tī, *n.*  
**but**, however, autem, sed  
**by**, ā, ab, *with abl.*; *denoting means, abl. alone; sometimes implied in a participle*  
  
**Cæsar**, Caesar, -aris, *m.*  
**call**, vocō, 1; appellō, 1  
**call out**, ēvocō, 1  
**call together**, convocō, 1  
**camp**, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
**can**, could, possum, posse, potuī, — (§ 839)  
**capital**, caput, capitis, *n.*  
**Capitolium**, Capitōlium, Capitō'li, *n.*  
**captive**, captīvus, -ī, *m.*  
**capture**, capiō, 3; occupō, 1  
**carry**, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (§ 841); portō, 1  
**carry on**, gerō, 3

- cause**, *v.*, expressed by *faciō* followed by *ut* and *subjv. clause of result*
- cause**, *n.*, *causa*, -ae, *f.*
- cavalry**, *equitātus*, -ūs, *m.*; (of) **cavalry**, *equester*, -tris, -tre
- certain** (a), *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* (*quiddam*) (§ 831)
- certain**, *sure*, *certus*, -a, -um
- certainly**, *certē*
- chief**, *princeps*, -ipis, *m.*
- children**, *liberī*, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
- choose**, *dēligō*, 3
- choose**, *elect*, *creō*, 1
- citizen**, *cīvis*, -is, *m. and f.* (§ 412. a)
- city**, *urbs*, *urbis*, *f.*
- claim attention**, *animum teneō*
- climb**, *ascendō*, 3
- cohort**, *cohors*, -rtis, *f.*
- collect**, *cōgō*, 3
- come**, *veniō*, 4
- command**, *imperō*, 1, *with dat.* (§ 224); *iubeō*, 2; *praesum*, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)
- commander**, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*; *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*
- common**, *commūnis*, -e
- commonwealth**, *rēs pūblica*, *reī pūblīcae*
- compel**, *cōgō*, 3
- concerning**, *dē*, *with abl.*
- condition**, *condiciō*, -ōnis, *f.*
- conquer**, *superō*, 1; *vincō*, 3
- consider**, *existimō*, 1
- construct** (a ditch), *perducō*, 3; *dūcō*, 3
- consul**, *cōsul*, *cōsulis*, *m.*
- consult**, *cōsulō*, 3
- Cornelius**, *Cornēlius*, *Cornē'li*, *m.*
- cottage**, *casa*, -ae, *f.*
- could**, *see can*
- country**, *as distinguished from the city*, *rūs*, *rūris*, *n.*; *as territory*, *finēs*, -ium, *m. plur.*
- country**, *fatherland*, *patria*, -ae, *f.*
- country house**, *farm*, *villa*, -ae, *f.*
- courage**, *virtūs*, -ūtis, *f.*
- courageous**, *fortis*, -e
- cowardly**, *timidus*, -a, -um
- Crete**, *Crēta*, -ae, *f.*
- cross**, *trāseō*, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -itus, 4 (§ 842)
- crowd**, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*
- crowded**, *crēber*, -bra, -brum
- custom**, *cōsuetūdō*, -inis, *f.*
- cut off**, *intercludō*, 3
- danger**, *periculum*, -ī, *n.*
- dare**, *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*
- daughter**, *filia*, -ae, *f.* (§ 70. a)
- day**, *diēs*, -ēi, *m.*
- daybreak**, **daylight**, *prima lūx*
- death**, *mors*, *mortis*, *f.*
- deed**, *rēs*, *reī*, *f.*; *factum*, -ī, *n.*
- deep**, *altus*, -a, -um
- defend**, *dēfendō*, 3
- defense**, *praesidium*, *praesi'di*, *n.*
- demand**, *postulō*, 1
- Dentatus**, *Dentātus*, -ī, *m.*
- deny**, *negō*, 1
- depart**, **depart from**, *discēdō*, 3; *exeō*, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -itūrus (§ 842); *excēdō*, 3
- desert**, *relinquō*, 3
- desire**, *cupiō*, 3
- desirous of**, *cupidus*, -a, -um, *with gen.* (§ 554)
- different**, *dissimilis*, -e

- difficult**, difficilis, -e (§ 457)  
**difficulty**, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*  
**diligence**, diligentia, -ae, *f.*  
**diligently**, diligenter  
**display**, ostendō, 3  
**distance**, spatium, spatī, *n.*  
**distant (be)**, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfūtūrus (§ 838)  
**ditch**, fossa, -ae, *f.*  
**do**, agō, 3; faciō, 3; *when used as auxiliary, not translated*  
**do completely**, cōficiō, 3  
**do harm to**, noceō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
**down from**, dē, *with abl.*  
**draw up**, instruō, 3  
**drive**, agō, 3  
**drive out**, pellō, 3; expellō, 3  
**due the state**, pūblicus, -a, -um  
**dull**, slow, tardus, -a, -um  
**duty**, officium, offīcī, *n.*  
 **dwell**, habitō, 1; incolō, 3  
  
**each**, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (§ 831)  
**each other**, inter *with acc. of a reflex. pron.*  
**eager**, ācer, ācris, ācre  
**eager (be) for**, studeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
**easily**, facile  
**easy**, facilis, -e  
**either . . . or**, aut . . . aut  
**elapse (suffer to or let)**, intermittō, 3  
**encourage**, cōfirmō, 1  
**enemy**, hostis, -is, *m. and f.*; inimicus, -ī, *m.*  
**enough**, satis, *indecl.*  
**enroll**, cōscribō, 3  
  
**entire**, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 502)  
**equal**, aequus, -a, -um  
**even**, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem  
**evil**, malus, -a, -um (§ 456)  
**example**, exemplum, -ī, *n.*  
**expect**, exspectō, 1  
**expose**, committō, 3  
**extend**, pateō, 2; pertineō, 2  
  
**fact**, rēs, rei, *f.*  
**faith**, fidēs, fideī, *f.*  
**fame**, fāma, -ae, *f.*  
**famous**, clārus, -a, -um  
**far**, **far away**, **far distant**, longē  
**farm**, villa, -ae, *f.*  
**farmer**, agricola, -ae, *m.*  
**farther**, *adj.*, ulterior, -ius; *adv.*, longius  
**father**, pater, patris, *m.*  
**fatherland**, patria, -ae, *f.*  
**favor**, faveō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
**favor**, gratia, -ae, *f.*  
**favorable**, idōneus, -a, -um  
**fear**, timor, -ōris, *m.*  
**fear, be afraid**, timeō, 2; vereor, 2  
**few**, pauci, -ae, -a  
**field**, ager, agrī, *m.*  
**fifth**, quintus, -a, -um  
**fight**, contendō, 3; pugnō, 1; **fight a battle**, proelium faciō  
**finally**, dēnique  
**find**, inveniō, 4  
**finish**, cōficiō, 3  
**fire**, ignis, -is, *m.* (§ 412. a)  
**first**, *adj.*, primus, -a, -um  
**first**, *adv.*, *referring to order*, primum; *referring to time*, primō  
**fitting (be)**, oportet, 3

five, quinque  
 flee, fugiō, 3  
 flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*  
 follow, sequor, 3  
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*  
 foot soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*  
 for, *prep.*, sign of *dat.*; dē, prō (*in behalf of*), with *abl.*; to express purpose, ad, with *gerundive*; in expressions of time or space per may be used, but usually it is implied in *acc.* of time and of extent of space  
 for, *conj.*, enim (*postpositive*), nam  
 for a long time, diū  
 for the future, in reliquum tempus  
 forbid, vetō, 1  
 force, vis, (vis), *f.* (§ 813)  
 forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
 foresee, prōvideō, 2  
 forest, silva, -ae, *f.*  
 formerly, antea  
 fort, castrum, -ī, *n.*  
 fortify, mūniō, 4  
 fortify (all) about, circummūniō, 4  
 fortune, fortuna, -ae, *f.*  
 four, quattuor  
 fourth, quārtus, -a, -um  
 free, liber, -era, -erum  
 free, liberate, liberō, 1  
 frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum  
 fresh, integer, -gra, -grum  
 friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*  
 friendly, amicus, -a, -um  
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*  
 frighten, perterreō, 2  
 from, ā or ab, dē, ē, ex, with *abl.*  
 Often expressed by the *abl.* of separation without a *prep.*

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*  
 garrison, praesidium, praesi'di, *n.*  
 gate, porta, -ae, *f.*  
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
 Gaul (a), Gallus, -ī, *m.*  
 general, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*  
 Germans (the), Germāni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*  
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*  
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datus (§ 161. N.)  
 give back, reddō, 3  
 give a right of way, iter dō  
 go, eō, īre, īi (īvi), itūrus (§ 842)  
 go out, excēdō, 3  
 god, deus, -ī, *m.*  
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (§ 70. a)  
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*  
 good, bonus, -a, -um (§ 456)  
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*  
 grain supply, rēs frūmentāria  
 great, magnus, -a, -um (§ 456)  
 greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um  
 greatly, magnopere  
 greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*  
 grief, dolor, -ōris, *m.*  
 guard, praesidium, praesi'di, *n.*  
 had, as auxiliary, expressed in verb form  
 hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
 harm, noceō, 2, with *dat.* (§ 224)  
 has, as auxiliary, expressed in verb form  
 hasten, contendō, 3; properō, 1  
 have, habeō, 2; when auxiliary of perfect, not expressed

he, is, hic, ille, *or not expressed*

head, caput, -itis, *n.*

hear, audiō, 4

heart, animus, -ī, *m.*

heavy, gravis, -e

height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*

Helvetii (the), Helvētīi, -ōrum, *m.*

*plur.*

hem in, contineō, 2

her, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

heretofore, antecā

herself, suī. *See self*

high, altus, -a, -um

highest, summus, -a, -um

him, *see he*

himself, suī. *See self*

hinder, prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4

hindrance, impedimentum, -ī, *n.*

his, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

hold, teneō, 2; obtineō, 2

hold back, retineō, 2

home, domus, -ūs, *f.* (§ 813); at

home, domī (§ 485)

hope, *v.*, spēō, 1

hope, *n.*, spēs, speī, *f.*

horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*

horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um

hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*

how, quam; how far, quam longē;

how long, quam diū

hurl, iaciō, 3; coniciō, 3

I, ego (§ 825), *or not expressed*

if, si; if not, nisi

immediately, statim

in, of place, in, with *abl.*; of time  
or of respect, *abl. without prep.*

in command of (be), praesum, -esse,  
-fui, -futurus, with *dat.* (§ 623)

in order that, ut, with *subjv.*; in  
order that not, lest, nē, with  
*subjv.*

in the presence of, apud, *prep. with  
acc.*

in truth, vērō

in vain, frūstrā

industry, diligentia, -ae, *f.*

infantry, *plur. of pedes*, -itis, *m.*

infantry (of), pedester, -tris, -tre

inflict punishment upon, suppli-  
cium sūmō dē, with *abl.*

influence, adducō, 3

inform someone, aliquem certiorem  
faciō

injure, noceō, 2, with *dat.* (§ 224)

injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

inquire, quaerō, 3

intend, in animō esse, with *dat.*

into, in, with *acc.*

intrust, committō, 3

is, *used as auxiliary, not trans-  
lated; as copula*, sum, esse, fui,  
futurus (§ 838)

island, insula, -ae, *f.*

it, is, hic, iste, *or not expressed*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

its, eius, huius, istius, illius; *reflex.*,

suus, -a, -um (§ 135)

itself, suī. *See self*

join together, committō, 3

journey, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 813)

judgment, iudicium, iūdi'ci, *n.*

justice, iūs, iūris, *n.*

- keep**, teneō, 2  
**keep (in)**, restrain, contineō, 2  
**keep (out or from)**, prohibeō, 2  
**kill**, interficiō, 3; necō, 1  
**kind**, genus, -eris, *n.*  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, *m.*  
**kingdom**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*  
**know**, cognōscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*;  
     sciō, 4  
**known**, nōtus, -a, -um  
  
**labor**, *v.*, labōrō, 1  
**labor**, *n.*, labor, -ōris, *m.*; opera, -ae, *f.*  
**lack**, *v.*, dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dē-  
     futūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)  
**lack**, *n.*, inopia, -ae, *f.*  
**lack (be)**, dēsum, deesse, dēfui,  
     dēfutūrus, *with dat.* (§ 623)  
**lamp**, lūcerna, -ae, *f.*  
**land**, terra, -ae, *f.*  
**language**, lingua, -ae, *f.*  
**large**, magnus, -a, -um  
**law**, lēx, lēgis, *f.*  
**lay down**, **lay aside**, dēpōnō, 3  
**lay waste**, vāstō, 1  
**lead**, dūcō, 3  
**lead across**, trādūcō, 3  
**lead away**, abdūcō, 3  
**lead back**, redūcō, 3  
**lead forward**, prōdūcō, 3  
**lead in**, conduct, indūcō, 3  
**lead out**, **lead forth**, ēdūcō, 3  
**lead through**, perdūcō, 3  
**lead to**, addūcō, 3  
**Leander**, Lēander, -drī, *m.*  
**learn**, **know** (*in perf. tenses*), cog-  
     nōscō, 3  
**leave**, depart from, discēdō, 3  
**leave behind**, abandon, relinquō, 3  
  
**leave off**, intermittō, 3  
**left**, sinister, -tra, -trum  
**legion**, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**length**, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**Lesbia**, Lesbia, -ae, *f.*  
**lest**, nē, *with subjv.*  
**liberty**, libertās, -ātis, *f.*  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*  
**life**, vita, -ae, *f.*  
**light**, levis, -e  
**light**, lūx, lūcis, *f.*  
**lightly**, leviter  
**like**, *adj.*, similis, -e (§ 457)  
**like**, love, amō, 1  
**line of battle**, aciēs, aciēi, *f.*  
**listen**, audiō, 4  
**little**, parvus, -a, -um (§ 456)  
**little**, **by a little**, paulō  
**live**, habitō, 1; incolō, 3  
**lofty**, altus, -a, -um  
**long**, longus, -a, -um  
**long**, **for a long time**, diū  
**look at**, spectō, 1  
**look for**, quaerō, 3  
**look out for**, prōvideō, 2  
**lose**, āmittō, 3  
**love**, amō, 1  
**loyal**, firmus, -a, -um  
  
**make**, faciō, 3 (§ 843)  
**make a speech**, orationem habēō  
**make war upon**, bellum inferō, *with*  
     *dat.* (§ 623)  
**man**, homō, -inis, *m. and f.* (§ 813);  
     vir, virī, *m.*  
**manner**, modus, -ī, *m.*  
**many**, multī, -ae, -a  
**march**, iter, itineris, *n.* (§ 813)  
**march (to)**, iter faciō

- Marcus**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*  
**Mark**, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*  
**marry**, in mātīmōnium dūcō  
**matter**, negōtium, negō'tū, *n.*; rēs, reī, *f.*  
**me**, *see* I  
**means, by means of**, *expressed by the abl.*  
**meanwhile, in the meantime, interim**  
**memory**, memoria, -ae, *f.*  
**method**, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**midst of**, medius, -a, -um  
**mile**, mille passūs (§ 536); *plur.*, mīlia passuum  
**military**, militāris, -e  
**mind**, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*  
**mine**, meus, -a, -um  
**Minerva**, Minerva, -ae, *f.*  
**Minotaur**, Minōtaurus, -ī, *m.*  
**money**, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*  
**month**, mēnsis, -is, *m.*  
**more**, *adj.*, plūs, plūris (§ 458), *or expressed by a comparative; adv.*, magis  
**most**, *adj.*, plūrimus, -a, -um, *or expressed by a superl.*; *adv.*, maximē, plūrimum  
**mother**, māter, mātis, *f.*  
**mountain**, mōns, montis, *m.*  
**move**, moveō, 2  
**move deeply**, commoveō, 2; permoveō, 2  
**moved**, commōtus, -a, -um; permōtus, -a, -um  
**much (by)**, multō  
**Mucius**, Mūcius, Mūci, *m.*  
**multitude**, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
**my**, meus, -a, -um  
**name**, nōmen, -inis, *n.*  
**native land**, patria, -ae, *f.*  
**nature**, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
**near**, propinquus, -a, -um  
**nearest**, proximus, -a, -um  
**necessary (be)**, oportet, 3  
**neighbor**, finitimus, -ī, *m.*  
**neighboring**, finitimus, -a, -um  
**neither (of two)**, neuter, neutra, neutrum (§ 502)  
**neither**, neque *or* nec; **neither . . . nor**, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)  
**never**, numquam  
**nevertheless**, tamen  
**new**, novus, -a, -um  
**next**, proximus, -a, -um  
**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*  
**nine**, novem  
**no**, minimē, *or repeat verb with a negative* (§ 110)  
**no, none**, nullus, -a, -um (§ 503)  
**no one**, nēmō, nullius  
**noble**, nōbilis, -e  
**nor**, neque *or* nec  
**not**, nōn  
**not at all**, minimē  
**not even**, nē . . . quidem  
**nothing**, nihil *or* nihilum, -ī, *n.*  
**now**, nunc, iam  
**number**, numerus, -ī, *m.*  
**O**, *usually expressed by a vocative, occasionally by the interj.* Ō  
**obey**, pāreō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
**observe**, spectō, 1  
**of, sign of gen.**; dē, *with abl.*; **out of**, ē *or* ex, *with abl.*  
**offer**, prōpōnō, 3  
**often**, saepe

**on**, *of place*, in, *with abl.*; *of time*, *abl. without prep.*

**on account of**, propter, *with acc.*; *abl. of cause*

**once (upon a time)**, ōlim

**one**, ūnus, -a, -um (§ 815)

**one . . . another**, *of several*, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, *of two*, alter . . . alter (§ 504)

**only**, solum, tantum

**only a few**, pauci, -ae, -a

**onto**, *see on*

**or**, aut

**oration**, ōratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**order**, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2

**other**, alius, -a, -ud (§ 503); **the one . . . the other**, *of two*, alter . . . alter (§ 504)

**others (the)**, reliqui, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

**ought**, dēbeō, 2

**our**, noster, -tra, -trum

**out from, outside of**, ē *or ex with abl.*

**overcome**, superō, 1; vincō, 3

**owe**, dēbeō, 2

**own (his, her, its, their)**, suus, -a, -um

**pace**, passus, -ūs, *m.*

**pain**, dolor, -ōris, *m.*

**part**, pars, partis, *f.*

**peace**, pāx, pācis, *f.*

**penalty**, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, supplī'ci, *n.*

**people**, populus, -ī, *m.*

**perceive**, sentiō, 4

**peril**, periculum, -ī, *n.*

**Perseus**, Perseus, -ī, *m.*

**persuade**, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)

**pertain**, pertineō, 2

**place**, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*

**place, put**, pōnō, 3; locō, 1

**place in command of**, praeficiō, 3, *with acc. and dat.* (§ 623)

**plan (a)**, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**plead**, dicō, 3

**please**, placeō, 2, *with dat.* (§ 224)

**pleasing**, grātus, -a, -um

**plenty**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

**poet**, poēta, -ae, *m.*

**poor**, miser, misera, miserum

**possess**, obtineō, 2

**power**, imperium, impe'ri, *n.*; potestās, -ātis, *f.*

**powerful, be most powerful**, plūrimum possum

**praise**, laudō, 1

**praise**, laus, laudis, *f.*

**prefer**, mālō, mälle, mālui, — (§ 840)

**prepare, prepare for**, parō, 1, *with acc.*

**preserve**, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1

**press hard**, premō, 3

**pretty**, pulcher, -chra, -chrum

**prize**, praemium, praemi, *n.*

**protection**, fidēs, fidei, *f.*

**provide**, comparō, 1

**public**, pūbicus, -a, -um

**punishment**, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, supplī'ci, *n.*

**purpose, for the purpose of**, ut *or* quī, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*; causā, *following the genitive of a gerund or gerundive*

put, pōnō, 3; locō, 1  
 put down, dēpōnō, 3  
 put to death, in mortem dō  
 put to flight, in fugam dō

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*  
 quickly, celeriter  
 Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, *m.*

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*  
 rank, ōrdō, -inis, *m.*  
 rather, *see* wish rather  
 reach, pertineō, 2; pateō, 2  
 realm, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*  
 reason, causa, -ae, *f.*  
 receive, accipiō, 3  
 remain, maneō, 2; permaneō, 2  
 remainder (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m.*  
*plur.*

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um  
 remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um  
 remember, memoriā teneō  
 reply, respondeō, 2  
 report, fāma, -ae, *f.*  
 republic, rēs pūblica  
 reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*  
 resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.* (§ 224)  
 respect, vereor, 2  
 rest (the), reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 restrain, contineō, 2  
 retain, retineō, 2  
 return, give back, reddō, 3  
 revolution, rēs novae, *f. plur.*  
 reward, praeium, praemī, *n.*  
 Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*  
 right, *adj.*, dexter, -tra, -trum  
 right, *n.*, iūs, iūris, *n.*; give a right  
 of way, iter dō  
 river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, via, viae, *f.*  
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *often*  
*used as a noun*  
 Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*  
 Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*  
 route, iter, itineris, *n.*  
 rule, regō, 3  
 rumor, fāma, -ae, *f.*

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum  
 safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
 sail, nāvigō, 1  
 sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*  
 same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 518)  
 satisfaction (give), satis faciō, 3,  
*with dat.*  
 satisfactory, satis, *indecl.*  
 savage, barbarus, -a, -um  
 savages, barbarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 save, servō, 1  
 say, dicō, 3; say not, negō, 1  
 scarcity, inopia, -ae, *f.*  
 school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*  
 science of war, rēs militaris, *f.*  
 scout, explōrator, -ōris, *m.*  
 sea, mare, -is, *n.*  
 second, secundus, -a, -um  
 see, videō, 2  
 seek, petō, 3; quaerō, 3  
 seem, videor, 2, *pass. of* videō  
 seize, rapiō, 3; occupō, 1  
 self, ipse, -a, -um (§ 517); suī (§ 512)  
 senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*  
 send, mittō, 3  
 send ahead or forward, praemittō, 3  
 send away, dimittō, 3; amittō, 3  
 send back, remittō, 3  
 serious, gravis, -e  
 set fire to, incendō, 3

**set forth**, prōpōnō, 3  
**settle**, sedēō, 2  
**seven**, septem  
**seventh**, septimū, -a, -um  
**several**, plūres, plūra  
**severe**, gravis, -e  
**severely**, graviter  
**Sextus**, Sextus, -ī, *m.*  
**shall**, *expressed by future tense*  
**sharp**, ācer, ācris, ācre [*expressed*]  
**she**, ea, haec, ista, illa (§ 205), *or not*  
**ship**, nāvis, -is, *f.* (§ 412. a)  
**shore**, ōra, -ae, *f.*  
**short**, brevis, -e  
**show**, dēmōnstrō, ī; ostendō, 3  
**signal**, signum, -ī, *n.*  
**similar**, similis, -e  
**since**, cum (§ 642)  
**sister**, soror, -ōris, *f.*  
**sit**, sedēō, 2  
**size**, magnitudō, -inis, *f.*  
**six**, sex  
**sixth**, sextus, -a, -um  
**skillful, skilled**, peritus, -a, -um  
**slaughter**, caedēs, -is, *f.*  
**slave**, servus, -ī, *m.*  
**slavery**, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
**slow**, tardus, -a, -um  
**slowly**, tardē  
**small**, parvus, -a, -um  
**smallest**, minimus, -a, -um  
**so**, ita, sic, tam  
**so great**, tantus, -a, -um  
**so that, ut; so that not, ut nōn**  
**soldier**, miles, -itis, *m.*  
**some**, *often not expressed; aliqui*,  
 aliqua, aliquod (§ 831)  
**some . . . others**, alii . . . alii (§ 504)  
**someone**, aliquis (§ 831)

**something**, aliquid (§ 831)  
**son**, filius, fili, *m.*  
**soon**, mox  
**sovereignty**, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*  
**space**, spatium, spatī, *n.*  
**speak**, dicō, 3  
**spear**, tēlum, -ī, *n.*  
**speech**, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
**spirit**, animus, -ī, *m.*  
**spur**, calcar, -āris, *n.*  
**spy**, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*  
**stand still, take a stand**, cōsistō, 3  
**state**, civitās, -ātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, *f.*  
**stay**, permanēō, 2  
**steadfast**, firmus, -a, -um  
**storm**, oppugnō, ī; **take by storm**,  
 expugnō, ī  
**story**, fābula, -ae, *f.*  
**strange**, nōvus, -a, -um  
**street**, via, -ae, *f.*  
**strength**, vis, (vis), *f.*  
**strong**, fortis, -e; firmus, -a, -um  
**stupid**, tardus, -a, -um  
**subdue**, pācō, ī  
**such**, tālis, -e  
**suffer**, patior, 3; labōrō, ī  
**suffer punishment**, poenam *or* sup  
 plicium dō  
**sufficient**, satis, *indecl.*  
**suitable**, idōneus, -a, -um  
**summer**, aestās, -ātis, *f.*  
**summon**, vocō, ī  
**supply**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*  
**supreme**, summus, -a, -um  
**sure**, certus, -a, -um  
**suspend**, intermittō, 3  
**swift**, celer, -eris, -ere  
**swiftly**, celeriter  
**swiftness**, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*

- take**, sūmō, 3  
**take, capture, take up**, capiō, 3  
**take back**, recipiō, 1  
**take by storm**, expugnō, 1  
**tall**, altus, -a, -um  
**teach**, doceō, 2  
**tell**, dicō, 3; nārrō, 1  
**ten**, decem  
**tenth**, decimus, -a, -um  
**terrified**, perterritus, -a, -um  
**terrify**, perterreō, 2  
**territory**, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*  
**than**, quam  
**thank**, grātiās agō, *with dat.*  
**that, demon. pron.**, is (§ 203), iste, ille (§ 524); *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod  
**that, in order that, in purpose clauses**, ut  
**that not, lest, in purpose clauses**, nē  
**the, not expressed**  
**the one, the other (of two)**, alter, altera, alterum  
**their, gen. plur. of is; reflex., suus**, -a, -um (§ 135)  
**their own**, suus, -a, -um (§ 135)  
**them, see they**  
**then, at that time**, tum  
**then, in the next place**, deinde  
**there, as expletive, not expressed**  
**there, in that place**, ibi  
**therefore**, itaque  
**these, see this**  
**Theseus**, Thēseus, -ī, *m.*  
**they, ii, hi, isti, illi, or not expressed** (§ 205)  
**thick**, crēber, -bra, -brum  
**thing**, rēs, rei, *f.*  
**think**, arbitror, 1; exīstimō, 1; putō, 1  
**third**, tertius, -a, -um  
**this**, hic, haec, hoc (§ 523); is, ea, id (§ 203)  
**those, see that, dem. pron.**  
**though**, cum  
**thousand**, mille (§ 536)  
**three**, trēs, tria (§ 824)  
**three hundred**, trecentī, -ae, -a  
**through**, per, *with acc.*  
**throw**, iaciō, 3  
**throw down**, dēiciō, 3  
**time**, tempus, -oris, *n.*  
**timid**, timidus, -a, -um  
**to, sign of dat.; ad, in, with acc.; expressing purpose, ut, quī, with subjv.; ad, with gerund or gerundive**  
**to each other, inter with acc. of a reflex. pron.**  
**toil**, laborō, 1  
**top of**, summus, -a, -um  
**tower**, turris, -is, *f.*  
**town**, oppidum, -ī, *n.*  
**troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
**true**, vērus, -a, -um  
**try**, temptō, 1  
**twelfth**, duodecimus, -a, -um  
**twelve**, duodecim  
**two**, duo, duae, duo (§ 824)  
**two hundred**, ducentī, -ae, -a  
**undertake**, suscipiō, 3  
**unfavorable**, inīquus, -a, -um  
**unskilled**, imperītus, -a, -um  
**unwilling (be), not willing**, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (§ 840)  
**uphold**, sustineō, 2  
**urge**, hortor, 1  
**us**, nōs, *acc. plur. of ego* (§ 509)

**valor**, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

**very**, *superl. degree*, maximē; *intensive*, ipse, -a, -um (§ 517)

**victory**, victōria, -ae, *f.*

**villa**, villa, -ae, *f.*

**violence**, vis, (vis), *f.* (§ 419)

**wage**, gerō, 3

**wait**, wait for, expectō, 1

**wall**, murus, -i, *m.*; vāllum, -i, *n.*

**want**, inopia, -ae, *f.*

**war**, bellum, -i, *n.*

**warn**, moneō, 2

**was**, *see be*

**water**, aqua, -ae, *f.*

**way**, **manner**, modus, -i, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**we**, nōs, *plur. of ego* (§ 509); *or not expressed*

**wear**, gerō, 3

**well**, bene

**well-known**, nōtus, -a, -um

**were**, *see be*

**what**, quī, quae, quid (quod) (§§ 394, 395)

**when**, ubi, cum (§ 641); *often expressed by a participle*

**whether**, *introducing an indirect question*, num

**where**, ubi

**which**, quī, quae, quod (§ 387); **which of two**, uter, utra, utrum (§ 503)

**whither**, quō

**who**, *rel.*, quī, quae (§ 387); *interrog.*, quis (§ 394)

**whose**, cuius *or* quōrum, quārum, quōrum, *gen. of* quī, quae, quod, *rel.* (§ 387), *or of* quis, quid, *interrog.* (§ 394)

**why**, cūr

**wicked**, malus, -a, -um

**wide**, lātus, -a, -um

**will**, *expressed by future tense*

**willing** (be), volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 840)

**wind**, ventus, -i, *m.*

**wing**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

**winter**, hiems, -emis, *f.*

**wisdom**, sapientia, -ae, *f.*

**wish**, cupiō, 3; volō, velle, voluī, — (§ 840)

**wish not**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — (§ 840)

**wish rather**, mālō, mālle, mālui, — (§ 840)

**with**, cum, *with abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone*

**withdraw**, mē recipiō

**without**, sine, *with abl.*

**woman**, mulier, -eris, *f.*

**work**, labōrō, 1

**worst**, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* malus

**wound**, *verb*, vulnerō, 1

**wound**, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

**wretched**, miser, -era, -erum

**write**, scribō, 3

**wrong**, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

**year**, annus, -i, *m.*

**yes**, certē, ita, vērō, *or, more usually, repeat the verb* (§ 110)

**yet**, tamen

**you**, *sing.*, tū; *plur.*, vōs (§ 509); *or not expressed*

**your**, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*, vester, -tra, -trum (§ 133)

**yourself**, tū

1

2

3

# INDEX

The numbers, unless pages are specified, refer to sections

- ā or ab**, 79, 80, 81, 171
- abbreviations**, Latin, p. 383
- ablative case**, 65-67
  - absolute, 396-400
  - of accompaniment, 167
  - of agent, 261
  - of cause, 165
  - of description, 561, 562
  - of manner, 168
  - of means or instrument, 166
  - of measure of difference, 451, 452
  - of place from which, 295, 482
  - of place in which, 483
  - of respect, 551, 552
  - of separation, 296
  - of time, 492, 493
- accent**, 13, 14
- accompaniment**, abl. of, 167
- accusative case**, 32
  - of duration or extent, 546-548
  - object, 35
  - of place to which, 481, 484
  - predicate, 681-684
  - with prepositions, 78, 358
  - as subject of the infinitive, 363
- adjectives**, 19, 87-92
  - agreement, 90-91
  - comparison, regular, 441-444; by adverbs, 472; irregular, 456-458
  - with the dative, 129, 130
  - declension of comparatives, 450
  - of first and second declensions, 115, 116, 120, 126-128
  - position of, 92
  - possessive, 132-137
  - of third declension, 428-431, 435, 438
- adverbs**, 122
  - comparison, 466
  - formation, regular, 461-465; irregular, 470, 471
  - position of, 123
- agent**, expressed by the abl. with *ā* or *ab*, 261; by the dat., 728, 729
- agreement**
  - of adjectives, 90, 91
  - of appositives, 104
  - of predicate nouns, 61
  - of relative pronouns, 389, 390
  - of verbs, 48
- aliquis**, 528
- alius**, 502-505
- alphabet**, 1-3
- alter**, 502-504
- antepenult**, 10. c; accent of, 14
- appendix**, grammatical, 804-843
- apposition**, 103, 104
- article**, not used in Latin, 27, note
- Baculus the Centurion**, story of, pp. 283-293
- base**, 71
- cardinal numerals**, 522-537, 543
- case**, 31, 32
- causal clauses** with *cum*, 640, 642, 643
- cause**, expressed by the abl., 165
- characteristic**, subjv. of, 721-723

- clauses**, 384, 385; noun or substantive clause, 600
- comparative**, declension of, 450
- comparison**  
abl. of, 309  
of adjectives, 441-445; irregular, 456-458; six adjectives in *-lis*, 457  
of adverbs, regular, 466; irregular, 471  
degrees of, 441
- complementary infinitive**, 369
- compound verbs** with the dative, 622, 623
- concessive clauses** with *cum*, 640, 642, 643
- conjugation stems**, 154, 300-303
- conjugations**, 140; the four regular, 153; irregular, 838-843
- consonants**, 2; sounds of, 7
- copula**, 26
- cum**, conjunction, 639-643
- cum**, preposition, 358. *a*; enclitic use, 513
- dative case**, 52-55  
with adjectives, 129, 130  
of agent, 728, 729  
with compound verbs, 622, 623  
of indirect object, 56-59  
position of, 59  
of purpose or end for which, 685, 686  
with special verbs, 222-224
- dea**, declension of, 70. *a*
- declension**, 29, 30, 68, 69; general rules of, 108
- demonstrative adjectives and pronouns**, 201-205, 518, 521-524
- deponent verbs**, 557-560, 569
- derivation**, *see* **prefixes and suffixes**
- descriptive ablative and genitive**, 561, 562
- descriptive relative clause**, with the subjv., 721-723
- difference**, measure of, 450, 451
- diphthongs**, 6
- direct statements**, 652
- domi**, locative, 485
- domus**, declension of, 813
- duration of time**, expressed by the acc., 546, 547
- ē or ex**, 171
- ego**, declension of, 509
- enclitics**, 230. *a*
- English-Latin vocabulary**, pp. 23-25 (at the end)
- eō**, conjugation of, 842
- extent of space**, expressed by the acc., 546, 547
- ferō**, conjugation of, 841
- fifth declension**, 488-490
- filia**, declension of, 70. *a*
- filius**, declension of, 117
- fiō**, conjugation of, 843
- first conjugation**, 157
- first declension**, 70
- formation of words**, *see* **prefixes and suffixes**
- fourth conjugation**, 217
- fourth declension**, 475-477
- from**, how expressed, 294-296
- future infinitive**, active, 356
- future participle**, 565, 567
- future perfect**, formation of, active, 330; passive, 348
- future tense**, formation of, 183, 267
- gender**  
in English and in Latin, 83-85  
in the first declension, 86  
in the second declension, 97  
in the third declension, 496  
in the fourth declension, 476  
in the fifth declension, 489  
of an infinitive, 370. *a*

**general rules of declension, 108**

**genitive case**

- with adjectives, 553, 554
- of description, 561, 562
- of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 117
- partitive, or of the whole, 540, 541
- position of, 41
- of the possessor, 34, 150

**gerund, a verbal noun, 691-696**

- with *ad* to express purpose, 696, 697
- with *causā* to express purpose, 696, 697

**gerundive, a verbal adjective, 697**

- with *ad* to express purpose, 697. 5
- with *causā* to express purpose, 697. 5

**hic, declension and use of, 521-523, 828**

**i, consonant, 3**

**i-stems of nouns, 412, 413, 416**

**idem, declension of, 518, 828**

**ille, declension and use of, 521, 522, 524, 828**

**imperative, formation of, 246-250, 286; in commands, 246; irregular, p. 100, fn. 1**

**indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 527-529, 831**

**independent or main clauses, 384**

**indirect object, 56-59, 222-224, 622, 623**

**indirect questions, 667-671**

**indirect statements, 652-654, 656-658**

**infinitive**

- complementary, 369
- definition of, 284
- does not express purpose, 587
- formation of, 285, 332, 354-356
- in indirect statements, 654-656
- as noun, 370
- as object, 366, 367
- used as in English, 369, 370

**inflection, defined, 28, 29**

**intensive pronoun, *ipse*, declension and use of, 516, 517, 827**

**interrogative pronouns, 393-395**

**intransitive verbs, defined, 25; with the dative, 222-224**

**iō-verbs of the third conj., 241, 242, 836**

**ipse, declension and use of, 516, 517, 827**

**irregular adjectives, 502-505**

**irregular comparison, of adjectives, 456, 457, 820; of adverbs, 471, 822**

**irregular nouns, 70. a, 419, 813**

**irregular verbs, 838-843**

**is, declension and use of, 203, 205, 828**

**iste, declension and use of, 521, 522, 524, 828**

**iter, declension of, 419, 813**

**Latin abbreviations, p. 383**

**Latin-English vocabulary, pp. 1-22 (at the end)**

**Latin order of words, 197-199**

**Latin play, Perseus and Andromeda, pp. 279-282**

**Latin songs, pp. 294-297**

**locative case, 485**

**magis, maximē, comparison by, 472**

**mālō, conjugation of, 840**

**manner, abl. of, 168**

**means, abl. of, 166**

**measure of difference, abl. of, 451, 452**

**mille, declension of, 536, 824; construction with, 542**

**moods, defined, 142**

**indicative, 147**

**subjunctive, 577, 582**

**-ne, enclitic, in questions, 109**

**nē, conj., *that not, lest*, with negative clauses of purpose, 589, 602**

**nine irregular adjectives, 502-505**

- nōlō**, conjugation of, 840  
**nominative case**, 33  
**nōnne**, in questions, 251  
**nōs**, declension of, 509  
**nouns**, 17  
     first declension, 70  
     second declension, 96-98, 102, 107, 117  
     third declension, 404, 405, 408, 412, 413, 416  
     fourth declension, 475-477  
     fifth declension, 488-490  
**nūllus**, declension of, 503  
**num**, in questions, 251, 670  
**number**, 45-47, 145  
**numerals**, 532-537, 539, 823, 824  
  
**object**, direct, 35; indirect, 56-59, 222-224, 622, 623  
**order of words**, 197-199  
**ordinal numerals**, 539, 823  
**original stories**, pp. 263-271  
  
**participial stem**, 302, 347  
**participles**, defined, 344  
     agreement of, 349  
     declension of, 566, 817  
     of deponent verbs, 560, 569  
     formation of, 565  
     tenses of, 565  
**partitive genitive**, 540, 541  
**parts of speech**, 16-20  
**passive voice**, defined, 141; formation of, 256, 267, 348  
**past indicative**, formation and use of, 176-178, 267  
**past passive participle**, 565, 567  
**past perfect indicative**, active, 325; passive, 348  
**past perfect subjunctive**, 611  
**penult**, 10. *c*; accent of, 13, 14  
**perfect indicative**  
     distinguished from the past, 314  
     formation, in the active, 315; in the passive, 348  
     meaning of, 311-314  
     past absolute, 313  
     present perfect, 312  
**perfect infinitive**, active, 332; passive, 355  
**perfect stem**, 301  
**perfect subjunctive**, 610  
**periphrastic conjugation**, active, 726; passive, 727  
**Perseus and Andromeda**, Latin play, pp. 279-282  
**person**, 146  
**personal endings**, active, 146, 177, 248, 304; passive, 256, 286  
**personal pronouns**, 509, 510  
**place**, where, whither, whence, 480-485; names of towns and *domus* and *rūs*, 484, 485  
**plūs**, declension of, 458  
**position**  
     of adjective, 91, 198. *d*, 199  
     of adverb, 123, 198. *f*  
     of demonstrative, 204  
     of direct object, 59, 198. *b*  
     of genitive, 41  
     of indirect object, 59, 198. *b*  
     of possessive, 137, 198. *c*  
     of subject, 40, 198. *a*  
     of verb, 40, 198. *a*  
     of vocative, 99, 198. *c*  
**possessive pronouns**, 132-137  
**possum**, conjugation of, 362, 839  
**predicate**, defined, 23  
**predicate accusative**, 681-684  
**predicate adjective**, defined, 93  
**predicate noun**, 60, 61  
**prefixes**, 238, 258, 341, 373-375, 497  
**prepositions**, with the abl., 79, 358. *a*;  
     with the acc., 78, 358. *b*  
**present active participle**, 565, 568, 817  
**present indicative**, 158-160, 256

- present stem**, 154, 155  
**present subjunctive**, 579-581, 585, 586  
**primary tenses**, 593, 594  
**principal parts**, 299  
**pronouns**  
     classification of, 508  
     defined, 18  
     demonstrative, 201-205, 518, 521-524, 828  
     indefinite, 527-529, 831  
     intensive, 516, 517, 827  
     interrogative, 393-395, 830  
     personal, 509, 510  
     possessive, 132-137  
     reflexive, 511, 512  
     relative, 386-390  
**pronunciation**, 4-7  
**purpose**  
     dative of, 685, 686  
     expressed by the gerund or gerundive with *ad* or *causā*, 696, 697  
     not expressed by the infinitive, 587  
     subjunctive of, 587-589, 601-603
- quality**, gen. or abl. of, 561, 562  
**quam**, with a comparative, 445, 446  
**quantity**, 11, 12, 194  
**-que**, 230  
**questions**, direct, 109, 110, 251, 252; indirect, 667-671  
**qui**, declension and use of, 387-390, 589  
**quidam**, 528, 831  
**quis**, indefinite, 528; interrogative, 394, 395  
**quisque**, 528, 831
- reflexive pronouns**, 511, 512  
**relative clauses of characteristic or description**, 721-723  
**relative clauses of purpose**, 587-589  
**relative pronouns**, 386-390  
**respect**, expressed by abl., 551, 552  
**result clauses**, 615-619
- reviews**, 732-803  
**rules for spelling**, 573, 630, 631  
**rules of syntax**, pp. 321-324  
**rūs**, constructions of, 484, 485
- sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 516. *a*  
**second conjugation**, 188, 833  
**second declension**, 96-98, 102, 107  
**selections for sight reading**, pp. 273-278  
**sentences**, simple, complex, compound, 380-383  
**separation**, abl. of, 296  
**sequence of tenses**, 593-596  
**shortening of vowels**, 194  
**songs**, Latin, pp. 294-297  
**sounds of letters**, 4-7  
**space**, extent of, expressed by the acc., 546, 547  
**spelling**, rules for, 573, 630, 631  
**stems**, of nouns, 404. *a*; of verbs, 154, 300-302  
**subject**, defined, 22; case of, 33; of the infinitive, 368; position of, 40  
**subjunctive**, formation  
     of the past, 592  
     of the past perfect, 611  
     of the perfect, 610  
     of the present, 579, 581, 585, 586  
**subjunctive constructions**  
     characteristic or description, 722, 723  
     indirect questions, 667-671  
     purpose, 587-589, 601-603  
     result, 615-619  
     time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 639-643  
**subjunctive ideas**, 582  
**subjunctive tenses**, 578  
**subordinate clauses**, 384, 385  
**suffixes**, 425, 426, 574, 626-629  
**suī**, declension of, 512  
**sum**, conjugation of, 149, 170, 838

- suus**, use of, 135, 208, 209  
**syllables**, 9; division of, 10; quantity of, 11, 12  
**syntax**, rules of, pp. 321-324
- temporal clauses**, with *cum*, 640, 641, 643  
**tense**, defined, 143, 144; meaning of past tense, 178; of perfect tense, 311-314  
**tense signs**, 175  
     future, 183, 235  
     future perfect active, 330  
     past, 176  
     past perfect active, 325  
**tenses**, primary and secondary, 594; sequence of, 593-595  
**third conjugation**, 212, 241, 834  
**third declension of nouns**  
     classes, 404  
     consonant stems, 405, 408  
     gender, 496  
     *i*-stems, 412, 413, 416  
     irregular nouns, 419, 813  
**time**, abl. of, 492, 493; acc. of, 546-548  
**towns**, rules for names of, 484, 485  
**transitive verbs**, 24  
**tū**, declension of, 509
- ultima**, 10. *c*  
**ut**, with clauses of purpose, 589; with clauses of result, 618
- ut nōn**, with clauses of result, 618, 619
- verbs**, 20  
     agreement of, 48  
     conjugation of, 140, 153, 832-836  
     deponent, 559, 560, 569, 837  
     intransitive, 25  
     irregular, 838-843  
     personal endings of, active, 146, 177, 248, 304; passive, 256, 286  
     position of, 40  
     principal parts of, 299  
     transitive, 24
- vis**, declension of, 419, 813
- vocabularies**  
     English-Latin, pp. 23-35 (at the end)  
     Latin-English, pp. 1-22 (at the end)  
     special, pp. 361-381
- vocabulary notebook**, p. 382
- vocative case**, 98, 99  
     of *filius*, 118, note 1  
     of *meus*, 133, note  
     of nouns in *-us* of the second declension, 98
- voice**, defined, 141
- volō**, conjugation of, 840
- vōs**, declension of, 509
- vowels**, sounds of, 5, 6; quantity of, 5; shortening of, 194
- word lists**, for the first and the second half-year, pp. 357-360



To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

108-8-40

OCT 21 1948

JUL 1951

D'ooqe, Benjamin L.  
Elements of Latin

635231

NAME \_\_\_\_\_

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

NAME \_\_\_\_\_

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

Publicis Zeitungs, OCT 20 1948

Nov 3 - 1948

875.1 AOK

Page 3 of 3

JUL 1957

DOST  
NAME  
Phyllis B. Bl...  
LIBRARY. SCHOOL OF EDUCATION. STANFORD  
635231

635231

475.2  
D691

